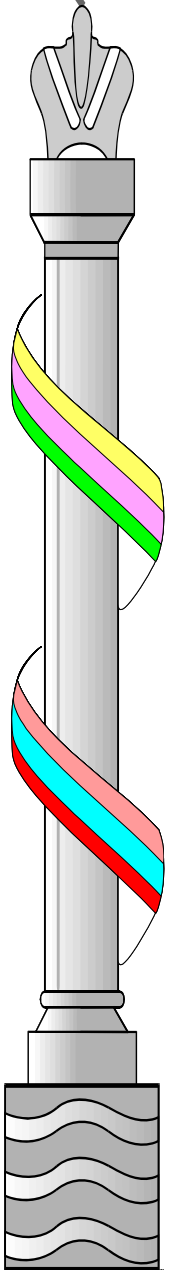
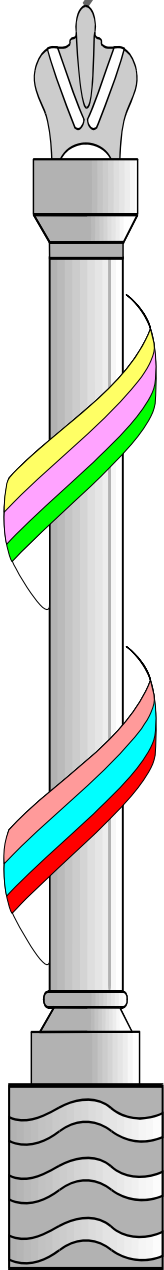


Secondary Three



UNITS (1 - 9)



Contents

No	Title	Page
1	Unit 1	4 - 23
Unit One	Vocabulary	4 - 6
	Language Notes	6 - 9
	Communication Skills	9
	Exercises on Vocabulary	9 - 14
	Grammar	14 - 18
	Exercises on Grammar	18
	Test 1	21
2	Unit 2	24 - 44
Unit Two	Vocabulary	24 - 26
	Language Notes	26 - 29
	Communication Skills	30
	Exercises on Vocabulary	30 - 34
	Grammar	34 - 39
	Exercises on Grammar	39 - 42
	Test 2	42 - 44
3	Unit 3	45 - 60
Unit Three	Vocabulary	45 - 47
	Language Notes	47 - 49
	Exercises on Vocabulary	49 - 52
	Grammar	53 - 55
	Exercises on Grammar	56 - 57
	Test 3	58 - 60
4	Unit 4	61 - 80
Unit Four	Vocabulary	61 - 62
	Language Notes	63 - 64
	Exercises on Vocabulary	64 - 68
	Grammar	69 - 75
	Exercises on Grammar	75 - 78
	Test 4	78 - 80
5	Unit 5	81 - 96
Unit Five	Vocabulary	81 - 82
	Language Notes	83 - 84
	Exercises on Vocabulary	84 - 88
	Grammar	88 - 92
	Exercises on Grammar	92 - 93
	Test 5	94 - 96

6	Unit 6	97 – 111
Unit six	Vocabulary	97 – 98
	Language Notes	99 – 100
	Communication Skills	101
	Exercises on Vocabulary	101 – 104
	Grammar	104 – 107
	Exercises on Grammar	108 – 109
	Test 6	109 – 111
7	Unit 7	113 – 125
Unit Seven	Vocabulary	113 – 114
	Language Notes	114 – 117
	Communication Skills	117
	Exercises on Vocabulary	117 – 120
	Grammar	121
	Exercises on Grammar	121 – 123
	Test 7	123 – 125
8	Unit 8	126 – 142
Unit Eight	Vocabulary	126 – 127
	Language Notes	128 – 129
	Communication Skills	129
	Exercises on Vocabulary	129 – 133
	Grammar	133 – 138
	Exercises on Grammar	138 – 139
	Test 8	140 – 142
9	Unit 9	143 – 155
Unit Nine	Vocabulary	143 – 145
	Language Notes	145 – 147
	Communication Skills	147
	Exercises on Vocabulary	147 – 151
	Exercises on Grammar	151 – 153
	Test 9	153 – 155

Unit 1 - Reach For The Stars

1 - Main Vocabulary

astronaut	رائد فضاء	gymnastics	رياضة بدنية	side effects	أثار جانبية
currently	حاليا	launch	يطلق / اطلاق	space walk	السير في
distance	مسافة	leak	يتسرب/تسريب	spin	تدور
distance learning	التعلم عن بعد	mission	مهمة	spokes	أسلاك العجلة
examine	يفحص	repair	يصلح	system	نظام
gravity	جاذبية أرضية	secret	سر	weightless	بلا وزن

2 - Vocabulary

air-conditioning	تكييف هواء	instant	فوري	replacements	بدائل
almost	تقريبا	intention	نية / قصد	representative	مندوب / ممثل
anniversary	ذكرى سنوية	keep fit	يبقي لائقا بدنيا	rescue mission	مهمة إنقاذ
arable land	أرض قابلة للزراعة	lift	يرفع / مصعد	reveal a secret	يُفشي سر
arrangements	ترتيبات	location	موقع	rocket	صاروخ
below	أسفل	look down	ينظر لأسفل	route	طريق
benefit the economy	يفيد الاقتصاد	look like	يشبه	satellite	قمر صناعي
climate change	تغير المناخ	magic feeling	شعور سحري	sat-nav	الملاحة عن طريق القمر الصناعي
communications	اتصالات	maximum benefit	فائدة قصوى	space holidays	رحلات الفضاء
compare	يقارن	mobile phone	التليفون المحمول	space ship	سفينة فضاء
deaf	أصم	mutual benefit	فائدة متبادلة	space station	محطة فضاء
diplomatic mission	مهمة دبلوماسية	mystery	سر غامض	spinning wheel	العجلة الدوارة
disadvantage	عيب	orbit	مدار / تدور	stand still	يبقى ساكنا
drill	ثقب / يحفر	organization	منظمة	steam	بخار
equipment	معدات	outer space	الفضاء الخارجي	summer holiday	إجازة الصيف
exciting	مثير	space shuttle	مكوك فضاء	take turns	يأخذ دور
expert	خبير	password	كلمة السر	technology	تكنولوجيا
exploration	استكشاف	political system	نظام سياسي	temperature	درجة حرارة
far away	بعيد	predict	يتنبأ	transport	مواصلات / نقل
fuel pump	مضخة وقود	predictions	تنبؤات	treatment	علاج
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	probably	من المحتمل	vast area	مساحة شاسعة
grave violation	انتهاك خطير	questionnaire	استبيان	vowel sounds	أصوات متحركة
gravity	جاذبية أرضية	queue up	يصطف	walk round	يتجول
highly beneficial	مفيد للغاية	radio programme	برنامج راديو	well-trained	مدرب جيدا
horrible	رهيب	repair	يصلح / إصلاح	wheel	عجلة
humanitarian mission	مهمة إنسانية	replace	يستبدل	world tourism	السياحة العالمية
improve	يحسن / يتحسن	replacements	بدائل	zero gravity	معدوم الجاذبية

3 - Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
Affect	يؤثر علي	Effect	تأثير / أثر	Effective	مؤثر
Cost	يكلف	Cost	تكلفة	Costly	مكلف / غالي الثمن
Expect	يتوقع	Expectation	توقع	Expected	متوقع
Leak	يتسرب	Leak / Leakage	تسرب	Leaky	به تسريب
Systematize	يُضبط وفق نظام معين	System	نظام	Systematic	منظم
Weigh	يزن	Weight	الوزن	Weighty	ثقيل / هام
				Weightless	منعدم الوزن

4 - Important phrases

achieve prosperity and welfare	يحقق الرخاء والرفاهية	Every branch of knowledge	كل فروع المعرفة
achieve self-sufficiency	لتحقيق الاكتفاء الذاتي	In the course of the last years	في غضون الأعوام الأخيرة
Achieving safety for citizens	تحقيق الأمن للمواطنين	Right habits and moralities	العادات والأخلاق الصحيحة
develop individual awareness	لتنمية الوعي الفردي	We have to stand firmly against	علينا أن نقف بحزم ضد

5 - Important Vocabulary

Arab solidarity	التضامن العربي	limited	محدوده
artificial lake	بحيرة صناعية	make contributions to	يقدم إسهامات لـ
Benefit the economy	يفيد الاقتصاد	Maximum benefit	فائدة قصوى
catch up with	يساير = يواكب	Nervous system	الجهاز العصبي
Circulatory system	الجهاز الدوري	Pay attention to	ينتبه إلي
cover our needs	يغطي احتياجاتنا	peace loving country	دولة محبة للسلام
Digestive system	الجهاز الهضمي	political system	نظام سياسي
diplomatic mission	مهمة دبلوماسية	rescue mission	مهمة إنقاذ
Distance learning	التعلم عن بعد	Respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسي
exert great efforts	يبذل جهودا عظيمة	Reveal a secret	يكشف عن أو يُفشي سر
expenses	مصاريف	space invasion (conquering)	غزو الفضاء
grave violation	انتهاك خطير	space shuttle	مكوك فضاء
Improve living conditions	يحسن ظروف المعيشة	step by step	خطوة بخطوة
in favour of	لصالح / مؤيد لـ	the corner stone	حجر الزاوية
Launch a campaign	يشن حملة	the effective means	الوسيلة الفعالة
Launch a satellite	يطلق قمر صناعي	with all means	بكل السبل - الوسائل

6 - Words & antonyms كلمات و عكسها

Current	الحالي / الجاري	Past	الماضي
Thick	سميك	Thin	نحيف / رفيع / رقيق
Agreement	اتفاق	Disagreement	عدم اتفاق
Weighty = heavy	ثقيل	Light	خفيف
Weighty = important	هام	Unimportant , trivial	تافه / غير هام
Improve	يتحسن	deteriorate / Worsen	يسوء / يتدهور
Go down	ينخفض	Go up	يرتفع
Take off	تُقلع (الطائرة)	Land	تهبط
Secret	سر	Known	معروف
Dangerous	خطير	Safe	آمن

7 - Expressions

Agree with an opinion	يتفق مع رأي	Have fun with	يجد متعة في..
At a height of	علي ارتفاع	Land on the moon	يهبط علي القمر
Be attached to	مرتبط ب / مرفق مع	Live in space	يعيش في الفضاء
Be interested in	مهتم ب	Look after = take care of	يعتني ب
Be well trained to	مدرب جيدا لكي..	Look down on	ينظر من أعلي الي
Benefit from	يستفيد من	On a radio programme	في برنامج إذاعي
Break down	يتعطل	Queue up	يصطف في طابور
Do a space walk	يقوم بالمشي في الفضاء	Replace ... with	يستبدل .. ب
Do gymnastics	يقوم بأداء ألعاب الجمباز	Stand still	يقف بلا حراك
Do weightless sports	يقوم بأداء رياضات انعدام الوزن	Suffer from	يعاني من
Fall to the ground	يسقط علي الأرض	Take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
Feel excited about	يشعر بالإثارة تجاه	The distance from .. to	المسافة من..إلي
Fly by rocket	يطير مستقلا صاروخ	There's a problem with	هناك مشكلة في ..
Go on space holidays	يقوم بأجازة في الفضاء	treatment for	علاج لـ
Go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	Turn around	يستدير
Good luck with..	حظ سعيد في..	Walk around	يتجول ماشيا حول

8 - Definitions

Currently	- (happening) at the present time.	حالي / جاري
Examine (v)	-To look at something carefully in order to find out something.	يفحص
Gravity (n)	-The force that makes objects fall to the ground.	الجاذبية الأرضية
Gymnastics	- A sport in which skilful physical exercises and movements are performed.	رياضة بدنية
launch (n)	- sending a spacecraft into space.	يطلق
leak (n)	- A small hole that liquid or gas gets out through.	تسرب / فتحة للتسرب
Mission (n)	- An important job that someone has been asked to do.	مهمة
Secret (adj)	- known about by only a few people.	سر
Side effects	- An unexpected result of an activity, situation or event.	آثار جانبية
Spin (v)	- To turn around and around very quickly.	يلف / يدور
Spoke (n)	- One of the thin metal bars which connect the ring around the outside of a wheel to the centre.	أسلاك
System	- An organised way of doing something.	نظام

Language Notes

- Plane طائرة بمحرك
- Glider طائرة شراعية بدون محرك
- Shuttle مكوك فضاء
- Rocket صاروخ
- Spaceship سفينة فضاء

- I don't like travelling by plane.
- A glider flies slower than a plane.
- A shuttle travels into space.
- Astronauts fly into space in spaceships.
- A spaceship was sent into the SpaceShip yesterday.

- Cause يسبب
- cause of + اسم سبب
- reason with يتجادل مع / يحاول إقناع
- reason out يقتنع بالمنطق / يستنتج منطقيا
- reason for + اسم سبب / مبرر / داع
- The reason why جملة كاملة +

- The bad weather caused the fire.
- The police found out the cause of the crime.
- Don't reason with her, she won't change her mind.
- We reasoned it out and found that we are wrong.
- Can you tell me the reason for shouting?
- That is the reason why she is worried.

- Wonder	يتعجب / يتساءل	-I wondered if I could borrow your bike.
- wander	يتجول	- We wandered around the city centre.
-souvenir	هدية تذكارية	-We bought a lot of souvenirs when we were in Aswan.
-memory	ذاكرة	- My computer has 500GB memory.
-memory	تكري	- They always celebrate the memory of their marriage.
-memorial	نُصْب تذكاري	- This statue is placed here as a memorial of the leader.
-anniversary	تكري سنوية	- We celebrated our fifth wedding anniversary last week.
-Invent	يخترع شيء جديد لم يكن موجود من قبل	- Graham Bill invented the telephone.
-Discover	يكتشف شيء كان موجود ولكنه غير معروف	- Isaac Newton discovered gravity.
-Explore	يستكشف شيء غريب و يعرف شيء عنه	- I want to explore that old desert building .
-Help + (to + inf. / inf.)	يساعد	- The teacher helped me (to) understand the lesson.
-Help with / in + n.		- The teacher helped me with the lesson.
- Arrive in	يصل مكان كبير	-We arrived in London an hour ago.
- Arrive at	يصل مكان صغير	- He has just arrived at the cinema.
- Arrive	بدون حرف جر (لا يأتي بعدها مفعول)	- When will you arrive?
-Reach + object	يصل بدون حرف جر	- I reached the station an hour late.
-Get to	يصل إلى (بشيء من الجهد او الصعوبة)	- They got to the bus stop at 7:30.
-Everyday (adj.)	تستخدم كلمة واحدة بمعنى (يومي) وهي في هذه الحالة (صفة)	- The details of his everyday life show that he is careful.
-Every day (adv.)	تستخدم كلمتان منفصلتان بمعنى كل يوم وهي في هذه الحالة حال.	- Mum goes shopping every day.
-shoot	يطلق النار من بندقية أو مسدس	- A police officer shot the thief.
-erupt	يثور - ينفجر (بركان)	- The volcano hasn't erupted since 1229.
-revolt	يثور على وضع او نظام	-The Egyptians used to revolt against English occupation.
-destination	مكان الوصول (المكان المقصود)	-The United States is my next destination.
-location	موقع	- The location of Egypt is important.
-site	موقع أثرى / بناء / موقع على الانترنت	-The site is full of actors and cameramen.
-Reform	يقوم بإدخال تعديل أو تحسين علي نظام معين	- There are important political reforms in Egypt.
-repair	إصلاح - ترميم (شيء أو مبنى)	- Old buildings in our street are in need of repair.
-expect to + inf.	مصدر يتوقع	- I didn't expect to see you here.
- expect (that) + Sub + will + inf.	يتوقع في المضارع	- I expect you will get full marks.
- expected (that)+ Subj.+ would + inf.	كان يتوقع في الماضي	
- We expected you would be tired after the match.		
<p>- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع: (someone / somebody / anyone / anybody / everyone / everybody / no one / nobody) - Everyone was happy. They enjoyed their time.</p> <p>- لاحظ استخدام فعل جمع وضمير جمع مع (none): - None are at home now. They are all out.</p> <p>- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد وضمير مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية : (something / anything / everything / nothing) - Something has fallen to the ground. It made a loud voice.</p>		

- It's a waste of time / money + V. ing: مضیعة للوقت / المال

-It's a waste of money buying all these clothes.

- orbit يدور حول شیء

- The moon orbits the earth.

- spin / يدور (حول نفسه)

- A fan spins to make us feel cooler.

- Start / Begin + (to + inf. / V. ing)

- He started to play football when he was six.

- He started playing football when he was six.

- ولكن عند استخدام start / begin في المضارع المستمر يأتي بعدهما to + inf.

- They are starting to have lunch.

- Begin / Start by + n./ V.ing

- The speaker started by describing his journey to China.

- Begin/ Start with+ n./ V.ing

- The speaker started with a description of his journey to China.

- spend + time +v.ing يقضى وقت

- I spent the summer holiday doing some work on my computer.

- spend مال (يصرف)

- He spent a lot of money last week.

- Spend money on مال علي (يصرف) -We should spend more money on education and health care.

- يُستخدم المقطع less بمعنى without مع الكثير من الكلمات مثل:

- Weightless / عاجز helpless بلا نهاية / endless / غير مثمر / غير مجدي / fruitless / usefless / منعقد الوزن / ولكن لاحظ أن كلمة priceless معناها لا يُقدر بثمن:

- Ancient Egyptian monuments are priceless.

- Look forward to + n. / V. + ing:

- We look forward to a better future for our children.

-She looks forward to traveling abroad.

- Treatment for علاج لـ

- Scientists try hard to find a treatment for cancer.

- Look down on

- Space travellers can look down on the earth.

- Have fun with

- Space travelers can have fun with weightless football.

- promise to = make a promise to

- He promised (made a promise) to help me with my homework.

-Compare to يقارن بين شينين فقط

- Russia is large, compared to (with) Egypt.

-Compare with يقارن بين شينين أو شخصين

- Boys are stronger if they are compared with girls.

- The town is noisier compared with (to) the country.

-compared to / with = in comparison with / to

- In comparison with girls, boys are stronger. = Boys are stronger compared with girls.

-Queue (up) يقف في طابور لانتظار دور

- People will be queuing to book their holidays in space.

- Queue = line طابور (يقف فيه الناس واحدا تلو الآخر)

-There is a long queue in front of the ticket office .

- Row صف (ثابت)

- Our house is the first row.

- Row صف (من الناس أو الأشياء جنباً إلى جنب)

- I'd like to sit in the second row.

-such a / an + اسم مفرد + صفة

- Ali is such a naughty boy.

-Gymnastics ألعاب القوى الجمباز (يليه الفعل في صيغة المفرد)

- A sport in which physical exercises and movements are performed.

-The + صيغة مقارنة the + صيغة مقارنة

كلما كلما

- تستخدم هذه الصيغة عندما نريد أن نقول أن هناك شيئاً يعتمد على شيء آخر

- The older you get, the more experienced you become.

- The more you train, the fitter you get.

-A four-week mission

مهمة لمدة اربع اسابيع

- لاحظ أن four-week عبارة عن صفة مركبة و الصفة لا تجمع و لذلك لم نجعل كلمة week

- Make + مصدر + مفعول - The coach made him do the exercise again.

- be made + مصدر

- He was made to do the exercise again.

-في حالة المبني للمجهول نستخدم (مصدر + to)

- Way of + v. + ing = way to + مصدر - There are many ways of collecting money for charities.
- There are many ways to collect money for charities.
- Astronaut - The person who travels into outer space.
- Astronomer - The person who studies stars and planets.
- Astrologer - The person who predicts the future.
- How + adj + be + subject ? سؤال - How good are you at science? - I am very good.
- How + adj + subject + be! تعجب - How good you are at science!
- Expert (in- on) خبير (متخصص في مجال علمي) - Dr. Elbaz is an expert in remote sensing.
- Experienced (adj) لديه خبرة - Yusuf is experienced in sales.
- In + فترة زمنية (Future) - I will travel to the USA in 2020.
- In + سنة ماضية (past) - He will finish homework in two hours.
- In + سنة قادمة (future) - We visited England in 1999.

- Sports رياضي - رياضات
- In space, tourists can do weightless sports. - I want to join a sports club.

Do	Sport / favour / work/job/operation/homework/post graduate studies
launch	A rocket / a spaceship / a shuttle / a campaign / a fashion
Make	Mistake/promise/prediction/suggestion/decision/money
A leak In	Tap/gas tube/cup/tank/hose / pipe
Go	for a holiday/for a walk/shopping/swimming/ fishing / sightseeing

Communication Skills

1 - Expressing opinions with reasons

-I think/believe... because...	I think(believe) he will be late because he missed the bus to school.
-In my opinion /view...as...	In my opinion, we should visit him at home as he is ill.
-If you ask me... so that	If you ask me, she should help her so that she can finish the cooking quickly

2 - Agreeing and disagreeing

Agreeing with an opinion	Disagreeing with an opinion.
I (completely) agree.	I (completely) disagree.
I couldn't agree more.	I don't agree.
(Yes), you are (quite) right.	I'm not (so) sure.
I'd go along with that.	I don't think so.
That's true.	That's (just) not true.

Exercises

Respond the following situations:

- 1- A friend asks you why you'd like to be a doctor.
- 2- A friend thinks that money is the root of all evil. You agree.
- 3- A friend thinks that space exploration is a waste of money. You disagree giving a reason.
- 4- A relative wants to know the best thing about your school.
- 5- A tourist asks you about the next train to Luxor. Tell him there is one at 10 o'clock.

- 6- Someone asks you what you plan to do after school. You intend to go to the library.
- 7- Someone thanked you for helping him.
- 8- You are against the idea of using nuclear energy.
- 9- You are asked about your opinion about space travel. Give a reason for your opinion.
- 10- You are asked to express why you do a sport.
- 11- You express your opinion about Tuk Tuk giving a reason.
- 12- You look at the sky and predict the weather of tomorrow.
- 13- You meet your friend on 1st January.
- 14- You regretted travelling by car to Aswan.
- 15- You tell your friend why you choose Ali as a leader of the team.
- 16- You've arranged to have lunch with your brother tomorrow.
- 17- Your friend asks you if you would like to be a leader. You say yes and tell him why.
- 18- Your friend thinks that people will spend holiday on the moon.
- 19- Your teacher asks you why you enjoy learning English.

Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1-A: On which Platform is the train to Aswan? B: Platform No 5
A: Can you carry my bags to the platform, please? B: With pleasure, sir.

Place:- Speaker A:- Speaker B: - Function:

- 2- A: How do you like this T-shirt? B: It's lovely but I'd rather have it in white.
A: Red is in fashion now? B: But I can't stand it.
A: All right. I'll bring you a white one.

Place:- Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

- 3- A: Can I get out for a walk? B: Yes. But take care. It is wonderful to look down on the Earth that always spins. A : thanks , sir

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

- 4- A: What is wrong with you? B: I have a nasty headache.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

- 5- A: Can you show me where I can try this dress on? B: The fitting rooms are on the left over there

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

- 6- A : Have you repaired my watch?
B : Sorry, we haven't finished repairing it. You can collect it tomorrow.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. People usuallyto book their holidays every year.
a-queue b- line c-vote d-stand
2. July 2009 was the 40th of man first walking on the moon.
a-adversary b-annually c-university d-anniversary
3. It is thought..... stations will be built up to enjoy space travel.
a-space b- spade c-spice d-spare
4. The space station itself will be like a giant spinning wheel with.... like a bike wheel.
a-speak b- spokes c-wires d-manners
5. The navy a new warship last week.
a-launched b-lunched c- punched d-attached

6. The contents of the report were to the press.
a-baked b-cheated c-liked d-leaked
7. The car stopped because there was a in the petrol tank.
a-leak b-lake c-lick d-lock
8. Our air conditioning has broken down, but someone is coming to it tomorrow.
a- destroy b-spoil c-pair d-repair
9. Some drivers have a sat-nav... in their car to help them find the best route.
a-order b-steer c-system d-tool
10. The astronauts went on a space walk to replace a broken fuel pump.
a-two-hours b- two hour c- two hour's d-two hours'
11. Everyone who travelled in space has described his magical feeling.
a- have b- had c- has d- have had
12. They went on a four-hour space to replace a broken fuel pump.
a-walk b-talk c-swim d-jump
13. The rocket is going to reach the Moon on Tuesday. Everyone watched the on TV.
a-launch b-start c-beginning- d-set up
14. The moon has less than the earth, so you could jump much higher there.
a-degree b-gravity c-destiny d-humidity
15. Doing is a very good way of keeping fit.
a- gymnastics b-football c-rackets d-handball
16. Two of the on the front wheel of my bike were broken in the accident.
a-spokes b-tyros -bars d-tyres
17. The between Cairo and London is 3, 5000 kilometers.
a- road b- corridor c-distance d- way
18. "Distance" means the amount of between two places.
a-place b-time c-money d-space
19. When you are in space, it must be very difficult to stand still.
a- weighting b-weight c-weightless d-weighty
20. I'm working for important exams. Then, when I finish, I'm going on holiday.
a- Currently b-Current c-Currency d-Currencies
21. Space costs a lot of money.
a-exploration b-explanation c-expectation- d-exemption
22. makes objects fall to the ground.
a-Gravity b-Ability c-Activity d-Capacity
23. is a sport in which physical exercises and movements are performed.
a- Writings b-Gymnastics c-Handball d-Mechanics
24. Everyone knows who stole it, but are all afraid to tell anyone.
a-he b-you c-she d-they
25. The storm has had a bad on the crops.
a-effect b-afflict c-affect d-detect
26. A space station will the Earth.
a-turn b- spin c- move d- orbit
27. Space tourists will fly to the space station by
a-ship b-boat c-plane d-rocket
28. This map shows the exact of the project.
a-existence b-destination c-location d-generation
29. Some people have more from this TV programme than others.
a-comforted b-infected c- benefited d- filtered
30. The Earth on its axis.
a-stems b-stains c-spins d-springs
31. I'm afraid I don't agree your opinion.
a-of b-at c-with d-on
32. If your car breaks you can use the mobile phone to get help.
a-out b-into c-through d-down
33. Astronauts cope weightlessness inside a spacecraft.
a-up b-for c-by d-with
34. The plane will take at 7.30 in the morning.

- a-on b-down c-after d-off*
35. The speaker started describing his journey to China.
a- by b- at c- in d- with
36. The speaker started a description of his journey to China.
a- with b- at c- by d-in
37. He always helps me my homework.
a- with b- at c- by d-in
38. A lot of people would like to go..... space holidays.
a-on b-in c-at d- with
39. The rocket will be orbiting the Eartha height of 320 kilometres
a-on b-in c-at d- with
40. At my class, my students take to answer my questions.
a-runs b-turns c-at d- with
41. The contents of the report were to the press.
a-baked b- cheated c- liked d- leaked
42. is a sport in which physical exercises and movements are performed.
a- Statistics b - Gymnastics c - Classics d - Mechanics
43. Astronauts usually work in conditions.
a-weightless b- useless c- hopeless d- meaningless
44. gymnastics is a very good way of keeping fit.
a- Doing b- Making c- Having d- Taking
45. A space station will the Earth.
a- turn b- spin c- move d- orbit
46. Space tourists will fly to the space station by
a-ship b- boat c- plane d- rocket
47. The doctor the patient carefully.
a-expected b- extended c - examined d- explained
48. China is going to a new satellite into space soon.
a-launch b - branch c- bunch d - crash
49. A thin metal bar which connects the ring around the outside of a wheel to its centre is called.....
a-spin b- spoke c- speak d- rotate
50. is the amount of space between two places.
a-distant b-distance c- instance d - molecule
51. What makes objects fall to the ground is called
a- gravity b- grave c- attraction d- exploration
52. When we say turn around and around very quickly we mean
a-spin b- rotation c- lap d- axis
53. The car stopped because there was a in the petrol tank.
a-traffic b - lake c - leak d- lack
54. Our air-conditioning has broken down, but someone is coming to it tomorrow.
a-fax b- fix c- launch d - seek
55. The doctor me carefully before he gave me the medicine.
a- fixed b- repaired c- examined d- recovered
56. Computer passwords should always be You should never tell anyone.
a- secret b - known c - disbelieved d- incredible
57. The astronauts went on a two-hour to replace a broken fuel pump.
a-side walk b - space walk c - country walk d- walk
58. Some drivers have a sat-nav in their car to help them find the best route.
a-discipline b- system c - circulation d - repair
59. The rocket is going to reach the Moon on Tuesday. Everyone watched the on TV.
a-lunch b-launch c- exploration d- excavation
60. Space can take several years.
a- tasks b- jobs c - missions d- discussion
61. My brother can easily do a spin, as she has been doing.....for years.
a) side effects b) gymnastics c) football d) gravity
62. One of theon my bicycle wheel needs to be repaired,
a) handles b)pedals c) chains d) spokes

63. The rain was so heavy that the water wheel.....for three days.
a) launched b) leaked c) spun d) washed
64.is the force that keeps objects on earth.
a) Gravity b) Gymnastics c) Spoke d) Gravy
65. The doctor assured us that there would be no.....from the medicine.
a) systems b) feeling c) side effects d) fashioning
66. The fashion house is nowsome new winter dresses.
a) launching b) lunching c) condemning d) coaching

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1- Activity is the force that makes things fall to the ground.
- 2- After the storm, they had to compare the roof.
- 3- Am I ask you about your name?
- 4- An astronomer is the person who has been trained for travelling in spacecraft.
- 5- At our school, there are a lot of students who are interested on English.
- 6- At the moment, the main advantage of a space holiday is its cost. It is very expensive.
- 7- Aya looks forward to be a doctor?
- 8- Because of its height and width, the container had plenty of place for storage.
- 9- Concurrently, the cost of a space holiday is very high.
- 10- Currency, the cost of a holiday is very high.
- 11- Doctors must test patients before giving medicine.
- 12- Egypt is the first Arab Country to launder a satellite.
- 13- Even if we aren't scientists, many of us are interested in space explanation.
- 14- Everyone travelled in space described the magical feeling of looking down on the Earth.
- 15- Her mansion in life is to help the poor.
- 16- Hind arrived Cairo airport.
- 17- How much does the suit coast?
- 18- I have never be to Aswan.
- 19- I'm looking forward to travel to space.
- 20- In space, you can have fun with weighty football and gymnastics.
- 21- In the future people will go for space holidays.
- 22- In the next ten years, people will be queuing to lock their holidays in space.
- 23- In the Past, people uses to go into their banks.
- 24- It is wonderful to see the Earth spinning under you.
- 25- July 1969 was when people first laundered on the moon.
- 26- July 2009 was the fortieth memorial of man first walking on the moon.
- 27- Local warming is changing the weather in many parts of the world.
- 28- Marwa looks forward to visit Rome.
- 29- My father has has a bank account since he was 18.
- 30- My father helped me doing the homework.
- 31- My father learns to drive a car four years ago.
- 32- People will be rowing to book space holidays.
- 33- Scientists are testing the new drug to find out if it has any outside effects.
- 34- Smoking has bad side affects.
- 35- Space tourists can make weightless sports in space.
- 36- Space tourists will fly to the space station by racket.
- 37- Surgeons wear private uniforms.
- 38- The content of the report was leak to the press.
- 39- The distant between Cairo and Asyut is 375 km.
- 40- The feeling of looking down on the Earth from space is described as logical.
- 41- The flywheel orbits when the power is turned on.
- 42- The space station will be ordering the Earth at a height of 320 km.
- 43- The students were inspected on ancient Egyptian history.
- 44- The sun is a planet.
- 45- The will be weightloss sports in the future.
- 46- They had a party to celebrate their silver wedding party
- 47- They will fly by rocks to space station.
- 48- Two sparks in the wheel of my bicycle were broken.
- 49- We always meet in Sunday.
- 50- We really need to spend more money in education.

51- Would you like being an astronaut?

52- Yara's sister helped her doing the homework.

53- Yesterday at this time, I have watching TV.

-Translate into Arabic:

For most people, the main disadvantage at the moment is the cost of space holidays. Currently, the cost of a holiday is very high. But like everything else, the more people want to do something, the cheaper it will become. So, if you are interested, start saving now.

Since its inauguration, the Suez Canal has been one of Egypt's outstanding geographical, historical and cultural landmarks. With its central location, it links the east to the west .It is considered a major artery of world trade.

Space Technology is helping us to understand what is beyond Earth. It has already helped us a great deal and we are always discovering more because of it. If we didn't have space technology we might still think that the Earth is flat.

-Translate into English:

- يخطيء كثير من الناس عندما يعتقدوا ان استكشاف الفضاء مضيعة للوقت و المال.

- لا تزال سياحة الفضاء قاصرة علي الاغنياء فقط.

- تستخدم الاقمار الصناعية في الفضاء للاتصالات و التنبؤ عن احوال الطقس .

- تسعى الدول المتقدمة لغزو الفضاء واقامة محطات فضائية لجمع المعلومات عن الكواكب و المجرات الاخرى في هذا الكون الفسيح.

Grammar

Expressing The Future

1-The Simple Future Tense

-- يتكون المستقبل البسيط المبني للمعلوم من:

Form

- Subj. فاعل + will / shall + inf.....

- لاحظ استخدام will مع كل الضمان ويمكن استخدام (shall) مع (I / we) فقط:

- I will (shall) wait for you at the airport. - Ali will buy a camera tomorrow.

NEGATION

- Subj. فاعل + Will not(won't)/ shall not (shan't)+ inf. ...

- We won't be ready at six. - Amira won't attend the party.

Yes/No Q.

Will / shall + Subj. فاعل + inf..... ?

- Will you wait for the bus ?

- Yes. I will (wait for the bus). No, I won't(wait for the bus).

' Wh.' Q.

- Q.W. + Will / shall + Subj. فاعل + inf..... ?

- When will they move to their new house? - Where will the meeting be held ?

- يتكون المستقبل البسيط المبني للمجهول من:

Passive

Obj. المفعول + Will / shall +be + P.P.....

- A camera will be bought (by Ali) tomorrow.

يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع كلمات مثل:

Next (year / month / week / Friday.....) / in the future / soon / tomorrow / this time(next week / tomorrow.....) / in (a year, month, week.....)

- ويستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع (If) في الحالة الأولى :

- If you win the race, I'll be very happy for you.

Uses of Will

1- التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية: -

-She'll be sixteen tomorrow.

- My mum will be very old in twenty years.

2 - التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة عدم وجود دليل غالبا مع:

I expect .../I'm sure .../I feel sure .../ I think.../I don't think... /I believe.. / Perhaps/I wonder... / probably / I suppose... /I hope

- I expect she will get married soon.

-She'll probably leave early today.

- We don't think they will help us.

- I wonder when you will buy the computer.

3 - اتخاذ قرار سريع بعمل شيء ما: -

- We'll have a cold drink.

- I'll buy this CD.

4- عند عرض عمل شيء او تقديم خدمة ما:

- I'll wash the dishes.

- I'll fix the car for you.

5 - عندما نطلب من شخص عمل شيء: -

- Will you help me carry this bag, please?

- I hope you will look after the baby.

6 - الترتيب لعمل شيء وقت الحديث دون تخطيط مسبق:

-I and you will meet this evening.

7 - عمل الوعود والتهديدات:

- I'll buy you a computer when you pass the final exam. - You won't get your prize if you come late.

Uses of Shall

1 - يمكن استخدام (shall) بدلا من (will) مع (I / We) للتعبير عن المستقبل البسيط :

- I / We shall go shopping this afternoon. - I / We shall spend the weekend in the country.

2- تستخدم (shall) ايضا في تكوين الاقتراح :

- Shall we meet you at the corner?

3- يمكن استخدام (shall) في تقديم عرض :

- Shall I help you with the cooking?

- Shall we clean the kitchen for you?

4- (في السؤال المذيل)

- will not → won't

- Shall not → shan't

- We shall spend the weekend in the country, shan't we?

2 - Be + going to + inf.

Form

- Subj. الفاعل + am / is / are + going to + inf.....

- We are going to play tennis. - I'm going to make some coffee.

Negation

- Subj. الفاعل + am not / is not (isn't)/ are not (aren't) + going to + inf....

- They aren't going to watch my wedding video.

Yes/No Q.

- Am/ Is/ Are+ Subj. الفاعل + going to + inf.....?

- Is she going to attend the meeting? -Yes, she is (going to attend the meeting).

- No, she isn't (going to attend the meeting).

'Wh-'Q.

- Q.W. الاستفهام + am / is / are + Subj. الفاعل + going to + inf..... ?

- Where are you going to spend the summer holiday?

Passive

Obj. المفعول + am/ is/ are + going to + be + P.P.....

- Tennis is going to be played (by us).

- تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن نية أو عمل مخطط له قبل لحظة الحديث ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

Intend / intention / plan / have ... in mind

- We have plans to replace our old car with a new one.

= We are going to replace our old car with a new one.

- التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة وجود دليل غالبا مع:

I expect .../I'm sure .../I feel sure .../ I think.../I don't think... /I believe.. / Perhaps/I wonder... / I

suppose...

- I think it's going to rain as the sky seems very cloudy.

- و تستخدم ايضا للتعبير عما سيحدث في المستقبل اذا كان هناك قرار مسبق ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

decided / have decided / made a decision / made up ... mind

- They are going to go shopping. They have decided.

- و تستخدم ايضا للتعبير عن أشياء على وشك الحدوث:

- Watch out! You are going to fall.

- كما يستخدم الماضي من هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن نية كانت موجودة لعمل شيء لم يحدث في الماضي:

- I was going to take the six o'clock train, but I got up late.

- لاحظ تساوي الصيغ التالية في بعض و ليس كل الاحوال:-

→ - Subj. الفاعل + am / is / are + going to + inf.....

→ = Subj. الفاعل + intend / plan to + inf.....

→ = Subj. الفاعل + have the intention to + inf.....

→ = Subj. الفاعل + be about to + inf.....

- We are going to play tennis.

= We intend to play tennis.

= we have the intention to play tennis.

- Be careful! You are going to fall. - - Be careful! You are about to fall.

3- The present Continuous for Future Arrangements

نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن مستقبل عندما نتحدث عن ترتيبات لوقت معين في المستقبل ولا بد أن يكون الفاعل عاقل ولا بد من وجود تعبير زمني يدل على المستقبل:

1 - يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل في حالة وجود ترتيبات مسبقة ، و يدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

arranged / have arranged / made arrangements / prepared / have prepared / made preparations

- He has arranged everything. He's spending his holiday in Paris.

- I have booked two tickets. I'm traveling to Spain with my sister tomorrow.

2 - يستخدم المضارع المستمر لوصف ترتيبات شخصية مثل الأنشطة الإجتماعية :

- I'm arriving at Luxor next week.

- We're flying to France in three weeks.

- لاحظ أنه يجب استخدام كلمة زمنية لكي نجعل المضارع المستمر مستقبلا.

- I'm meeting him for lunch tomorrow.

- Where are you traveling next summer? - I'm traveling to London.

- كثيرا ما نستخدم هذه الصيغة مع come و go ومع أفعال مثل see - stay - visit - meet

- I'm meeting them on Saturday.

- They're going tomorrow.

- لاحظ أن المستقبل في هذه الحالة ليس فقط مستقبلا قريبا ولكن من الممكن أن نقول :

- He's coming back in ten years.

- We're going back to the states in three years.

- لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات واعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات ، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر :

- He's getting married next Friday.

- We're going back to the states in three years.

- لاحظ كذلك أن الأنشطة التي تقوم بها المؤسسات تستلزم ترتيبات ، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر :

- Our school is taking part in the sports competition next year.

- This company is sending a delegation to the conference next week.

- الأفعال التي لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة لا تستخدم في المضارع المستمر كمستقبل

- لاحظ ما يلي :

- Are you doing anything tonight?

- Yes, I'm playing tennis.

- Are you taking a holiday this year?

- Yes, we have just arranged a holiday.

- We're spending ten days in Spain.

4- The present Simple for the Future

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل (و يرتبط ذلك بجداول المواعيد الثابتة الخاصة مثلا بوسائل المواصلات و المسرح و السينما و المدرسةالخ):

-Your train leaves at 6 am tomorrow morning.

-The night programme of Renaissance cinema starts at 12am.

- كما يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية و أدوات الشرط و بعض الروابط الأخرى:

-When I get up, I'll phone you. - If I meet Ali, I will invite him to my birthday party.

5-The future continuous المستقبل المستمر

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا في وقت معين في المستقبل:-

Form Subj. فاعل + will / shall + be + v.ing.....

-Ali : I'd like to invite you to my birthday party at five o'clock tomorrow?

- Ahmed : Sorry, I'll be helping my grandpa at the garage.

- يستخدم للتعبير خطط الآخرين (خاصة عندما نريد شيئا من احد):

- Will you be using your dictionary tomorrow? - No, you can borrow it.

- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث من المرجح حدوثه في وقت معين في المستقبل:

- I'll be staying up late tomorrow night preparing for the English exam.

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا في المستقبل عندما سيقع حدث آخر:-

- We will be watching the football match when my father comes home from work.

6- The Future Perfect المستقبل التام

Form - Subj. فاعل + will / shall + have + P.P.

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى او تم في وقت معين في المستقبل:-

They will have finished the English course in two months' time.

We will have built our new house by April next year.

- يستخدم المستقبل التام مع تعبيرات زمنية مثل:

- In (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes' /.....) time

- By next time (في المرة القادمة by next Monday / by then حينئذ etc.)

- Before (next time / four o'clock / tomorrow morning / next Monday.... etc.)

- This time (tomorrow/ next Monday / next week etc.)

لتغيير درجة اليقين: (will) بدلا من (may / might). يمكن استخدام

- My father may have arrived from Aswan by this time tomorrow. I'm not sure.

- By 2050, people might have built houses on the moon.

7- The Future Perfect continuous المستقبل التام المستمر

Form Subj. فاعل + will / shall + have + been+ v.ing

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يستمر حتي وقت معين او حتي وقوع حدث آخر في المستقبل:-

-You will have been waiting for more than two hours when her plane finally arrives.

- She is going to have been working at that company for three years when it finally closes.

- James will have been teaching at the university for more than a year by the time he leaves for Asia.

يستخدم للتعبير عن السبب او النتيجة المترتبة علي حدث سوف يقع في المستقبل:-

- Ibraheem will be tired when he gets home because he will have been jogging for over an hour.

- Eman's English will be perfect when she returns to Egypt because she will have been studying English in the United States for over two years.

- يمكن استخدام (be+going to) لتؤدي نفس المعني تقريبا بدلا من (will)

- Eman's English will be perfect when she returns to Egypt because she is going to have been studying English in the United States for over two years.

-You are going to have been waiting for more than two hours when her plane finally arrives.

Notice the following sentences.

1. Are you going to visit your aunt? - Yes, I'm visiting her on Monday.
2. The doorbell is ringing. I'll who is there.
3. What are your plans for the summer holiday? - I'm traveling to France.
4. What is the weather forecast for the next three days? - It's going to be very hot.
5. Would you like tea or coffee? - I think I'll have coffee.

8- Time Conjunctions استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع المستقبل

- After/As soon as/the moment حدث أول مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام → مستقبل
- = Before/When / By the time + حدث ثان مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام → مستقبل
- = حدث ثان مستقبل بسيط منفى غالبا + till /until + حدث أول مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام

- Before she types the letters, she will send the e-mails.
- = After she sends the e-mails, she will type the letter.
- = She won't send the e-mails until she types the letter.

- لاحظ أنه بدلا من المستقبل يمكن أحيانا استخدام فعل أمر :

- After you feed the baby, please, put him to his bed.
- Don't leave until you have typed all the letters.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer:

1. My English lesson at four o'clock this afternoon.
a-is stating b-starts c-has been starting d-start
2. It's arranged. We to the Red Sea this summer.
a-will go b-go c-are going d-may go
3. I expect that Al-Ahly the league. They have the best players and trainer in Egypt.
a-win b- are going to win c- will win d-are winning
4. I think my cousinengineering. He is very clever at Maths.
a-will study b-studies c-going to study d-would study
5. The launch of the campaign at 9.50 tomorrow.
a-is being b-are being c-is d-was
6. I can't meet you this afternoon. I the shopping.
a-am doing b-do c-have done d-may do
7. My train at 11 o'clock tomorrow.
a-is leaving b-shall leave c-leave d-leaves
8. I am studying medicine. I a doctor.
a- am going to be b-be c-am being d-may be
9. Somebody is knocking on the door. I and open it.
a-am going b-will go c-have gone d-go
10. Ahmed to England next Sunday. Everything is arranged.
a-is flying b-flies c-fly d-would fly
11. Mohamed is driving at breakneck speed. He an accident.
a- is going to have b-would have c-has d-is having
12. Watch out! You the glasses.
a- are going to drop b-drop c-are dropping d-would drop
13.help me with this heavy bag, please?
a- Are you going to b- Will you c-Do you d-Should you
14. I 25 next Monday.
a-am going to be b-will be c-am being d-be
15. Look at those black clouds. It.....
a- is going to rain b-is raining c- rains d- isn't raining

16. Be careful! You your coffee.
a- are going to spill b- are spilling c- will spill d- spill
17. We a new car, we have prepared everything.
a) will buy b) are going to buy c) are buying d) buy
18. They arranged everything for the journey, they tomorrow .
a) leave b) are leaving c) are going to leave d) will leave
19. According to the timetable the next bus at 10 am.
a) will move b) moves c) is going to move d) is moving
20. I think she he next exam.
a) will pass b) is going to pass c) is passing d) passes
21. Don't be late for the cinema, the film at 9 as usual.
a) will start b) starts c) is starting d) is going to start.
22. He me the details after he meets the boss.
a) tells b) will tell c) is going to tell d) is telling
23. That's the phone. I it.
a- answer b- am answering c - would answer d - will answer
24. I think my cousin engineering. He is very clever at Maths.
a- will study b - studies c- going to study d - would study
25. My German lesson at four o'clock this afternoon.
a- is stating b- starts c- has been starting d - start
26. We probably be there for two weeks.
a- will b - may c- are going to d - are
27. I can't meet you this afternoon. I the shopping.
a- am doing b- do c - have done d- may do
28. My plane at 10 o'clock tomorrow.
a- is leaving b- shall leave c- leave d- leaves
29. I am studying medicine. I a doctor.
a- may be b- am going to be c - am being d - be
30. I expect that he the match.
a- wins b- will win c- is going to win d- is winning
31. Somebody is knocking on the door. I and open it.
a- am going b- will go c- have gone d- go
32. She to Spain next Monday. Everything is arranged.
a- is flying b - flies c- fly d - would fly
33. What are your plans for tomorrow? - I tennis with a friend.
a- am going to play b- play c- have played d- shouldn't play
34. Watch out! You the glasses.
a- are dropping b- drop c - are going to drop d- would drop
35. Don't worry. I you the money you need.
a- lend b- am lending c- will lend d- should lend
36. It's arranged. We to the Red Sea this summer.
a- will go b - go c- are going d- may go
37. I think you very good at squash.
a- will be b- is going to be c- is being d- will
38. A: I am going on holiday tomorrow. B: I'm sure you it.
a- are going to enjoy b- are enjoying c- enjoy d- will enjoy
39. A: What are you doing at the weekend? B: I expect I some time with my friends.
a- am going to spend b- am Spending c - Will spend d- spend
40. I think the weather in England cold and rainy.
a- will be b- is going to be c- is being d- shall be
41. There's not a cloud in the sky- it another very sunny day.
a- is going to be b - are being c - are going be d - will be
42. A: This year I go swimming every day. B: That's a good idea. You will get very fit.
a- am going to b- am going c- will d- will be going
43. Don't pick up the phone. I it.
a- answer b- am answering c- will answer d- am going to answer
44. I if I don't get a pay rise.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>a- 'll resign</i> | <i>b – resign</i> | <i>c - am resigning</i> | <i>d- would resign</i> |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
45. After I have studied, I TV.
a- am going to watch b- will watch c- watch d- am watching
46. The film at 7.30.
a- would start b- starts c- is starting d- is started
47. We won't start the meeting until you.....
a- arrive b- had arrived c- will arrive d- arrives .
48. He..... to Aswan tomorrow. He's got his ticket
a- 's traveling b- travels c - 'd travel d - 'll travel
49. I..... the car for you.
a- clean b- am cleaning c- have been cleaning d- 'll clean
50. I..... to the airport at 4 o'clock tomorrow.
a- will have driven b- am going to drive c- 'll be driving d- will drive
51. Would you like fish or chicken? - I think I..... chicken.
a- 'll have b- am having c- am going to have d- have
52. Are you..... tennis after school today?
a- plays b- played c- playing d- play

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. After he is seeing the film, he will go to bed.
2. As soon as he meet his friend, he will go to the theatre.
3. As soon as he will finish the job, he will go to the theatre.
4. Before she cleans the house, she is doing the shopping.
5. Can she intend to study medicine in the USA?
6. Football is an individual sport.
7. Football players pass the ball to each other until one player can win a goal.
8. From 5 to 6 tomorrow, I am studying English.
9. He travels to Paris tomorrow. He's got the ticket.
10. I expect that our team must win the match.
11. I going to London next summer.
12. I have decided that I am traveling abroad next week.
13. I hope they will won the cup.
14. I love walk around late at night during the summer.
15. I think he crashes. He is driving in a crazy way.
16. I would call the police if you don't stop this noise.
17. If you don't do your homework, you shall be punished.
18. I'm going build a house.
19. It is an interesting book. I'm sure you enjoy reading it.
20. It will rain. The sky's looking very dark.
21. My eldest daughter would be 22 next June.
22. My sister is going to be 11 years old next week.
23. Perhaps she would visit us tomorrow.
24. Players should play well to win the other teams.
25. She intends to visiting her aunt next Friday.
26. She is gone to finish her work early today.
27. She leaves when the meeting ends.
28. She won't go shopping when she has dusted the furniture.
29. The bookcase isn't well fixed. It's will go falling.
30. The boy is fell in the river, I am going to save him.
31. The exams will be next month.
32. The film shall start at 7 p.m. tomorrow evening.
33. The next plane will arrive at 3.
34. The shirt is fashionable; I can buy it soon.
35. The shirt is fashionable; I would buy it soon.
36. The water is boiling – I am going to turn the gas off.
37. They leave for London tomorrow. They've arranged everything.
38. We are packing our luggage because we have gone to travel to Italy.
39. We have prepared everything, we will leave tomorrow.
40. You should cooperate with other players to score a lot of ends.

Test 1

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to the following situations:

- 1) Someone says that computers are bad thing .you don't have the same opinion.
- 2) Someone says that space exploration is too expensive .You agree.
- 3) One of your friends says he thinks walking in space would be very frightening .You think he is right.
- 4) You hear someone say that all astronauts are very rich .You know that is not true .

2-Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1- A: Can you show me where I can try this dress on?
B: The fitting rooms are on the left over there

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B:..... - Function:

- 2- A: How long have you been feeling unwell? B.: Since Sunday
A: Well, you need to take one of these tablets 3 times a day.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B:..... - Function:

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. These plans must be kept from the enemy.
a- known b- regret c- secret d- open
2. I don't think you understand the of the situation.
a- ambiguity b- anxiety c- gravity d- authority
3. The Earth on its axis.
a- stains b- stems c- spins d- springs
4. I'm afraid I don't agree your opinion.
a- at b- of c- with d- on
5. He did a lot to conditions for factory workers.
a- approve b- move c- improve d- destroy
6. Buying this old car is a of money.
a- waste b- waist c- wisdom d- failure
7. The crew are planning a four-hour space to carry out the necessary repair work on the shuttle.
a- run b- jump c- walk d- talk
8. The storm has had a badon the crops.
a- effect b- afflict c- affect d- detect
9. We always celebrate our wedding with dinner in an expensive restaurant.
a- memory b- failure c- anniversary d- memorial
10. Everyone knows who stole it, but are all afraid to tell anyone.
a- he b- you c- she d- they
11. It's arranged. We to the Red Sea this summer.
a- will go b- go c- are going d- may go
12. I can't talk at the moment. I my homework.
a- do b- will do c- am doing d- have done
13. I am studying law. I a lawyer.
a- may be b- am going to be c- am being d- be
14. Somebody is knocking on the door. I and open it.
a- am going b- will go c- have gone d- go
15. The phone is ringing . Iit
a- will answer b- am going to answer c- am answering d- answer
16. The planeat 8.30 tomorrow.
a- arrives b- will arrive c- is going to arrive d- is arriving

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1.He applied for three universities and was accepted by all.
- 2.I think he is going to be a famous engineer.
- 3.It is expected he is going to arrive tomorrow.
- 4.I will be flying to Paris later this morning.
- 5.The space station will be orbiting around the Earth
- 6.We celebrate the memory of the revolution on 23rd July.

C- Reading Comprehension

5- Read the following passage and then answer the questions: (June, 2009)

Eat healthy food and have a healthy body. Now, we know that there is also healthy food for your brain. Eat healthy food and have a healthy mind. New research clearly shows the link between diet and mental health.

There has been a campaign to improve school meals. A head teacher of a school banned junk food and started serving healthy food. This research shows that the students' behaviour in class has been a lot better. They became calmer and they learn and concentrate more.

A mental health foundation (M.H.F) has started a campaign "Feeding Minds" to publicize its own research. This research shows that our diets have changed a lot and the level of mental illness has increased, unhealthy diet can cause depression and insomnia.

The last part of the research concerns the Mediterranean diet. Scientists knew that this diet (fruit, vegetables, fish and olive oil) helps you live longer. It also prevents a serious mental disease "Alzheimer" that affects the elderly.

So, what does this research suggest to you? To improve your memory, eat salmon. To fight insomnia, eat nuts. If depression is a problem, eat brown rice. If you worry about your later years, cook with olive oil.

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- What is the main idea of the passage?
- 2- Mention the campaigns' targets of the school and the MHF?
- 3- What does the underlined word "they" refer to/

B. Choose the correct answer:

- 5- The following diseases are all mental except
- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|-------------|-------------------|
| a) Alzheimer | b) Depression | c) Insomnia | d) Blood Pressure |
|--------------|---------------|-------------|-------------------|
- 6- The Mediterranean diet includes.....
- | | | | |
|--------------|------------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| a) junk food | b) meat and rice | c) fast food | d) fish and olive oil |
|--------------|------------------|--------------|-----------------------|

6- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My advice about learning to drive would be to have proper lessons from a qualified instructor and never to let a friend or family member try to teach you. It's a guaranteed way to spoil a good relationship. Every Sunday, when the traffic was quieter, my father would pick me up and take me for a drive along the streets of our hometown and give me a lecture on how to drive, explaining everything he was doing and why. Eventually it was my turn to have a go. My dad was so nervous that he panicked before I'd even started up the engine. He used to shout at the slightest mistake, and when the lesson was finally over he'd come home and have a large glass of whisky to calm down.

Answer the following questions:

- 1-According to the writer, who is the best person to teach you how to drive?
- 2-What do you think about the writer's father?
- 3-Find words in the passage which mean:
a) felt very frightened b) having suitable knowledge, experience or skills

Choose the correct answer:

- 4-The underlined word he refers to
- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| a) the writer | b) the instructor | c) the writer's father | d) the writer's friend |
|---------------|-------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
- 5-The writer's father used to teach him how to drive
- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------|--------------|
| a) once a week | b) every Monday | c) twice a month | d) every day |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------|--------------|

7) (A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why doesn't Rudolf Rassendyll work?
- 2- What kind of work does Rose suggest Rudolf should do?
- 3- Why has the Rassendyll family been interested in the Elphberg family?
- 4- Where does Rassendyll decide to travel to? What does he tell his family about his plans?

B) Read the following quotation. then answer the questions

"To a man like me, opportunities are responsibilities.

- 1- Who says this and when?
- 2- What does the person mean by this?
- 3- Do you think a person like this is very serious about work or life?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and write them correctly:

- 1- George Featherly works at the embassy in Ruritania.
- 2- Rudolf sits with Antoinette on the train.

D- Writing

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about: (June, 2009)

"How space technology affects our everyday life"

E- Translation

9- A) Translate into Arabic: (June, 2009)

Scientists think that the world temperature will increase due to many reasons .Global warming is the major reason for that . as well as gases from green houses .Cutting forests make the matter worse .All governments and green colour lovers must co operate to protect our planet.

B) Translate into English:

- النوم بجوار المحمول خطر جدا و يمثل مفاعل نووى صغير.

- نحتاج الي التكنولوجيا الحديثة لكي تساعدنا في حل الكثير من المشكلات مثل التغير المناخي والاحتباس الحراري.

Unit 2 - *The Prisoner of Zenda*

Main Vocabulary

alike	مشابه	couple	زوج	occasion	مناسبة
attend	يحضر	debate (n)	مناظرة	publication	طبع / نشر
castle	قلعة	escapism	هروب من الواقع	wealthy	غنى / ثري
Classics	دراسة الادب اليوناني و الروماني القديم			well-educated	متعلم جيد
coronation	تتويج/حفلة	fictional	خيالي		

Vocabulary

activities	أنشطة	for ever	للأبد	popular	محبوب / شعبي
adventure stories	قصص مغامرة	forest	غابة	pound	جنيه
Ambitious(adj.)	طموح	forget	ينسى	print	يطبع
architecture	الهندسة المعمارية	formal	رسمي	prisoner	سجين
area	منطقة	guilty	مُذنب	protect	يحمي
as planned	كما هو مخطط	have much success in يلاقي نجاحا كبيرا		public debate	مناظرة أو مناقشة
at least	على الأقل	heroes	أبطال	public library	مكتبة عامة
at most	على الأكثر	heroic deeds	أعمال بطولية	publish	ينشر
athletics	الالعاب الرياضية	heroic efforts	جهود خارقة	published	منشور
attackers	المهاجمون	historic occasion	مناسبة تاريخية	publisher	ناشر
attend a conference	يُحضر مؤتمر	history	تاريخ	ready for	مستعد لـ
attend a meeting	يُحضر اجتماع	hold a debate	يعقد مناظرة	realise	يدرك
believe	يعتقد	identical	متطابق / متماثل	realism	الواقعية
candidates	المرشحون	immediately	فورا	regular visits	زيارات منتظمة
castle	قلعة	immense	هائل	remain	يبقى
central	مركزي	innocent	بريء	replace	يحل محل / يستبدل
ceremony	احتفال	interest	اهتمام / تشويق	rescue	ينقذ
classical music	الموسيقى الكلاسيكية	kidnapped	اختطف شخص	short stories	قصص قصيرة
compulsory education التعليم الإلزامي		lawyer	محامي	sign	إشارة
cruel	قاسي	leader	القائد	solve the problem	يحل المشكلة
die	يموت	local	محلي	sort of / kind of	نوع من
discover	يكشف	locked in	حُجز في	speaker	متحدث
double efforts	يُضاعف الجهود	look alike	يبدو متشابه جدا	successful	ناجح
early life	الحياة المبكرة	married	متزوج	surprise	مفاجئة
educate	يتعلم	modern languages اللغات		preventive measures	إجراءات وقائية
educated	متعلم	morally	أخلاقيا / افتراضيا	teaching job	وظيفة التدريس
education	تعليم	neighbour	جار	the public	الجمهور
Englishman	رجل إنجليزي	news coverage	تغطية إخبارية	public	الرأي العام
entertainment	تسلية وترفيه	news headlines	عناوين الأخبار	the right	الحق
escape	يهرب	novel	رواية	the vast majority	الغالبية العظمى
escapist	أنهزامي	novelist	روائي	tiny	ضئيل
excitedly	بشكل مُثار	organised discussion مناقشة		tour	جولة
fiction	خيال	pharaoh	فرعون	under debate	محل مناقشة
finally	أخيرا	plenty	وفرة	university	جامعة
finance	المالية	poet	شاعر	walk through	يمشي خلال
find out	يكشف	politics	السياسة	writer	كاتب

Important Expressions

A historic occasion	مناسبة تاريخية	News coverage	تغطية إخبارية
A public library	مكتبة عامة	News headlines	عناوين الأخبار
Attend a conference	يُحضر مؤتمر	opposite direction	الاتجاه المعاكس
Attend a meeting	يُحضر اجتماع	primary education	التعليم الابتدائي
be aware of	يكون على دراية لـ/مدرک	Public debate	مناظرة أو مناقشة عامة
Classical music	الموسيقى الكلاسيكية	reach an agreement	يصل إلى اتفاقه
daily needs	احتياجات يومية	serious consequences	عواقب وخيمه
Double efforts	يُضاعف الجهود	side by side	جنباً إلى جنب
general education	التعليم العام	strong ties	روابط قوية
Have much success in	يلقي نجاحاً كبيراً في	take into consideration	يأخذ في الاعتبار
Heroic deeds	أعمال بطولية	Take preventive measures	يتخذ إجراءات وقائية
Heroic efforts	جهود خارقة	the Book Fair	معرض الكتاب
Hold a debate	يعقد مناظرة	the only way	السبيل الوحيد
in defence of	دفاعاً عن	The public opinion	الرأي العام
in enriching	في إثراء	The vast majority	الغالبية العظمى
interest	مصلحه	Under debate	محل مناقشة
maximum income	اعلى دخل	water crisis	أزمه المياه

Derivatives

<i>verb</i>		<i>Noun</i>		<i>adjective</i>	
Intend	ينوي	Intention	نية	Intentional	مقصود / متعمد
Prevent	يمنع	Prevention	منع / وقاية	Preventive	وقائي
Publish	ينشر	Publisher	ناشر	Published	منشور
		Publication	نشر		
Qualify	يؤهل / يتأهل	Qualification	مؤهل	Qualified	متأهل
Require	يتطلب / يحتاج	Requirement	مطلب	Required	مطلوب
Succeed	ينجح	Success	النجاح	Successful	ناجح

Expressions

At the same time	في نفس الوقت	Lock someone in	يحبس شخص في (مكان)
An expert in	خبير في	Look in astonishment	ينظر في دهشة واستغراب
At the coronation	في حفل التتويج	Make friends	يكون أصدقاء
Break into	يقتحم (بعدها مفعول)	Make regular visits	يقوم بزيارات منتظمة
Break in	يقتحم (بدون مفعول)	On occasion	أحياناً
Be crowned with success	يُتَوَّج بالنجاح	On the night before	في الليلة التي تسبق
Belong to	يُخص / ينتمي إلى	Pay for	
Fall off his horse	يسقط من علي حصانه	Popular with	محبوب أو شائع لدي
Come back	يعود	Protect from / against	يدفع ثمن ..
Escape from	يهرب من	Ready for	مستعد أو جاهز لـ
Know nothing of	لا يعرف شيئاً عن	Say goodbye to	يودع
Free from (v)	يُحرر من	Study at school	يدرس في المدرسة
It made him a lot of money	دَرَّت عليه الكثير من المال	Talk about	يتحدث عن (شيء أو شخص)
Find out	يكشف	Talk to / with	يتحدث إلى (شخص)
Listen to	يسمع إلى	Well-known for	مشهور بـ

كلمات و عكسها Words & antonyms

At most	علي الأقل	At least	غير صحيح
Correct	صحيح	Incorrect	سهل
Difficult	صعب	Easy	الواقعية
Escapism	الهروب من الواقع	realism	عالمي
Fair	عادل	Unfair	حقيقي / واقعي
Fictional	خيالي	Real	غير رسمي
Formal	رسمي	Informal	بريء
Guilty	مذنب	Innocent	ضئيل
Immense	هائل	tiny	الظلم
Justice	العدل	Injustice	عالمي / كوني
Local	محلي	Global	غير منظم
Organised	منظم	Disorganised	غير شعبي
Popular	شائع / مشهور / شعبي	unpopular	زائف
True	حقيقي	False	غير معروف
Well-known	معروف	unknown	

Definitions

alike	- Almost exactly, the same or similar.	متشابهان
Castle	- a very large strong building built in the past to protect the people inside from attack	قلعه
Classics	- study of the language and history of the ancient Greeks and Romans	الكلاسيكية
coronation	- A ceremony when someone becomes a king or a queen.	تتويج
Couple	- Two people, two periods of times.....	زوج
debate	- formal, organized discussion on an important subject.	مناظرة
escapism	- entertainment that helps people to forget about their worries a wedding reception	تهرب
fictional	- not real, invented by a writer .	خيالي
Occasion	- an important event or ceremony	مناسبه
publication	- when a book is printed and available to buy.	طبع، نشر
the right to	- You are morally or lawfully allowed to do something.	له الحق
Well-educated	- having had a good education.	متعلم جيد
wealthy	- Having a lot of money.	ثري

Language Notes

- Classic (n) أثر أدبي خالد (تعد) - Most of Shakespeare's works are classics.
- Classic (adj) نموذجي / يحتفظ بقيمته لمدة طويلة
- تستخدم مع المسرحيات و الكتب و تأتي ايضا مع Example / mistake / symptom / style / design / films
- Classic films were more valuable. - I like classic designs in painting.
- Classical (adj) تقليدي / قديم (كلاسيكي) / متعلق بدراسة الحضارة اليونانية أو الرومانية القديمة
- Classical (architecture - symphony - elegance - composer.....)
- She studies classical architecture.
- Classics (كلمة لا تعد) دراسة الحضارة اليونانية و اللاتينية - We studied classics at university.
- Based in مقره في - The main branch of the bank is based in Cairo.
- Based on قائم على - His opinion of life is based on religion.

-Life الحياة بوجه عام (اسم لا يعد ولا يسبقها أداة)

-There is no life on the moon .

-a life – (lives) نوع معين من حياة (اسم يعد) غالبا يسبقها صفه

- We lead a nice Life there.

- I don't know much about the lives of the Russians?

- decide to + inf . يقرر

-The professor decided to enter the tomb.

- decide on + n. يقرر / يحدد / يختار

- I decided on a name for the shop.

- decide that + جملة يقرر

-He decided that you should attend.

-listen to (سماع بقصد) ينصت إلي

- I like listening to the holy Quran recited by Elmenshawy .

-hear (سماع عارض - بدون قصد) يسمع

- I heard a baby crying next door.

-hear from يتلقى رسالة من

- Have you heard from your son, Mr. Ali?

-hear of يعرف بوجود شخص أو / يسمع أخبار عن

- I have never heard of that man.

-hear about يتلقى / يسمع

- Every body heard about your success.

-famous for

مشهور و تعطي معني well-known و لكنها اقوي في المعني و تعني معروف علي مجال واسع

- Italy is famous for its special macaroni and pizza.

-famous as مشهور كـ

- She is famous as a good psychotherapist.

-well-known

معروف و لكن علي نطاق محدود مثل (postman / doctor / teacher /hairstresser)

- The postman is well-known in our village.

-distinguished =eminent

معروف (مميز): للأشخاص المشهورين بأعمالهم العلمية/ الفنية.....

- Shakespeare was a distinguished playwright.

- notorious مشهور و معروف بشيء سيء

- His notorious friends made him addict drugs.

Kidnap=abduct يخطف شخصا (طمعا في فدية)

-The gang kidnapped the child and asked for one million dollars.

Hijack يختطف (طائرة- سيارة)

-The terrorists hijacked the plane.

Snatch يخطف شيء من شخص

- The dog snatched the sandwich from the little girl's hand.

Imprison يسجن

-The criminal was imprisoned for ten years.

Capture يقبض على/يأسر

-The army captured about twenty enemy soldiers.-

Arrest يلقي القبض على

- He was arrested for troublemaking.

-die (v) يموت

- She died of a heart attack.

-dead (adj.) ميت

- The man was dead on arrival at the hospital.

-death (n) الموت

- We all believe in life after death.

-deadly (adj.) مميت

- This is a deadly weapon.

- die of يموت بسبب مرض أو جوع أو عطش

-The explorers may have died of thirst in the desert.

- die from (a wound / an injury / a spider bite.....)

يموت من (جرح - إصابة - لدغة عنكبوت)

-The four robbers died from the spiders' bites.

- die out ينقرض

- Dinosaurs died out.

- die away يزول/يضمحل

-The light of the candle died away.

لاحظ استخدام كلمة like مع what للتعبير عن وصف شيء

-What + be + فاعل +like ...? = describe في حالة السؤال

- What was life like in the past?

- What is the weather like today?

-What + فاعل + be + like ..._ في حالة الجملة

- She looked in the mirror to see what the new dress was like.

- Be born in + المكان- السنة – الشهر

- My father was born in Cairo in 1949.

- Be born on + اليوم

- My father was born in Cairo in 1949.

- Be born into + العائلة

- She was born into a good family.

-Take part in = share in = participate inشارك	-I'll take part in the competition.
-Take place = happen = occur يحدث	- The accident took place in the afternoon.
-Take the place of = replace يحل محل	
- Omer took the place of his father when he was on holiday.	
-Take up much of يستنزف كثير من	- Illness took much of his money.
-Take off يخلع ملابس / تقلع الطائرة	
- I took off my shoes and went into the mosque.	-The plane will off at six.
-Take over يتولى مهمة	- After my father's illness I took over his responsibilities.
-Take after يشبه	- She takes after her mother.
- Abroad (خارج حدود بلد ما)	- I stayed abroad for seven years.
- Broad فسيح - عريض - عام	- He has a broad vision.
- Board لوحة (إعلانات) - سبورة	- The competition results were put up on the board.
- On board علي متن (سفينة- طائرة)	-There are twenty passengers on board.
- Border حد بين دولتين/ يحد	- The borders between Israel and Syria are not safe.
- Every كل (صفة يأتي بعدها اسم)	- Every year, we spend our holiday in Alexandria.
- Each كل (صفة يأتي بعدها اسم أو محل)	- Each student should do his best to get high marks.
	- Give these apples to the boys,two apples each.
Hero بطل (محارب بارز - تاريخي - في فيلم - مسرحية - شخص محبوب لإنجازاته)	-The real hero of the war was the Egyptian soldier. - I loved with the hero of the novel.
Champion بطل (رياضي / المدافع عن شخصية أو قضية / مقاتل)	
-Martin Luther King was the hero of the black.	
-Al-Ahly is the champion of the African club championship.	
-Twins توأم	- He and his sister are different twins.
- A couple زوجان (زوج وزوجته)	-Walid and Rania are a happy couple.
-A couple of اثنان من نوع واحد (من نفس الشيء يمكن فصلهما)/زوج	- She bought a couple of silk blouses.
- Double ثنائي / مضاعف	- He can double his income if he work harder
	- He booked a double room for his parents.
-Pair زوج من شيء لا ينفصل	- I bought a pair of brown shoes.
- Occasion مناسبة	- I gave him a present on the occasion of his marriage.
- Event حدث هام مميز	- Winning the competition is an important event in my life.
- accident حادث	- The accident took place at about six.
- incident حدث داخل قصة	- The incidents of this story are not clear.
- spend time + (v + ing) يقضي الوقت في	- I spent the summer holiday playing on the beach.
- spend money on ينفق المال على	- He spends most of his money on smoking.
- politics السياسة (الخاصة بالدولة ونظام الحكم)	- She studied politics at university .
- policy مبدأ أو قاعدة يسير عليها الفرد أو العمل	- Honesty is the best policy.
- Like	- He is nervous like his mother.
- Like يحب	- I don't like the way you speak to me.
- look like يشبه	- She looks like her mother.
- Alike = like each other	تستخدم بعد الأشياء أو الأشخاص الذين نتحدث عنهم ويسبقها (v. to be)
	-She and her mother are alike.
- Unlike علي العكس /مختلف عن	- Unlike her sister, Aya is lazy.

- عند إضافة حرف s إلى السنة نقصد بها فترة عشر سنوات أي عقد decade:

- In the 1960s = from 1960 to 1969.

- decade = 10 years -Century = 100 years - millennium = 1000 years

-لاحظ استخدام take للزمن بمعنى يستغرق ويأتي بعدها to+inf.

-The Prisoner of Zenda took Hope a few months to write.

- How long does it take to do this job?

-Do you mind if I use your dictionary? -Not in the least = not at all علي الاطلاق / كلا

-Train as a/an + job:

- He trained as a teacher.

- لاحظ استخدام التصريف الثالث بعد as أحياناً وهو هنا اختصار لجملته كانت مبنية للمجهول

-As + PP.

- The coronation took place as planned. = The coronation took place as it has been planned.

- Fiction خيال قصصي

- Novels and plays are usually works of fiction.

- Fictional (hero/country) خيالي

- Abu Zeid Elhelaly is mostly a fictional hero .

- Borrow يستعير / يستلف

- He borrowed some money from the bank.

- Loan يقرض / يسلف

- This library loans books, CDs and videotapes.

- Lend يقرض / يسلف

- The bank lent the businessman 500000 pounds.

- Owe يدين

- I owe you ten pounds.

-Publish ينشر (كتاب أو صحيفة مثلاً)

-The company has published all his books.

- If you want to sell your product, you must advertise it.

-Advertise يعلن عن (سلع أو خدمات)

- It takes / took /has taken/ will take.... مصدر + to +مدة زمنية + اسم أو ضمير مفعول يستغرق

- It took me two hours to do my homework. - How long does it take you to do this job?

- be about to + مصدر تقريباً / على وشك -He was about to leave the house when the phone rang.

→ It + be+ صفة +to + مصدر

-It was easy to answer all the questions. - He was shocked to see the homeless poor people.

- Debate مناظرة -The candidates made debates on TV.

- Conference مؤتمر -The minister met all teachers through video conference.

- Seminar ندوة - Huda attended a religious seminar at the school library.

- Forum منتدى - We all like cultural forums.

-Put down يضع جانباً - Put down your problems and study for your exams.

- Put off يؤجل - Don't put off until tomorrow what you should do today.

- Put out يطفى -Firemen putout Fire.

-Put on يرتدي - Put on your jacket before you go out.

-Put forward يقترح - Ali always puts forward new ideas.

- Put away يسجن - Police put criminals away.

- Put up with يتحمل - I can't put up with his bad behaviour.

Expressing Interest & Surprise

Exercises

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language each of the following two mini-dialogues:

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d :

1. The terrorists the wealthy businessman.
a- *snatched* b- *kidnapped* c- *hijacked* d- *snatches*
2. He was happy as he was crowned Success
a- *at* b- *by* c- *from* d- *with*
3. Our factory is based Alexandria.
a- *at* b- *by* c- *from* d- *in*
4. The Prisoner of Zenda was ready for a few months after Anthony Hope thought of the idea.
a- *application* b- *classification* c- *publication* d- *clarification*
5. The government does its best to help young to buy their own homes.
a- *pairs* b- *couples* c- *doubles* d- *a pair*
6. The story is not true , it is -----
a - *real* b - *fictional* c - *right* d - *famous*
7. means the study of the language and history of the ancient Greeks and Romans.
a - *Classic* b - *classical* c - *classify* d - *classics*
8. My Sister is ----- she had a good education.
a - *good- educated* b - *well-educated* c - *will - educated* d - *well-education*
9. The book will be ----- next week.
a - *publication* b - *publisher* c - *publish* d - *published*
10. We had a formal, organized discussion, that means -----
a - *conflict* b - *debate* c - *forum* d - *fight*
11. Escapism is a kind of ----- that helps people to forget their worries.
a - *fight* b - *discussion* c - *information* d - *entertainment*
12. He is the main character, he is the ----- of the film.
a - *heroine* b - *hero* c - *herb* d - *director*
13. Antony Hope's story was ----- in 1890.
a - *published* b - *bought* c - *stolen* d - *mended*
14. Films and books can sometimes help people to ----- from their worries.
a - *escape* b - *suffer* c - *wait* d - *sell*
15. You can still see a lot of ----- architecture in Greece and Rome.
a - *classical* b - *professional* c - *classics* d - *classes*
16. He has a lot of money, he is a ----- man.
a - *wealth* b - *poor* c - *healthy* d - *wealthy*
17. The ----- of Queen Elizabeth took place in 1952.
a - *colonial* b - *organization* c - *permission* d - *coronation*
18. He doesn't have the right ----- vote in the coming elections.
a - *with* b - *in* c - *of* d - *to*
19. He was interested in ----- and was a good speaker.
a - *political* b - *politician* c - *politics* d - *policy*
20. the night before the meeting, the president cancelled it.
a- *at* b- *on* c- *in* d- *off*
21. Tutankhamun died after he fell ----- his horse.
a - *of* b - *at* c - *in* d - *off*
22. Because the two brothers look so ..., nobody realizes who kills the king.
a- *like* b- *alike* c- *likes* d- *likes*
23. They are having a at school next week about developing education
a- *disagreement* b- *conflict* c- *debate* d- *negotiation*
24. They are not a family, although everyone works very hard.
a- *worthy* b- *wealthy* c- *healthy* d- *filthy*
25. Children in Egypt primary school between the ages of 6 and 11.
a- *attend* b- *intend* c- *tend* d- *pretend*
26. The of Queen Elizabeth II took place in 1952.
a- *collaboration* b- *coronation* c- *corporation* d- *combination*
27. In Egypt, all people have the to vote
a- *left* b- *wrong* c- *right* d- *sight*
28. is a very large strong building built in the past to protect the people inside from attack
a- *Castle* b- *Flat* c- *House* d- *Villa*

29. The characters here are They are not real.
a-fictional b-intentional c- additional d- conventional
30. The story takes in 19th century Europe.
a-space b- part c- place d- the place
31. He was locked..... the castle at Zenda.
a- on b- in c- at d-of
32. Our army can protect us any enemy.
a-of b- with c- from d- at
33. Yara is going to study at university.
a-classics b- classic c- classical d- classification
34. Winning the cup is a great
a-admission b- collision c- occasion d- concession
35. The Egyptian monuments are very populartourists.
a-of b- to c- with d- on
36.is a kind of entertainment that helps people to forget about their worries.
a-Capitalism b- Colonialism c- Globalism d- Escapism
37. The story is not true , it is
a- real b- fictional c- right d- famous
38. means the study of the language and history of the ancient Greeks and Romans.
a-Classic b- classical c- classify d- classics
39. My Sister is ----- she had a good education.
a-good educated b- well educated c- will educated d- well education
40. The book will be -----next week.
a-publication b- publisher c- publish d- published
41. We had a formal, organized discussion, that means -----
a- conflict b - debate c - forum d- fight
42. Escapism is a kind of ----- that helps people to forget their worries.
a-fight b- discussion c - information d- entertainment
43. He is the main character , he is the ----- of the film.
a- heroine b- hero c- herb d- director
44. He killed the girl and went to -----and spent 20 years.
a-jail b - forum c - castle d - museum
45. Antony Hope's story was ----- in 1890.
a- published b - bought c- stolen d- mended
46. Films and books can sometimes help people to ----- from their worries.
a-escape b - suffer c- wait d- sell
47. You can still see a lot of ----- architecture in Greece and Rome.
a-classical b- professional c- classics d- classes
48. He has a lot of money, he is a ----- man.
a-wealth b- poor c - healthy d - wealthy
49. The ----- of Queen Elizabeth took place in 1952.
a-colonial b- organization c- permission d- coronation
50. He doesn't have the right ----- vote in the coming elections.
a- with b- in c- of d- to
51. After finishing school , he went to Oxford University----- he studied classics.
a- who b - which c- when d- where
52. The ----- were married later that year.
a- pair b- double c- two d- couple
53. He was interested in----- and was a good speaker.
a- political b - politician c- politics d- policy
54. The police ----- chased the suspect.
a- are b- is c - were d- have
55. Mathematics ----- a very difficult subject for me.
a- is b- are c - have been d- were
56. Tutankhamun died after he fell ----- his horse.
a- of b- at c- in d- off
57. My brother is very he went to Cairo University and then Oxford.

a- well-known b- ignorant c- well-educated d- illiterate

58. We're having a At school next week about ways of reducing global warming.

a-debit b- debate c - debt d- debase

59. For some people, reading and watching films are forms of

a-escape b- escaping c- escapist d – escapism

60. In the past, English children studied at school. Now most schools teach modern languages.

a-classic b- classics c- class d- classical

61. Oliver Twist is the hero of one of Charles Dickens' most famous novels.

a-fictional b- fiction c- fictions d - fictionalize

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1.A defeat is a formal organised discussion.
- 2.Before she did research on new treatments, she works as a surgeon.
- 3.Both my parents are tired. They no longer work.
- 4.Can you tell me what the thief was alike?
- 5.Escaping is entertainment that helps people to forget about their.
- 6.He had to pay to his first novel.
- 7.He was a good education man who went to Oxford University.
- 8.He was fond of listening to the classical of Mozart and Beethoven.
- 9.I hadn't heard from Anthony Hope until last week.
10. I want to be a doctor since I was ten.
11. It took him five hours finishing the report.
12. Many people went to London to watch the corony of Queen Elizabeth.
13. My brother has a difficult decision to do next week.
14. Over two thousand people pretended the meeting.
15. People over 18 have the tight to vote in elections.
16. Rudolf Elphberg is hijacked by his younger brother Michael.
17. She is very popular for a lot of people here.
18. She went to London a pair of years ago.
19. The book was publicated so many could know about it.
20. The ceremony of the coordination of the queen was attended by millions of people.
21. The children intend school from the ages of 6 to 12 in Egypt.
22. The combination of the king took place in the royal palace.
23. The gang hijacked the boy and asked for a lot of money to let him go.
24. The newly married pair are very happy.
25. The president pretended the final match.
26. These two sisters are so like.
27. They did the right to know about this crucial issue.
28. This novel is intentional. It's not real.
29. We all have the tight to vote in elections.
30. What did you do since the weekend?
31. When I was eight. I have seen a programme about a famous doctor on TV.
32. When the company needs people to speak for it at a meeting, it can send a relation.
33. When would you start to learn English? – Two years ago.
34. While he does his homework, his friend arrived.

-Translate into Arabic:

Everyone who has travelled in space has described the magic feeling of looking down on the Earth as it spins. It is impossible to go for a walk. However, you can do exercises.

.....

Anthony Hope wrote thirty-two works of fiction, but The Prisoner of Zenda was always his most popular story. It made him a lot of money. A lot of firms have been based on the story, and the public still enjoy reading it today.

.....

Modern societies need enormous amounts of power for heating, lighting and industry. Most of this power comes from coal and oil. Experts say that this type of fuel will soon be used up. Scientists will have to search for alternative sources of energy.

.....

-Translate into English:

هل تطفئ الانوار حينما تكون خارج الغرفة؟

بعدها أنهت دراستها المدرسية التحقت داليا بجامعة القاهرة.

اثنان مليون جنيه مبلغ كبير من المال

يستخدم قصب السكر في بعض الاماكن في صناعة الوقود للسيارات و وسائل المواصلات الاخرى.

إن العمل الجماعي يقوي الروابط و القيم الإنسانية بين الناس.

لا بد أن نشجع الاستثمارات الأجنبية في مصر من أجل تحسين الاقتصاد القومي.

Grammar

Countable and uncountable nouns

Countable nouns

الأسماء التي تعد

- 1 – الأسماء التي تعد يكون لها مفرد و جمع :
- a car → cars - a dog → dogs - an apple → apples
- وهناك اسماء شاذة لا تجمع باضافة (s/es/ies) مثل :
- Man → men - child → children - mouse → mice
- 2 – قبل الأسماء المفرد الذي يعد يمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

a / an	- I've just seen a train/an accident.
The	- Where's the book I lent you?
One	- There are 60 seconds in one minute.

3 – قبل الأسماء الجمع ممكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

Some	Many	The	Several
any	How many?	Two, three etc	Few

- بعض الكلمات لها نفس التكوين في المفرد والجمع :

(sheep / deer / fish / salmon) : بعض انواع الحيوانات مثل :

- A sheep was grazing in the field.

- Some sheep were grazing in the field.

(aircraft / spacecraft) : بعض الاسماء مثل :

- One craft is going to take off.

- Two aircraft are going to take off.

(ج) بعض الاسماء التي تنتهي ب (s) في المفرد والجمع مثل :

(crossroads / means / series / species / works أعمال أدبية)

- A car is a means of transport.

- Cars are a means of transport.

Uncountable nouns

الأسماء التي لا تعد

- هو الاسم الذي لا يعد لا يمكن عده ولا يأخذ (a - an - one) و يعامل معاملة المفرد :

news - information - oil - advice - water - money - music - bread - luggage - baggage - cloth....

- ويمكن استخدام هذه الكلمات مع الاسم الذي لا يعد.

(a lot of - much - little - some - any)

A lot of wisdom - some knowledge - little juice - much water - any information.....

والأسماء التي لا تعد تشمل :

- الاسماء المجردة

honesty امانة - hope - beauty - help- love – hatred كراهية - confidence ثقة – courage شجاعة -
experience خبرة - progress تقدم – evidence دليل - patience صبر - peace سلام – poverty فقر - etc.

- أسماء المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام

coffee - glass - gold - iron - lime – paper - stone – sand –soil - sugar- tea - wood etc.

history - psychology- mathematics- physics - biology etc.

4 - Fluids السوائل water – coffee – oil - milk – soup – blood..... etc.

5 - Sports الرياضات football - volleyball –basketball – swimming....etc.

6 - Gases	الغازات	oxygen – hydrogen – nitrogen-ammonia - carbon dioxide... etc.
-----------	---------	---

7 - Languages اللغات English – Arabic – French – Italian – Spanish - German

8 - Different activities
الأنشطة المختلفة

9 - Natural phenomena الظواهر الطبيعية lightning – heat – snow – thunder – light - rain

10- Meals	الوجبات	Breakfast – lunch – dinner – supper
-----------	---------	-------------------------------------

11 - Other nouns	jewellery مجوهرات - money - laughter ضحك - rubbish - equipment معدات - furniture اثاث - cash نقدية - work - clothing الملابس - electricity - traffic مرور - baggage حقائب - luggage امتعة - machinery
------------------	---

- بعض الكلمات التي لا تُعد يمكن أن تسبقها الأداة a/an إذا جاءت قبلها الصفة:

- We had a nice breakfast. – I spent a nice time on the beach.

الأسماء الآتية لا تعد ودائما جمع وليس لها مفرد

1- الأشياء التي تتكون من نصفين مثل :
- بعض الكلمات ليس لها مفرد وتعامل معاملة الجمع ومنها :

Trousers / glasses / scales / gloves /shorts /spectacles / pyjamas / pliers

2- بعض الاسماء المنتهية ب (ings) مثل
 الاشياء المحيطة / surroundings / حجرة للايجار / lodgings / مدخرات / savings

3- أسماء أخرى :

Police/ people / youth/clothes/ wages/ goods سلع / troops قوات / arms أسلحة / remains بقايا /
cattle الماشية / contents محتويات / memoirs مذكرات حياة / cards كوتشينة / billiards البلياردو ... etc.

- Our youth are the power of development. – The police have arrested the thieves.

يمكن تحويل الأسماء التي لا تعد إلى أسماء تعد كالتالي :

ملحوظة

1- استخدام (bit - piece) كألفاظ تجزئة عامهفي المفرد وفي الجمع (bits - pieces) :

-I gave her a piece (a bit) advice. - She knew pieces of information about the competition.

2- استخدام ألفاظ تجزئة تشير إلى كميات محددة وتستخدم مع بعض الكلمات ولا تستخدم مع غيرها مثل :

A tube of toothpaste	انبوبة معجون اسنان	A bag of flour	كيس دقيق
A box of matches	علبة كبريت	A lump of sugar	مكعب سكر
A packet of cigarettes	علبة سجائر	A spoonful of sugar	ملئ ملعقة شاي
A sheet of paper	فرخ ورق	A slice of meat	شريحة لحم
A reel of cotton	بكرة قطن	A loaf of bread	رغيف خبز
A packet of needles	علبة ابر	A grain of sand	حبة رمل
A drop of water	قطرة ماء	A speck of dust	ذرة غبار
A glass of lemonade	كوب ليموناده	A bottle of milk	زجاجة حليب
A jar of jam	برطمان مربه	A bar of soup	قطعة صابون

أسماء الأشياء المكونة من جزأين مثل glasses / gloves / scissors / trousers / shoes / socks pair نستخدم معها كلمة
وبدون كلمة pair تُعتبر هذه الكلمات جمع:

- His trousers are dirty. - A pair of socks doesn't cost much money.

3- وعند الجمع نجمع لفظ التجزئة ولا نجمع اسم المادة .

- four sheets of paper - five pairs of shoes - six jars of jam - two loaves of bread
- two slices of meat - six bars of chocolate - five cups of coffee.....

بعض الأسماء يمكن أن تعد أو لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل .

ملحوظة

paper - glass - coffee - time - cold - orange - light - iron - hair - chicken

- I bought some writing paper. (ورق الكتابة / لا يعد)

- I'll buy a paper. (= a newspaper) جريدة (تعد)

- The shop window is made of glass. (الزجاج / لا يعد)

- She drank a glass of orange juice . كوب زجاجي

- Have you prepared the coffee? قهوة (مشروب)

- Could we have two black coffees? = (cups of coffee) فنجان أو كوب من القهوة

- There's plenty of time before the match starts. الوقت

- Run along the track ten times. مرات

-The cold is unbearable this winter. البرد عموما

- She has had a bad cold since Friday. نزلة برد

- Mariam ate two oranges. برتقال

- She is wearing an orange blouse. اللون البرتقالي

- Hospital beds are made of iron. الحديد (لا يعد)

- I bought an iron yesterday. مكواة

- I had chicken, rice and salad. (= chicken meat) لحم الدجاج

- The fox scared the chickens. دجاجة

- The sun gives us light and heat. الضوء / لا تُعد

-There are four lights in our classroom. مصباح كهربائي

- Her hair is long. الشعر

-There are four hairs on your jacket. شعرة

- تعامل الاسماء الكلية كمفرد (وتأخذ فعل مفرد) إذا تصرف كوحدة واحدة وتعامل كجمع (وتأخذ فعل جمع) إذا تصرف كل فرد بطريقة مستقلة

طاقم سفينة أو طائرة crew - زوج couple - فصل / فصيلة class - company - حكومة government - جيش Army

هينة عمل staff - لجنة team-committee - القوات البحرية navy - عصابة gang - حشد أو جمع crowd

الصحافة press - الاقلية minority - الأغلبية majority - جمهور audience - هينة مستشارين council - اتحاد union

ممثلين في فيلم أو cast - الجمهور أو العامة the public - سكان population - family - university

-The Egyptian Team is playing well. هنا الكلام عن الفريق كوحدة واحدة

- The team are leaving the pitch. هنا نقصد الفريق كأفراد

- كلمة school بمعنى المكان الذي يتعلم فيه الطلاب لا تُعد أما إذا قصدنا المدرسة كمبنى فهي تُعد :

- She drives the kids to school every morning. - They're building a new school in the village.

الكلمات الآتية لها نفس صيغة المفرد و الجمع:

crossroads تقاطع طرق / means وسيلة / series سلسلة / species نوع

-Means of transport are... - A means of transport is...

- العبارات الدالة على الكمية و المبالغ المالية و الزمن و الثمن و المسافة و الوزن و درجات الحرارة تُعامل معاملة المفرد مع الفعل:

- Fifty litres of water fills a camel's hump. -Two billion pounds is a lot of money.

- Ten hours is a long time to sleep. -Twenty kilometres is a long distance to walk.

- Twenty degrees out of a hundred is a very bad mark.

ولكن لاحظ:-

- Three one-pound coins are on the desk. ثلاث عملات معدنية من فئة الجنيه

- بعض الأسماء التي لا تعد المنتهية بحرف s يُستخدم معها دائما فعل مفرد:

genetics - classics - electronics - athletics - politics - news - economics - statistics
- physics - gymnastics - mathematics- maths

- Politics is my favourite interest.

- Athletics is better than chess.

a lot of - many - much - a few - few - a little - little

a lot of

- لاحظ أن a lot of / plenty of تستخدم في الإثبات مع الكلمات التي تعد و الكلمات التي لا تعد
- تستخدم lots of مع الكلمات التي تعد فقط - تستخدم a great deal of مع الكلمات التي لا تعد فقط

- Aya has got a lot of / lots of/ plenty of books.
- We ate a lot / plenty of / a great deal of cheese.

Many

- تأتي قبل اسم يعد في النفي و الاستفهام :

- Aya hasn't got many books. - Has Aya got many books?

much

- تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد في النفي و الاستفهام :

- Did you eat much cheese? - We didn't eat much cheese.

a few

- تأتي قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل يكفي أو لا تمثل قلته مشكلة :

- I have a few pounds. (enough)

few

- تأتي قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل لا يكفي أو ان قلته تسبب مشكلة :

I have few pounds. (not enough)

a little

- تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة تكفي أو لا تمثل قلته مشكلة :

- We have a little water . (enough)

little

- تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة لا تكفي أو ان قلته تسبب مشكلة :

- We have little water. (not enough)

ملحوظة

- تأتي (many - much) في جملة خبريه في الحالات الآتية :

- مع much إذا سبقها much (so - very - as - too)

- There is so much milk. - She was carrying too much luggage.

- مع many إذا سبقها many (so - as - too - a good - a great)

- There are too many people in the bus. - He has a great many suits.

Some - Any - No

Some

- تأتي قبل اسم يعد أو اسم لا يعد في جملة خبرية مثبتة و في سؤالي العرض والطلب .

- اسم يعد
- My mother bought some cups.
- اسم لا يعد
- I drank some milk.
- عرض
- Would you like some coffee ?
- طلب
- Can I have some juice ?

Any

- تأتي قبل اسم يعد أو اسم لا يعد في جملة استفهامية أو منفية .

- اسم يعد
- I don't want any books.
- اسم لا يعد
- I didn't drink any juice.
- تستخدم لنفي some مع نفي الفعل.
- I bought some books. - I didn't buy any books.
- She has some money. - She doesn't have any money.

- تأتي مع الكلمات الدالة على النفي مثل :

hardly – scarcely – seldom – never – without – refuse – too to

- He never had any friends.

- They hardly have any money.

- تستخدم مع If الدالة والمعبرة عن الشك .

- If you need any money, just tell me.

- If you have any questions, ask after I finish.

No

- تأتي في الجمل المنفية عندما يكون الفعل مثبتا .

- There are no buses now.

- I have no money left.

- تستخدم لنفي some مع فعل مثبت وتساوى any not.

- I have some headache.

- I have no headache.

- I bought some pencils.

I bought no pencils.

ملاحظات هامة

1- الضمائر الغير محددة التالية تأخذ دائما فعل مفرد ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع:

(someone / no one / nobody / any one / every one / every body / somebody / person)

- Somebody has cleaned the house. They have also watered the flowers.

- Everybody was happy, weren't they?

- Someone helps me look after my garden. We pay them a lot of money.

لكن لاحظ أن (none) تأخذ فعل جمع و ضمير جمع:

- None have cleaned my room recently. They have been very busy.

2- الضمائر الغير محددة التالية تأخذ دائما فعل مفرد و عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير مفرد أيضا:

(something / nothing / anything/ everything)

- Something has fallen on your head. It is a bird's feather.

3- بعض الضمائر الغير محددة مثل (some / all) قد تكون مفرد أو جمع حسب ما تشير إليه :

- My friends have different hobbies. Some are interested in football but some like tennis.

- Don't throw away the cheese. Some is fresh.

- All the books are in my bag, but all the paper is on the table.

4- كلمة (each) دائما مفرد و يعود عليها ضمير جمع :

- Each player was playing well. I was pleased with them.

5- العبارات مثل (as well as / along with / together with) اذا كانت تربط فاعلين يعامل الفعل بعدها حسب الفاعل الاول

- I as well as Ali am clever.

لاحظ : مع (and / both and ...) الفعل دائما جمع :

Ahmed and I are friends.

- Both mum and dad like fish.

6- الضميرين (either / neither) مفردان ويأتي معهم فعل مفرد:

- I can join two clubs. Neither club is good enough.

لاحظ : في حالة ربط فاعلين معهم الفعل يتبع الفاعل الاقرب (الثاني):

Neither Ahmed nor I am happy.

- Either I or Aya is out of the competition.

7 - التعبير (more than one) يأخذ فعل مفرد:

I think some viewers don't like the film. More than one has already left.

8- ادرس ما يلي جيدا :

1- Some of the voters are still angry.

2- A large percentage of the older population is voting against her.

1- Two - fifth of the troops were lost in the battle.

2- Two - fifth of the area was destroyed by fire.

1- Forty percent of the students are in favour of changing the policy

2- Forty percent of the student body is in favour of changing the policy.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer:

1. If you are riding a bicycle, fifty kilometresnot such a long way.
a) *are* b) *is* c) *were* d) *was*
2. Can you count how grains of sand are on a beach?
a) *much* b) *many* c) *some* d) *any*
3. One of the team members usually very aggressive.
a) *are* b) *be* c) *were* d) *is*
4. water has gone under this old bridge.
a) *Many* b) *Plenty* c) *Lots* d) *Much*
5. There is plenty of meat, but there is not bread.
a) *plenty* b) *many* c) *much* d) *a lot*
6. I'm sorry. I haven't made.....change.
a) *any* b) *many* c) *plenty* d) *a*
7. Six people injured in a bus accident yesterday.
a) *are* b) *was* c) *were* d) *is*
8. We have two litres of milk. that enough for today?
a) *Are* b) *Was* c) *Is* d) *Were*
9. Maths my favourite subject when I was in school.
a) *was* b) *were* c) *is* d) *are*
10. The police arrested three suspects.
a) *is* b) *have* c) *are* d) *has*
11. Two hoursa long time to wait.
a- *is* b- *are* c- *have been* d- *were*
12. A group of peoplethe film.
a- *is watching* b- *are watching* c- *watching* d- *watched*
13. Two million poundsa lot of money.
a- *are* b- *are being* c- *is being* d- *is*
14. Ten minutesenough to reach Cairo.
a- *are being* b- *is being* c- *are* d- *is*
15. Athleticsyour body fit.
a- *are keeping* b- *keep* c- *keeps* d- *kept*
16. The bag of moneylast night.
a- *were stolen* b- *is stolen* c- *were stolen* d- *are stolen*
17. This basketball teamto win the match.
a- *are going* b- *is going* c- *am going* d- *going*
18. The teamtonight to their next match..
a- *is travelling* b- *are travelling* c- *travels* d- *travelled*
19. Are there -----biscuits left?
a- *any* b- *some* c- *much* d- *too much*
20. The trousers you bought for me ----- fit me.
a- *don't* b- *doesn't* c- *isn't* d- *aren't*
21. The pair of trousers you bought for me ----- fit me.
a- *doesn't* b- *don't* c- *isn't* d- *aren't*
22. Fortunately the news ----- as bad as we expected.
a- *is being* b- *aren't* c- *is* d- *isn't*
23. – I don't have ----- furniture.
a- *many* b- *much* c- *some* d- *a*
24. Can you bring mewater ,please?
a- *any* b- *some* c- *many* d- *a lot*
25.coffee have you drunk today?
a- *how many* b- *how much* c- *how* d- *how long*
26. Do you haverice left?
a- *a* b- *any* c- *some* d- *many*
27.money do you need for your holiday?

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>a- how far</i> | <i>b- how many</i> | <i>c- how much</i> | <i>d- how long</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
28. Fifty degreesa very high temperature.
a- are *b- is being* *c- were* *d- is*
29. Athleticsmy father' s favourite sport.
a- is *b- are* *c- were* *d- have been*
30. The team usuallyvery well.
a- plays *b- has played* *c- have played* *d- plays*
31. Howseconds are there in an hour?
a-much *b- long* *c- high* *d- many*
32. Ten kilometres a long way to run.
a- are *b- have been* *c- is* *d- be*
33. Would you likecup of tea?
a- a *b- any* *c- some* *d- an*
34. One of the players in the blue teamvery tall.
a- are *b- is* *c- be* *d- is being*
35. One of the players in the blue team very tall.
a-is *b-are* *c- were* *d- be*
36. How people are there in the team?
a-much *b- many* *c- long* *d- little*
37. We didn't take photographs yesterday.
a-some *b- many* *c- much* *d- little*
38. Eman was listening to..... music.
a-a *b- many* *c- one* *d- some*
39. They didn't do shopping last week.
a-a *b- much* *c- many* *d- some*
40. I still have..... things to do.
a-a little *b- much* *c- one* *d- a few*
41. I am going to buy..... bread.
a-some *b- a few* *c- two* *d- one*
42. If you want to know the news, you can read.....
a-much paper *b- many paper* *c- a paper* *d- paper*
43. I bought to print my documents.
a-papers *b- paper* *c- a paper* *d- many papers*
44. Twenty pounds ----- a lot of money for a five – year – old wallet.
a – is *b – are* *c – were* *d – have been*
45. Four days ----- long enough for a good holiday.
a – weren't *b – aren't* *c – haven't been* *d – isn't*
46. The news ----- as bad as we expected.
a – wasn't *b – weren't* *c - haven't been* *d - don't*
47. I think the people ----- happy with the government.
a – are *b – was* *c – is* *d – has been*
48. Could you give me..... advice?
a-an *b-some* *c- many* *d- one*
49. I don't have luggage.
a-many *b - some* *c- much* *d- a lot*
50. They spend money on travel.
a-a lot of *b- many* *c- a few* *d- a*
51. I hope you will have good time.
a-a *b- many* *c- a few* *d- any*
52. She has problem. Can you help her?
a-a *b- a few* *c- any* *d- a lot*
53. How..... girls are there in your school?
a-much *b- many* *c- few* *d- little*
54. He has..... English name, but in fact he's French.
a-the *b- an* *c- a* *d- many*
55. He is going away for..... month in July.
a-some *b- many* *c- much* *d- a*

56. I drink a of water every morning.
a-glass b- bag c- tube d- packet
57. I have pens. I don't need any more.
a-a little b - little c - a few d - few
58. I don't have time left.
a-many b- some c- much d- few
59. Will you bring me sugar?
a- any b - some c- few d - a lot
60. Egypt has..... natural resources.
a- little b - few c - a lot of d - a little
61. I take a..... of honey every morning .
a-jar b- tube c- glass d- spoonful
62. He hasn't gotfurniture in his house.
a-a lot of b - some c- any d- many
63. There are books on the shelf . They are not enough.
a- many b- few c- a lot of d - any
64. He needs bread to make a sandwich.
a-a few b- a lot of c- a loaf of d- many
65. All the newsgood .
a- are b- were c - have been d - is
66. I have..... CDs . I need some more.
a-little b- a little c- a few d- few
67. The luggagelabelled.
a-are b- is c- are being d- have been
68. She eats just one of meat everyday.
a-slice b- lump c - kilo d- packet
69. My brother hasexperience, so he didn't get the job.
a-a little b- a few c- little d- few
70. The attack on the shop causeddamage
a-a few b- many c - a lot of d- few
71. Are there biscuits left?
a-some b- an c- any d- a
72. How people are there in the team?
a-many b- much c - little d- more
73. The police to interview two men about the robbery .
a- want b - wants c - has wanted d - is wanted
74. Can I borrow you scissors? Mine sharp enough.
a- isn't b - aren't c- doesn't d - don't
75. I have money. However I can buy my needs.
a- little b- a little c- few d- many
76. He has pens, he can give me one of them.
a- much b- a little c- a few d- few
77. Are there biscuits left?
a- an b- any c- little d- much

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. After left university, he worked as a lawyer.
2. Athletics are important.
3. Athletics were my father's favourite sport.
4. Do we have a rice left?
5. Fifty degrees are a very high temperature
6. He went to a schools in the village.
7. How many money do you need for your holiday?
8. How much clothes have you bought?
9. How much coffees have you drunk today?
10. Hurry! There is not many time left.
11. Money are the root of all evil.
12. Much people don't have enough to eat.
13. Our luggage are searched carefully.

14. She has got a little books.
15. She likes oranges but I like green.
16. The Egyptian teams is very clever.
17. The people in our group was watching the film.
18. The police is chasing the suspect.
19. The team usually plays very well.
20. They are nice person.
21. This socks are fine.
22. Two five-pound notes is on the table.

12. You can still see a lot of ----- architecture in Greece and Rome.
 a- classic b- classics c- classified d- classes
13. After finishing school, he went to Oxford University----- he studied classics.
 a- when b- which c- where d- that
14. He was interested in----- and was a good speaker.
 a- policy b- political c- politics d- politician
15. The police ----- chased the suspect ...
 a- has b- were c- are d- have
16. He died after he fell ----- his horse.
 a- in b- for c- of d- off

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Athletics keep us fit.
2. Fifty litres of petrol fill my car.
3. How many money do you need?
4. How much coffees have you drunk today?
5. My pair of glasses were lost yesterday.
6. Rice are very little.

C- Reading Comprehension

5- Read the following passage and then answer the questions: (June, 2009)

In the winter, many animals and birds travel hundreds of kilometres to places with a warmer climate and more food. This incredible journey takes place every year at about the same time. It is common to see birds sitting on walls or telephone wires waiting to travel the long distance between the places where they spend their summers and their winters.

Scientists do not know exactly how they find their way to and from their winter homes. It is thought that there are different ways, for example, using the sun and stars for navigation.

Some people believe that birds depend on their senses, including their sense of smell, to help them find the way. Some animals and birds travel thousands of kilometres. Blue whales have been known to travel up to 20,000 kilometres.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Why do some birds and animals spend their winters and summers in different places?
2. How do birds and animals use the sun and stars?
3. What is surprising about the blue whale?

B- choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

4. Why are the journeys birds and animals make incredible?
 a- They take place at exactly the same time every year. b- They are very long.
 c- The birds and animals do not know where they are going d- they take place in winter.
5. Who does the word they refer to in the phrase they find their way?
 a- scientists b- Winter homes c- Birds and animals d- The sun and stars

6- Read the following passage and then answer the questions: (June, 2009)

Mexico is one of the most beautiful and diverse countries in the world with a wide variety of landscapes and ecosystems – groups of plants and living creatures interacting with each other and with their surroundings. Mexico has it all: deserts, swamps, snow-capped mountains, volcanoes, tropical forests and even deserted beaches. The traditions of dozens of cultures still remain in Mexico making it an exciting holiday destination.

There is something for everyone from ancient ruins to luxury hotels. Mexico is pleasant at any time of the year, but the most popular time to visit is between May and October. Whatever time of year you decide to visit, get ready to enjoy one of the most memorable holidays of your life.

The tour begins in Mexico City. It is the capital and was built on the ruins of Tenochtitlan, dating back to Aztec times. In the center of the city lies the "Plaza de la Constitution", which was built from stones taken from this ancient city. A short walk will take you to the Alameda, one of the largest parks in Mexico City. If you want a quick bite to eat, street vendors can be found everywhere selling good food at reasonable prices. If you are ready for a night out of the town, you can enjoy lively performances of traditional music and dance.

Puerto Vallarta is situated at the foot of the Sierra Madre Mountains. This romantic city is little more than an hour's flight away from the capital. You will fall in love with the charm of the Mexico village atmosphere, fine old buildings and beautiful squares. Puerto Vallarta's white sandy beaches stretch for over a hundred miles of unspoiled coastline, so you'll certainly find a peaceful spot to relax.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why is Mexico an exciting holiday destination?
2. When was Tenochtitlan built?
3. What is the capital of Mexico?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

4. The prices of food sold by street vendors in the Alameda are
a- expensive b- too expensive c- rather cheap d- extremely cheap
5. Puerto Vallarta is
a- a valley b- a capital c- an inland village d- a coastal village

D- The Mask of Gold

7. Answer the following questions :

1. Where does Rassendyll decide to travel to? What does he tell his family about his plans?
2. What does the owner of the inn think of Michael Duke of Strelsau?
3. Why does Rassendyll decide to walk through the forest the next day?
4. Who does Rassendyll meet in the forest? Why are they surprised to see him?

B) Read the following quotation. then answer the questions

2- "He's always lived in Ruritania and he cares about the people, so people like him."

1. Who says this to whom?
2. Who is the person talking about?
3. What more does the speaker think about the person?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. A moat goes around the Duke's mansion and his castle. (F)
2. Colonel Sapt recognises the name of Rassendyll. (F)

E - Writing

8. Write a paragraph about 100 words about

"The importance of the role young people can play in eradicating illiteracy."

F - Translation

9. a) Translate into Arabic :

Gesture is a form of non-verbal communication in which visible bodily actions communicate particular messages, either in place of speech or together and in parallel with spoken words. Gestures include movement of the hands, face, or other parts of the body. Gestures allow individuals to communicate a variety of feelings and thoughts, from contempt and hostility to hostility and affection, often together with body language in addition to words when they speak.

b) Translate into English :

1- تساعد المنافسات الرياضية علي تقارب الشعوب و نبذ العنف و الكراهية .

2- أثر التسرب البترولي علي الحياة البحرية تأثيرا سيئا.

non-verbal	غير شفهي	parallel	موازي
visible	مرئي	individuals	افراد
contempt	رضا	hostility	عداء
affection	عاطفة	Oil leak	التسرب البترولي
Discard	نبذ	Approach	تقارب
Hatred	الكراهية	Violence	العنف

Unit 3- Energy

Main Vocabulary

atom	الذرة	geothermal	حرارى أرضى	pipe	أنبوبة / ينقل بالأنابيب
atomic	ذرى	hydroelectric power	طاقة كهرومائية	power station	محطة طاقة
coal	الفحم	liquid	سائل	pressure	ضغط
fossil fuels	وقود حفري	molten	منصهر	renewable	متجدد
generate	يولد	non-renewable	غير متجدد	waste	نفايات / فضلات
generation	توليد / جيل	nuclear	نووى	wind turbines	محرك يعمل بقوة

Vocabulary

alternative	بديل	electric bulb	مصباح كهربى	pollute	يلوث
amount = quantity	كمية	environmentalists	خبراء البيئة	press agency	وكالة أنباء
atomic = nuclear	ذري / نووي	extremely	للاغاية	press conference	مؤتمر صحفي
beans	الفول / البقول	fine	غرامة / يُغرم	public transport	المواصلات
become extinct	يصبح منقرضاً	forms of energy	أشكال الطاقة	push	يدفع / يضغط
blade	ريشة المروحة / نصل	geo- = earth	مقطع بمعنى الأرض	recycling	إعادة الاستخدام
boiling point	نقطة الغليان	harness	يُسخر / يستخدم / يستغل	reduce pollution	يقلل التلوث
capture	يحصل علي /	impressed	منبهر / متأثر	safe	آمن
central heating	التدفئة المركزية	incredible	لا يُصدق	sail	يبحر
clean energy	الطاقة النظيفة	industry	الصناعة	save energy	يوفر الطاقة
company = firm	شركة	introduce	يقدم	science fiction	الخيال العلمي
conclude	يستنتج / يختم	introduction	مقدمة	smart car	سيارة ذكية
conclusion	استنتاج / خاتمة	job opportunities	فرص عمل	speed bump	مطب لتخفيف السرعة
corn	الحبوب / الذرة	lake Nasser	بحيرة ناصر	split	ينشطر
countdown	عد تنازلي	lighting	الإضاءة	springs	ينابيع مياه
create pollution	يسبب تلوث	lightning	البرق	steam	البخار
cyclist	راكب دراجة	nuclear weapons	أسلحة نووية	store	يُخزن
device	جهاز / أداة	palm trees	أشجار النخيل	tower	برج
disrupt traffic	يُعطل المرور	make achievements	يحقق إنجازات	straight	مستقيم / معتدل
extensively	علي نطاق واسع	mass media	وسائل الإعلام	straighten	يسوي / يمهّد
extinction	الانقراض	materials	مواد	sugar cane	قصب السكر
desert reclamation	استصلاح الصحراء	melting point	نقطة الانصهار	supply and demand	العرض و
destination	جهة الوصول / مقصد	natural gas	الغاز الطبيعي	thermal = heat	حرارة
developed countries	الدول المتطورة	natural resources	موارد طبيعية	thunder	الرعد
developing countries	الدول النامية	nuclear disarmament	نزع السلاح النووي	traditional	تقليدي
diesel	زيت الديزل	nuclear fission	انشطار نووي	types = sorts = kinds	أنواع
directions	اتجاهات / تعليمات	nuclear power	الطاقة النووية	under pressure	تحت ضغط
drill	يحفر	nuclear power station	محطة للطاقة النووية	urgent solution to	حل عاجل
drive machines	يُشغل الآلات	nuclear reactor	مفاعل نووي	vegetables	خضروات
economic problems	مشكلات اقتصادية	nuclear waste	النفايات النووية	vehicles	مركبات

Expressions

afford to + inf.	لديه ما يكفي من المال لـ	generate electricity	يُولد الكهرباء
all over the world	في كل انحاء العالم	go through	يمر من خلال
along the motorway	علي طول الطريق السريع	in molten form	في شكل منصهر
along the red sea	بمحاذاة البحر الأحمر	in other ways	بطرق أخرى
at a high speed	بسرعة عالية	in this way	وبهذه الطريقة
at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	instead of	بدلاً من
be connected to	متصل بـ	last for	يستمر لمدة
be produced from	يُنْتَج من	make use of	يستخدم من / يستغل
below the earth's surface	تحت سطح الأرض	on the earth's surface	علي سطح الأرض
come up	يصعد لأعلي	pump to the surface	يضخ إلي السطح
connect to the internet	يتصل بالانترنت	rely on = depend on	يعتمد علي
dangerous to	خطير علي	sail ships	يُوجه أو يُسير السفن
develop new forms of	يطور أشكالاً جديدة من	something goes wrong with	خطأ أو عطل يحدث في
do a survey into	يقوم بدراسة أو استطلاع رأي	Supply... with	يُزود ..بـ
do without = dispense with	يستغني عن	take part in	يشارك في
drive on the road	يقود السيارة علي الطريق	turn into	يتحول إلي
forward	للأمام / يُرسل	useful for drivers	مفيد للسائقين

Words & antonyms عكسها

Active	نشط	Inactive	غير نشيط
Clockwise	في اتجاه عقارب الساعة	anticlockwise	عكس اتجاه عقارب الساعة
Deep	عميق	Shallow	ضحل
Full	ممتلئ	Empty	فارغ
Import	يستورد	Export	يُصدر
Include	يشمل	Exclude	يستبعد
Increase	زيادة / يزداد	Decrease	نقص / ينقص
Renewable	متجدد	Non-renewable	غير متجدد
Turn on	يُشغل	Turn off	يوقف

Derivatives

Depend	يعتمد	Dependence	اعتماد	Dependent	معتمد / عالية/تابع
Endanger	يُعرض للخطر	Danger	خطر	Dangerous	خطير
Energize	يمنح طاقة	Energy	الطاقة	Energetic	نشط / مليء بالطاقة
Know	يعرف	Knowledge	المعرفة	Knowledgeable	لديه معرفة واطلاع
Liquefy	يحول لسائل	Liquid	السائل	Liquid	في شكل سائل
Melt	يذوب / ينصهر	Melting	انصهار / ذوبان	Molten	منصهر
Produce	يُنْتج	Production	إنتاج	Productive	منتج / إنتاجي
Reduce	يُقلل	Reduction	خفض / تقليل	Reduced	مُخفض
Renew	يُجدد	Renewal	تجديد	Renewable	متجدد

Definitions

Atom	The smallest unit that an element can be divided into.	ذرة
Fossil fuel	A fuel such as coal or oil that is obtained from under the ground.	وقود حفري
Generate	To produce energy or to cause something to exist.	يولد

Geothermal energy	The heat produced inside the earth	طاقة منبعثة من باطن الارض
Hydroelectric(adj.)	Using the force of water to create electricity.	كهرومائي
Liquid (n.) (adj)	A substance that is not solid and that can be poured easily.	سائل
Molten (adj.)	Being Liquid because of extreme heat.	منصهر
Nuclear (adj.)	Relating to the energy released when atoms are divided.	نووي
Pipe	A long tube which liquid or gas can move through.	ماسورة
Power station/plant	A place where electricity is produced.	محطة طاقة
Pressure	The force that a gas or liquid has when it is inside a container or place.	ضغط
Renewable (adj.)	Can be produced as quickly as it is used.	متجدد
Waste (n.)	Things that are not wanted, especially what remains after you have used something.	اسراف
Wind turbine	A machine with long parts at the top that are turned by the wind, used to make electricity.	توربين رياح

Language Notes

Prefixes البادئات

- في بعض الكلمات تضاف بادئة prefix لتعطي معنى عكسي مثل:

- Non-

Alcoholic	Non-alcoholic	Renewable	Non-renewable	Verbal	Non-verbal
Polluting	Non-polluting	Smoker	Non-smoker	Violent	Non-violent

- Un-

Dress	undress	Happy	Unhappy	Lucky	Unlucky
Fortunate	Unfortunate	Lock	Unlock	Usual	Unusual

- In-

Complete	incomplete	Effective	Ineffective	Expensive	Inexpensive
Convenient	Inconvenient	Efficient	Inefficient	Sensitive	Insensitive

- لاحظ أن كلمة **invaluable** معناها **very valuable** وليس العكس
- وأن كلمة **flammable** و **inflammable** لهما نفس المعنى وهو "قابل للاشتعال" أما العكس فهو **non-flammable**

- Dis-

Agree	Disagree	Approve	Disapprove	Honest	Dishonest
Appear	Disappear	Connect	Disconnect	Like	dislike

- il-

Legitimate	Illegitimate	Logical	Illogical	Legible	Illegible
Legal	Illegal	Literate	Illiterate		

- Ir-

Responsible	Irresponsible	Regular	Irregular	Resistible	Irresistible
Relevant	Irrelevant	Rational	Irrational		

Sub = Lower than	Submarine/ subzero	Pre = Before	Prehistory
Bio = Life	Biography / biology / bio-chemistry	Re = Again	Recycle / rewrite / retry
Mono = One	Monopoly-monosyllabic	Multi = Many	Multi-system / multinational
Bi = Two	Bilingual / bicycle	Anti = Against	Antibiotic / antibodies
Tri = Three	Triangle – triple	Ante = Before	Antenatal
Under = Below	Underground / understand		

- power قوة - نفوذ - سلطة - قوة - Obama came into power استلم السلطة in the year 2009.
- force قوة - قوة عسكرية - The ship was destroyed by the power of the storm.
- Force + Obj. + to + inf. يرغب - The force of the explosion knocked them to the ground.
- Energy طاقة - An international force is keeping peace in the Darfur.
- The hot weather forced people to stay in their homes.
- Oil, wind and the sun are sources of energy.

other	صفة يتبعها جمع (و أحيانا اسم لا يعد)
- I like helping other people .	- He didn't ask for other information.
other يستخدم بعدها the / some / every / each / many / any / no / (two, three,...)	- في حالة وجود أحد الكلمات الآتية
- You can put the other boxes here.	- I love my mum like any other daughter.
others	تحل محل ضمير فاعل أو مفعول
- Some people are rich; others are poor.	-Some writers are greater than others الآخرين
another	صفة يتبعها اسم مفرد
- I will buy another book .	- She ordered another sandwich .
another (= one more / a different one)	
- This T-shirt is nice. I'll buy another one.	- She lost her job. she's trying to find
another + (few / number: two, three,....	
- The guest stayed for another ten days.	- I'd like to stay here for another few weeks.
one of (أحد) يقع بعدها اسم جمع والفعل مفرد	- One of my uncles is a businessman.
other than بخلاف / غير	- We should use several sources of energy other than fossil fuels.
rather than دلا من / أفضل من / أكثر من	- You should study your lessons rather than playing with children.
find / found / found يجد	- Scientists try hard to find a cure for cancer.
found / founded / founded يؤسس	- The High Dam was founded by President Gamal Abd El-Nasser.
provide with يمد بـ ، يزود بـ	- My parents provide me with money.
providefor يوفر	-He is kind because he provides money for his poor neighbours
lie - lied - lied يقع	- Egypt lies in north-east Africa.
lie to يكذب على شخص	- She lied to us about her job.
lie about يكذب بخصوص شئ	- He lies about doing his homework.
lie - lay - lain ينام - يرقد	- I lay on my bed for an hour.
lay - laid - laid تضع البيض يليها مفعول بدون حرف جر	- Hens lay eggs.
spell - spelled/ Spelt يتهجى	- Spell your name, please.
spill - spilled / spilt يسكب	- Never cry over spilt milk.
split - split ينشطر	- Nuclear energy is made by splitting atoms.
made in صنع في	- This car is made in Korea.
made into = turned into تحول الي	- Sand is made into glass.
made of (المادة المصنوع منها لم تتغير طبيعتها)	- The bag is made of leather.
made from (المادة المصنوع تغيرت طبيعتها)	- The cake is made from flour.
made by يتحول الي	- Flour is made into bread in bakeries.
melt يذوب - ينصهر (بالحرارة)	- The heat has melted the snow.
dissolve يذوب - يذيب (فى سائل)	- Dissolve these pills in water.
molten (glass - lava – rocks – metals) منصهر في حرارة عالية جدا مثل الصخور والمعادن مثلا	- Molten rocks rushed out of the well.
melted (ice - snow - chocolate) منصهر في حرارة عادية (يذوب) مثل الشيكولاته والثلج مثلا	- The sun melts the snow and ice.
smelt يستخرج المعدن من الخام	- Iron ore is smelted in Helwan factory.
run out ينفذ - ينقرض - ينتهي (لا يأتي بعدها مفعول)	- Fossil fuels are going to run out in a few years.
run out of = finish = use up	ينفذ من - ينتهي - يستهلك (يأتي بعدها مفعول)
- run on ب - يدار يعمل	- We can't drink tea because we ran out of sugar.
	- This engine runs on diesel.
let + المصدر + مفعول يسمح	- I let him go out.
allow (permit) + مصدر + to + مفعول يسمح	- I allowed him to go out.
allow + (v + ing) يسمح	- My father doesn't allow staying up late.

keep a record of = record يسجل

keep + object + (v + ing) - adjective يحافظ على

- We need to keep a record of our bills.

- The new blouse kept Aya room attractive.

- She kept us waiting for half an hours.

Use + object + to + inf. يستخدم

- We use wood to make furniture.

use + object + for + (v + ing) يستخدم

- We use wood for making furniture.

-Nuclear fission (n.) انشطار نووي
-nuclear weapons / wastes اسلحة – نفايات

-Nuclear fusion (n.) اندماج نووي
- Nuclear reactor (n.) مفاعل نووي

- pressure (n.) ضغط – موقف صع

-Teachers are under increasing pressure to work longer hours.

- pressure (v.) يجبر-يرغم-يضغط

- The president was pressured to resign.

-pressure groups جماعات الضغط

-The pressure groups influence the government' s decision to open the road to Gaza.

- renew (v.) يجدد-يستأنف مرة اخرى

-I have decided not to renew my driving licence this year.

- renewal (n.) تجديد

- The next morning the Israeli war planes renewed their bombing on Gaza

- Our educational system needs renewal.

- renewable (adj.) متجدد

- We should depend on the renewable sources of energy.

- renewables (n.) طاقات متجددة

- The sun and the wind are renewables.

- non renewable غير متجدد

- Oil and gas are non renewable sources of energy.

-connected to مرتبط او متصل بمصدر طاقة

- The computer is connected to a printer.

- connected with متعلق ب – علي صلة ب

- He is connected with some important persons in Cairo.

- There was no evidence that the man was connected with the crime.

- turn on / switch on the lights

- turn off / switch off the lights

- turn into = converted into يتحول الي

- Energy from the flowing water is turned into electricity.

- Rubbish is burnt and converted into energy.

-Solar-powered vehicles

مركبات تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية

Exercises

Respond the following situations:

7. Someone asks you how you usually travel to school every day. How do you reply?

8. You are doing a survey about energy use in your town. You would like to ask someone some questions. Explain the situation.

9. You hear someone use a word you do not understand. The word is hydroelectric. What do you ask?

10. You want to know about a friend's energy saving habits.

2 - Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1-A: What sort of petrol do you prefer, sir?

B: Super, lead-free, please.

A : Do you need servicing, sir?

B: Thank you. no need.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

2- A: May I have five loaves of bread, please? B: Most willingly. A: thank you very much.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

A: Will you have exams soon?

B: Yes, I will.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

4- A: Are you good at English& using computers?

B: yes, I' m. I have worked in Micro-tech Company for three years.

A: ok. We will call you in two days.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d :

1.energy is a non-renewable energy.
a-sun b-water c-coal d-geothermal
2. Geothermal energy is better..... the environment.
a-than b-to c-for d-at
3. Which picture show energy..... from the following?
a-produced b-is produced c-being produced d-produces
4. Hedroelectric power is
a-renewable b-non-renewable c-recycled d-finished
5. Electricity is produced in a station .
a-geothermal b-power c-sun d-wind
6.is the force produced when two things push against each other.
a-energy b-power c-pressure d-geothermal
7.is a black fossil fuel from underground
a-oil b-coal c-geothermal d-pressure
8. When atoms are, nuclear energy is produced.
a-spelt b-split c-spilt d-spoiled
9. If you make rock or metal very hot , it becomes
a-heat b-molten c-cool d-boil
10. is oil or alcohol made from plants .
a-fossil fuels b-bio fuels c-natural gas d-chemical fuels
11.is used in homes and to generate electricity.
a-coal b-petrol c-natural gas d-bio fuels .
12. A.....is a part of a word that goes before a word to change its meaning.
a-prefix b-suffix c-proverb d-complement
13. What types of energy are used in Egypt ?
a-few b-most c-many d-the most
14. In the wind turbines there are underground to transport electricity.
a-motors b-wires c-blades d-towers
15. When is expensive , everyone has to pay more for food , heating and transport.
a-housing b-energy c-salaries d-water
16. Countries need to cooperate to develop new of energy .
a-farms b-flowers c-forms d-forces
17. Some countries cannot afford to fuels from other countries .
a-port b-export c-sell d-import
18. people, animals and plants need energy to
a-eat b-walk c-live d-multiply
19. Most of our sources of energy today depend on
a-solar power b-bio fuels c-fossil fuels d-nuclear power
20.isn't an example of fossil fuels.
a-oil b-natural gas c-wind d-kerosene
21. Traditional fuels were formed undergroundmillions of years
a-for b-in c-over d-from
22. Energy from the sun , wind or geothermal energy isn't
a-renewable b-traditional c-clean d-useful
23. In the past wind was used for
a-fanning b-sewing c-sailing d-fighting
24. The High Dam in Aswan supplies Egypt a lot of its electricity.
a-for b-to c-with d-from
25. As well asexpensive, fossil fuels pollutes air.
a-be b-being c-making d-having
26. The injured footballers.....slowly off the field.
a-jumped b-climbed c-limped d-timed
27. We canwaterfalls as a source of energy.
a-make b-use up c-harness d-generate
28. He's beenas Assistant Secretary to the Minister of Education.

- a-said b-know c-appointed d-same*
29. Saving energy stops it from
a-going out b-running out c-using up d-wearing away
30. Water passing through a dam producespower.
a-geothermal b-hydroelectric c-solar d-non-renewable
31. The knife has a sharp.....
a-handles b-blade c-fan d-back
32. energy is the energy we get from the heat inside the earth
a- Nuclear b – Solar c – Hydroelectric d - Geothermal
33. Molten metal or rock is because it is very hot.
a-solid b - renewable c- hard d– liquid
34. Please time how long I will take to do 5 around the playground.
a-taps b- laps c – tops d- lips
35. He had a swim and lay on the sand to himself.
a-sun b- fuel c– moon d- hot
36. Theof dead plants and animals make fossils.
a-returns b- remains c – resources d- recycles
37. I begged her to speak, she silent.
a- remained b- reminded c - removed d- remembered
38. Our boat was by high waves.
a-fueled b- watered c- rocked d- recharged
39. The energy for powered vehicles comes from the sun.
a-petrol b – solar c - gas d– oil
40. Scientists are now working ways to use solar power instead of petrol vehicles.
a- for b- at c - in d- on
41. "Wind farm" in Egypt are used to produce electric
a-force b - power c- strength d- ability
42. I decided to spend the summer holiday in Port Said spending it abroad.
a- rather than b- or rather c - rather d - would rather
43. Geothermal energy is better than that.....by traditional power stations.
a- Producing b- produced c- produce d- product
44. We are going toa survey into people's use of energy.
a- have b- do c- make d- produce
45. Howdo you travel by car? Twice a week.
a- long b- far c- many d- often
46.is the black fossil fuel from underground.
a- coal b- cool c- gas d- oil
47. When atoms are splitenergy is produced.
a- solar b- nuclear c- geothermal d- fossil
48. If you make rock or metal very hot , it becomes.....
a- dissolved b- molten c- smelt d- melt
49.is made from animals or plants that lived millions of years ago
a- nuclear fuel b- fossil fuel c- solar energy d- wind
50. Tois to make electricity.
a- generate b- refrigerate c- energize d- produce
51.means can be replaced at the same speed it is used.
a- nuclear b- renewable c- nonrenewable d- fossil
52.means materials left after you have used something , which you do not need.
a- waste b- fossil c- paste d- rest
53.is a building with parts that turn with the wind , which is used to make power
a- gas station b- power station c- wind turbine d- reactor
54. Water passing through a dam producespower.
a- nuclear b- geothermal c- heat d- hydroelectric
55. Buryingin the ground can damage the environment.
a- oil b- waste c- waist d- west
56. Modern ...are tall towers that are built where there is a lot of wind..
a- factories b- turbines c- plants d- stations

57. Many countries are now using moreforms of energy from the sun and wind.

a- knowable

b- renewable

c- nonrenewable

d- renewed

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Coal is a black fusil fuel from underground.
2. Crops of wind turbines along the red sea in Egypt generate electricity.
3. Electricity pollutes the atmosphere.
4. Energy from the sun can be hunted and stored.
5. Energy from the sun is probably the best form of non-renewable energy.
6. Energy from the sun will list for another billion years.
7. For centuries, the coal has been used to sail ships and pump water.
8. Geothermal energy doesn't create population.
9. Geothermal power stations produce as more energy as two large coal power stations.
10. Hydroponic means using water power to produce electricity
11. I wove to him from the window but he didn't see me.
12. It is important for us to increase in using non-renewable energy.
13. Many countries are now using non-renewable forms of energy from the sun and wind.
14. Most of the Earth's energy comes up the sun.
15. Non-renewable means can't be used more twice.
16. Nothing can't live without energy.
17. Nuclear energy is clean and non-renewable.
18. Nuclear power is produced when atoms spilt.
19. Siwa oases is very important for us.
20. The melten rock heats underground lakes of water.
21. The remains of dead Plants and animals make renewable energy.
22. The sun's energy will lest for another five billion years.
23. There are geothermal power stations producing as many energy as two large coal power stations.
24. There is no pollination from hydroelectric power.
25. This is the age of science faction.
26. This water is then pumping to the surface and is heated again to make steam
27. Water is the solid form of ice
28. We always look for new serials of energy.
29. We get hydroelectric energy from the heat inside the earth
30. You should take a lot of exercises to keep fat.

-Translate into Arabic:

Nothing can live without energy. People, animals and plants need energy to live and machines need energy to work. Today, most of the energy we use still comes from fossil fuels like coal oil and gas, which have been formed underground over millions of years.

-Translate into English:

1- يعمل العلماء جاهدين علي ايجاد مصادر جديدة للطاقة.

2- لقد قضت بقعة الزيت علي كثير من الاحياء البحرية و فشلت كل الجهود لمنع انتشارها او الحد من اثرها السيء.

impact	اثر	Sea living things	كائنات حية بحرية
efforts	جهود	minimize	يحد من
Oil spot	بقعة زيت	spread	ينتشر

Grammar

The present simple tense المضارع البسيط

Form

Subj. فاعل + inf. المصدر +

- I get up at six o'clock every morning.

- They sometimes go for a walk on Fridays.

- يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (he/ she /it) :

-Kareem (he) likes football very much.

- ويضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (he/ she /it) إذا كان المصدر منتهيا بـ (ch-sh-ss-o-x) :

- Aya (she) watches action films.

- ويضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (he/ she /it) إذا كان المصدر منتهيا بـ (y) مسبوقا بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y) :

- Eman (she) studies English for an hour everyday.

Negation

Subj. فاعل + don't / doesn't + inf. المصدر +

- لاحظ تستخدم doesn't مع المفرد الغائب :

-I don't get up at six o'clock every morning.

- Kareem (he) doesn't like football very much.

- Aya (she) doesn't watch action films.

- Eman (she) doesn't study English for an hour everyday.

- و نستخدم (never) ايضا للنفي :

-He doesn't help the poor.

= He never helps the poor.

-They don't come early.

= they never come early.

Yes / No Q

Do / Does + Subj. فاعل + inf. المصدر + ?

- Do you get up at six o'clock every morning?

-Yes, I do.

- Yes, I get up at six o'clock every morning.

- No, I don't.

- No, I don't get up at six o'clock every morning.

- Does Aya (she) watch action films?

-Yes, she does.

- Yes, she watches action films.

-No, she doesn't.

- No, she doesn't watch action films.

- و لاحظ السؤال بالفعل المساعد المنفي :

- Doesn't Mostafa enjoy playing tennis?

- Yes, he doesn't.

- No, he does.

'Wh..' Q

Q.W. + do / does + Subj. فاعل + inf. المصدر + ... ?

-What do you eat for dessert?

-How often does Reham go to the club?

- لاحظ السؤال بـ (who) :

-Aya waits for her friends at the school gate.

-Who (does) wait for her friends at the school gate?

- Who does Aya wait for at the school gate?

- يفضل عدم استخدام (do / does) بعد (who) عندما تسأل عن الفاعل الا للتأكيد

Passive

Obj المفعول + am / is / are+ p.p.

- Farmers grow plants.

- Plants are grown by farmers.

- Some people don't eat meat at all.

- Meat isn't eaten at all by some people.

- عند عطف فعل مبني للمجهول علي آخر لا يتكرر استخدام الفعل المساعد الا في حالة تكرار المفعول :

- They pump water to the surface and heat it to make steam.

- Water is pumped to the surface and heated to make steam.

Verb to (have) with the present simple

Form

Subj.فاعل + have / has +

- تستخدم (has) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب:
- تستخدم (have / has) بمعنى يمتلك / عنده / لديه:
- I have a house with a small garden. - Aya has a lot of jewellery.
- تستخدم (have / has) بمعاني أخرى مثل يأكل / يري الخ:
- They have lunch at three o'clock. - Ahmed has bad dreams every night.

- إذا كانت (have / has) بمعنى يمتلك / عنده / لديه يكون النفي باحدي الطريقتين التاليتين:

- 1- Subj.فاعل + haven't / hasn't +
 - I haven't a house with a small garden. - Aya hasn't much jewellery.
 - 2- Subj.فاعل + don't / doesn't + have +
 - I don't have a house with a small garden. - Aya doesn't have much jewellery.
- إذا كانت (have / has) بمعاني أخرى مثل يأكل / يري الخ يكون النفي بطريقة واحدة كالتالي:
- Subj.فاعل + don't / doesn't + have +
 - They don't have lunch at three o'clock. - Ahmed doesn't have bad dreams every night.

- إذا كانت (have / has) بمعنى يمتلك / عنده / لديه يكون السؤال بـ "هل" باحدي الطريقتين التاليتين:

- 1- Have / Has + Subj.فاعل + ?
 - Have you a house with a small garden?
 - Yes, I have (a house with a small garden.) - No, I haven't (a house with a small garden.)
 - Has Aya much jewellery?
 - Yes, she has (much jewellery). - No, she hasn't (much jewellery).
 - 2- Do / Does + Subj.فاعل + have +
 - Do you have a house with a small garden? - Yes, I do. / - No, I don't.
 - Does Aya have much jewellery? - Yes, she does. / - No, she doesn't.
- إذا كانت (have / has) بمعاني أخرى مثل يأكل / يري الخ يكون السؤال بـ "هل" بطريقة واحدة كالتالي:
- Do / Does + Subj.فاعل + have +
 - Do they have lunch at three o'clock? - Yes, they do. / - No, they don't.
 - Does Ahmed have bad dreams every night? - Yes, he does. / - No, they doesn't.
- و ينطبق نفس الكلام علي السؤال باداة استفهام و لا داعي للتكرار

لا يستخدم (have / has) في المبني للمجهول ويستبدل بفعل آخر حسب المعني :

Have = own – possess – belong to – suffer – eat – buy – spend – take

- I have a car. - A car is (possessed – owned) by me.
- She has lunch at two o'clock. - Lunch is eaten at two o'clock by her.

Verb to (be) with the present simple

Form

Subj.فاعل + am / is / are +

- تستخدم (am / is / are) كفعل أساسي في المضارع البسيط بمعني (يكون أو يوجد):
- I am eighteen years old. - Ali is at home now. - We are happy to see you here.
- تستخدم (am / is / are) للنفي و السؤال ولا تبني جملتها للمجهول

Uses of the present simple

1 - to express facts:

التعبير عن حقائق

-The moon goes round the Earth.

2 - to express habits:

التعبير عن عادات

-He always comes late.

- Subj.فاعل + usually.....

= It+ is +someone's habit to + inf...

= Subj.فاعل + be + in the habit of + v.ing...

= Subj.فاعل + be + used to + v.ing / n.

- Ali usually eats fruit for dessert.الكلو بعد الاكل

= It is Ali's (his) habit to eats fruit for dessert .

= Ali is in the habit of eating fruit for dessert.

= Ali is used to eating fruit for dessert.

ملاحظات عامة

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع ظروف التكرار الآتية وتأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي او بعد (verb to be) و احيانا تأتي في بداية او نهاية الجملة :

Always- sometimes- usually- often-occasionally- rarely-
scarcely-seldom-regularly- frequently - generally - monthly -

-He always comes late.

-He is always late.

- I sometimes go fishing.

= Sometimes, I go fishing.

=I go fishing sometimes.

- لاحظ الكلمات السابقة بوجه عام تنفي بـ rarely/ scarcely / seldom/ never

-I always get up early.

- I never get up early.

-She usually watches TV at night.

-She rarely watches TV at night.

- ويستخدم مع الكلمات الآتية في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

Every (day/night/ Monday/ week/ month/year.....etc.
at night/in the mornina/at noon/in the evenina.....etc.

-We watch TV every night.

- Every night, he watches TV .

استخدامات أخرى للمضارع البسيط

1 - يستخدم مع أفعال الشعور والحواس والادراك والعاطفة والتفكير بدلا من المضارع المستمر:

like, dislike, love, think, seem, look, know, feel, understand, want, need, hate, see, remember, forget, prefer, believe, mean, taste, hear, have, possess, own, belong,..... etc.

-I prefer his way in thinking.

-He enjoys reading romantic novels.

2- يستخدم مع الحالة الأولى من (if) و يدل علي المستقبل :

-If you play well, you will win.

3- يستخدم مع الروابط الزمنية و يدل علي المستقبل:

-After he arrives, we will eat.

-They will not go until he gives them money.

4- يعبر عن الحقائق التي تدوم لفترة :

- I work in a bank .

5- - يستخدم مع جداول المواعيد:

- The train arrives at 10:15 pm.

- We have English at ten every Sunday.

6- يستخدم المضارع البسيط في حالة طلب أو إعطاء التعليمات و الاتجاهات :

-How do I get to the station?

-You go straight on, and then you turn left.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer:

1. In many parts of the world , wood to heat people's homes.
a – burn b – burns c – is burnt d – are burnt
2. Sugar cane and used to make fuel.
a – grow b – grows c – grown d – is grown
3. We water to the surface and heat it again.
a – pump b – pumps c – are pumped d – is pumped
4. Water to the surface and heated again.
a – pumps b – is pumped c – pump d – are pumped
5. The tower in an open place.
a – build b – builds c – is building d – is built
6. means using water power to produce electricity.
a – Wind b – Solar c – Hydroelectric d - Atomic
7. The Pyramids were.....by the ancient Egyptians.
a – building b – built c – builds d – build
8. My father always to work on time.
a – go b – goes c – gone d – was going
9. They late for school.
a – never are b – are never c – never is d – can never
10. My sister the newspaper every morning.
a – read b – reads c – has read d – is reading
11. The moon round the earth.
a – will move b – moved c – moves d – has moved
12. Mr. Salem..... comes to work late.
a – doesn't b – never c – didn't d – won't
13. We in Allah.
a – believe b – believes c – are believing d – is believing
14. English all over the world.
a – is spoken b – will speak c – is speaking d – has spoken
15. The house by the sun.
a – heated b – heats c – is heated d – are heated
16.the letter written?
a – Do b – Does c – Is d – Are
17. Ahmed a cup of tea every morning.
a-always has b-has always c-always had d-had always
18. Rubbishand burnt.
a-collects b-collected c-are collected d-is collected
19. We prefer coffee.....tea.
a-on b-to c-at d-than
20. The roadused.
a-isn't b-doesn't c-didn't d-can't
21. When this house erected?
a-did b-does c-was d-will
22. Heba sad.
a-is often b-often is c-was often d-often was
23. Kidnappers made hostageson the ground.
a-sleep c-to sleep c-sleeping d-sleeps
24. These lettersnow.
a-are typing b-were typing c-is being typed d-are being typed
25. He gave annual party, This means he gave it every.....
a-day b-month c-year d-week
26. Pre means
a-before b-after c-during d-against

27. The high damlonger brings silt.
a-not b-no c-non d-none
28. Hady played football2004.
a-in b-since c-for d-ago
29. Heplaying tennis.
a-used to b-use to c- is used to d-used
30. Landfills are the place rubbish is dumped.
a-which b-where c-who d-that
31. It took millions of years oil.
a-form b-to form c-forming d-forms
32. My aunt does not allow in front of her house.
a-parking b-to park c-parks d-park
33. People pump water to the surface andagain
a-heat b-heats c-heating d-heated
34.verbs can't be changed into passive.
a-Transitive b-Intransitive c-Modal d-Helping
35. Hot water comesthrough the earth's surface.
a-on b-to c-up d-into
36. Woodin many parts of the world causes pollution.
a-burning b-is burnt c-burns d-burnt
37. Peoplemuch fossil fuels.
a-use b-uses c-is used d-using
38. the motor in the wind towerto make blades turn
a-use b-used c-is used d-using
39. When oilit is pumped to the surface.
a-find b-found c-is found d-founded
40. We alwaysup before we leave.
a-is locked b-lock c-locking d-is locking
41.your homework checked?
a-Is b-Does c-Was d-Do
42. I can't leave as I
a-examine b-examines c-am examined d-'m not examined

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1.Are you wanting to speak to him now?
- 2.He can't speak to you just now. He has a shower.
- 3.He is except to win the race.
- 4.Holes is drilled into the Earth to find hot water.
- 5.How often is she going to the club?
- 6.I am owing him 50 pounds. I'll pay it back next week.
- 7.I'm thinking he is English.
- 8.Is this watch belonging to Ahmed?
- 9.My office cleans every day.
- 10.Non-renewable forms of energy can use many times
- 11.Oil company is searched for oil everywhere
- 12.Oil finds far beneath the earth.
- 13.The molten rock heat underground lakes of water.
- 14.Things aren't always what they are appeared to be.
- 15.This place rarely visits by anyone.
- 16.This water is then pumping to the surface of the earth.
- 17.Water is boiling at 100 °C.
- 18.What is your father doing? –He's an engineer.
- 19.When she is meeting him, she will tell him the truth.
- 20.Where is he coming from? – England.
- 21.Wood uses to make paper.

Test 3

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to the following situations:

1. Someone asks you what types of energy are used most in Egypt today.
2. You tell your friend what types of energy will be used in the future.
3. Your friend asks you about the problems of the nuclear power.
4. Your friend asks you what sorts of energy.
- 5.

2 - Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1. A: I need some pills and medicine for curing cough. B : With pleasure.
 A: How much will I have to pay? B : 7pounds. I wish you speedy recovery.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

2. A : Why is Khalid absent today? B: His brother told me that he is sick.
 A: Is he at home now? B: No, they say he is in the hospital.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- 1.....energy is produced by hot rocks below the earth's surface.
 a- Hydroelectric b- Nuclear c- Geothermal d- Atomic
- 2.Hot water comesthrough a hole in the earth's surface.
 a- up b- over c- down d- in
- 3.Nothinglive without energy.
 .a- can b- can't c- won't d- couldn't
- 4.Most of the energy we use still comes from.....
 a- fossil fuels b- the sun c- water d- surface
- 5.Coal, oil and gas are all forms of
 a- Atomic energy b- nuclear energy c- hydroelectric d- fossil fuels
- 6.-forms of energy can only be used once..
 a- Renewable b- non renewable c- lasting d- continuous
7. Hydroelectric power supplies Egypta lot of electricity.
 a- for b- to c- with d- by
- 8.Sugar caneand used to make fuel..
 a- grows b- grew c- is growing d- is grown
- 9.Waterto the surface and heated again..
 a- pumps b- is pumping c- is pumped d- pumped
10. The earththe sun every year.
 a- is orbiting b- orbit c- orbits d- orbited
11. The internetby millions of people all over the world.
 a- used b- are used c- is used d- is use
12.power supplies Egypt with a lot of its electricity
 a- hydroelectric b- mechanical c- nuclear d- fossil
13. When atoms,a huge amount of power is produced.
 a- spill b- spell c- spilt d- split
14. As well as being, electricity is clean.
 a- expensive b- unexpensive c- disexpensive d- inexpensive
15. Helate for work.
 a- never is b- is ever c- is never d- ever is
16. The steam to a power station
 a- pipes b- is piped c- is piping d- piped

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Enormous amounts of energy are released when atoms spilt.
2. Fossil fuels are made of the decayed remains of dead plants and animals.
3. Non-renewable sources of energy will last forever.

4. The computer is connected with a printer.
5. The ship was helpless against the energy of the storm.
6. This oil is put straight into vehicles or turn into diesel.
- 7.

C- Reading Comprehension

5- Read the following passage and then answer the questions: (June, 2009)

Climate change experts studying hurricanes documented a 35-year warming trend in ocean surface temperature and linked it to larger hurricanes. The increase has been 1 degree Fahrenheit, resulting in four percent more atmospheric water vapor and six to eight percent more rainfall. Though global warming does not guarantee that each year will see record-strength hurricanes, the long-term ocean warming should raise the baseline of hurricane activity. According to new research, hurricanes in the North Atlantic are stronger and larger than ever before. Scientists now say they know what's to blame. Since about 1970, there has been a warming of the global oceans including the areas where the hurricanes form due to increases in carbon dioxide and greenhouse gases in the atmosphere. Over the past 35 years, the Atlantic's sea surface temperature has increased one degree Fahrenheit. The result is a four-percent increase of atmospheric water vapor and a six to eight-percent increase in rainfall.

A hurricane is a type of tropical cyclone, a low-pressure system that usually forms in the tropics and has winds that circulate counterclockwise near the earth's surface.

A-Answer the following questions:

- 1- What is a hurricane?
- 2- How does global warming leads to hurricanes ?
- 3- What does the underline word " linked " mean?

B- choose the correct answer from a , b , c ,or d

- 4- The increase in The Atlantic's sea surface temperature with one degree leads to
 a- a four-percent increase of atmospheric water vapor
 b- a six to eight-percent increase in rainfall.
 c- a four-percent increase of atmospheric water vapour and a six to eight-percent increase in rainfall.
 d- a four-percent decrease of atmospheric water vapor and a six to eight-percent increase in rainfall
- 5- The long-term ocean warming should raise theof hurricane activity.
 a- ice line b- baseline c- border line d- net line

6- Read the following passage and then answer the questions: (June, 2009)

Alternative Fuel Vehicle refers to a vehicle that runs on a fuel other than traditional gasoline or diesel; any method of powering an engine that does not involve petroleum. Due to a combination of heavy taxes on fuel, particularly in Europe, tightening environmental laws. Current research and development is largely centered on "hybrid" vehicles that use both electric power and internal combustion.

Efforts in alternative forms of power focus on developing fuel cells, alternative forms of combustion and even the stored energy of compressed air. The use of alcohol as a fuel for internal combustion engines, either alone or in combination with other fuels, has been given much attention mostly because of its possible environmental and long-term economical advantages over fossil fuel. Both ethanol and methanol have been considered for this purpose.

While both can be obtained from petroleum or natural gas, ethanol may be the most interesting because many believe it to be a renewable resource, easily obtained from sugar or starch in crops and other agricultural produce such as grain, sugarcane or even lactose.

The hydrogen cars generally use the hydrogen in one of two methods: combustion or fuel-cell conversion.

In combustion, the hydrogen is "burned" in engines in fundamentally the same method as traditional gasoline cars.

In fuel-cell conversion, the hydrogen is turned into electricity through fuel cells which then powers electric motors.

A solar car is an electric vehicle powered by solar energy obtained from solar panels on the car. Solar cars are not a practical form of transportation; insufficient power falls on the roof of a practically sized and shaped vehicle to provide adequate performance.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How do the hydrogen cars work?
2. Why is the solar car impractical?
3. What is the Alternative Fuel Vehicle?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

4. Ethanol is aform of energy.
a- renewable b- traditional c- non renewable d- new
5. The underlined word refers to
a- a car using petrol b- a car using petrol and electricity
c- a car using electricity d- a bio-fuel car

D- The Novel

7. Answer the following questions :

- 1- Why do you think Fritz says that it is not a good time for Rassendyll to visit Strelsau? How does the King react to Fritz's suggestion, and what does that tell you about the King?
- 2- Why don't Fritz and Sapt eat very much? What advice do they give the King? Does he listen to them?
- 3- What happens at the end of the meal? What is the result the next day?
- 4- Why does the Duke poison the King?

B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:

"Meanwhile, I'll have some breakfast! The King is hungry!"

- 1- Who says this to whom?
- 2- Where and when does he say this?
- 3- What does this show you about the speaker?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1- The King invites Rassendyll to eat with him in Strelsau.
- 2- It is Rassendyll's idea to pretend to be the King for the coronation.
- 3-

E - Writing

8. Write a paragraph about 100 words about

"Vehicles of the future"

F - Translation

9. a) Translate into Arabic :

There are many different forms of natural energy that give us light and power in our homes and work. One of these forms is hydroelectric power, which is a renewable source of energy. It's cheap to produce and doesn't pollute the atmosphere.

b) Translate into English :

- ستدوم بعض مصادر الطاقة مدي الحياة و البعض الاخر سوف ينفذ قريبا.

- تتجه مصر لتوليد الكهرباء باستخدام الطاقة النووية حتي تخفف اعتمادها علي الوقود الحفري الذي اوشك علي النفاد.

Unit 4 – Writers and Stories

abroad	خارج الوطن	establish	يؤسس / يرسخ	poem	قصيدة
affect	يؤثر في	European	أوروبي	power	قوة
area	مساحة / منطقة	excellent	ممتاز	product	ينتج
attachments	ملحقات / مرفقات	experience	خبرة	production	إنتاج
average of	المتوسط	expert on	خبير	publisher	الناشر
Be published = come out	تنشر	fashionable	مطابق / على الموضة	reports	تقارير
behave	يتصرف	fixed	ثابت	respect	يحترم / احترام
behavior	سلوك	full of	ملئ بـ	retired	متقاعد
believe in	يؤمن	graduate of	خريج من	routine	روتين يومي
biography	السيرة الذاتية	graduated from	تخرج من	Russian	روسي
break	يكسر / راحة	habits	عادات فردية متكررة	sailor	بحار
career	الحياة المهنية	headache	صداع	short stories	قصص قصيرة
check	مراجعة / يفحص	heart transplant	عملية زراعة قلب	social justice	العدالة الاجتماعية
collection of	مجموعة من	hotel	فندق	society / community	مجتمع كبير
competition	منافسة	human	الموارد البشرية	style	طريقة / أسلوب
confusing	مشوش / مربك	insist on	يصر على	stylish	على الموضة / أنيق
culture	ثقافة	interviewer	مذيع / محاور	summary	موجز / ملخص
custom	عادة / جمر	journalism	صحافة	support	تأييد / يؤيد
cut down	يقلل	journalist	صحفي	surgeon	الطبيب الجراح
deliver	يسلم / يوصل	law	القانون	the poor	الفقراء
delivery	توصيل	lawyer	المحامى	traditional	تقليدي
develop	يطور	literature	الأدب	traditions	التقاليد
development	تطور	massive	ضخم	translate into	يترجم
diplomat	الدبلوماسي	midnight		university	جامعة
disabled	معاق	midday	منتصف النهار	used to + inf	اعتاد أن
district	منطقة / مقاطعة	old-fashioned	موضة قديمة	village	القرية
earthquake	زلزال	papers	الجراند	widen horizons	يوسع الأفق
education	تربية	pay	يدفع	won a prize	يفوز بجائزة
effect	تأثير	penname	اسم مستعار	work as	يعمل كـ
eliminate illiteracy	يمحو الأمية	pioneer	راند	work for	يعمل لحساب
enforce the law	يُطبق أو ينفذ	playwright	كاتب مسرحي	writer	الكاتب

Words & antonyms

considerate	مراع لمشاعر الآخرين	inconsiderate	غير مراع لمشاعر الآخرين
customary	تقليدي / معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
detest	يكره	love	يحب
experienced	ذو خبرة	inexperienced	بلا خبرة
familiar	مألوف	unfamiliar	غير مألوف
flexible	مرن	inflexible	غير مرن
lawful	قانوني / شرعي	unlawful	غير قانوني / غير شرعي
old-fashioned	قديم / غير مسابر للموضة	modern / fashionable	حديث / مسابر للموضة
simple	بسيط	complicated	معقد
support	يؤيد	oppose	يعارض
thoughtful	مراع لمشاعر الآخرين	thoughtless	غير مراع لمشاعر الآخرين

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adj.
affect يؤثر علي	effect تأثير	effective مؤثر / فعال
believe يعتقد	belief اعتقاد	believable يمكن تصديقه
collect يجمع	collection مجموعة	collective جماعي
compete ينافس / يتنافس	competition مسابقة / منافسة	competitive تنافسي
confuse يربك / يُحير	confusion ارتباك / حيرة	confusing محير / مُربك
	fashion موضة	fashionable علي الموضة
	law قانون - lawyer محامي	Lawful قانوني
pioneer تكون له الريادة	pioneer رائد	pioneering (انجاز) رائد
retire يتقاعد	retirement التقاعد	retired متقاعد
Write يكتب	writer كاتب -writing الكتابة	

Expressions

at midday	في منتصف اليوم	have a routine	لديه روتين معين
adjust to	سكتيف أو يتأقلم علي	have lunch	يتناول الغذاء
against the law	ضد القانون	human resources	الموارد البشرية
believer in	مؤمن بـ	multicultural society	مجتمع متعدد الثقافات
break the law	يخالف القانون	natural disasters	كوارث طبيعية
civilized society	مجتمع متحضر	provide a model for	يقدم نموذج أو قدوة لـ
eliminate illiteracy	يمحو الأمية	social justice	العدالة الاجتماعية
e-mail attachments	مرفقات بالايمل	strict laws	قوانين صارمة
empathic	مشارك للآخرين مشاعرهم	the father of the modern novel	رائد الرواية الحديثة
enforce the law	يُطبق أو ينفذ القانون	tolerant of/towards	متسامح تجاه
enter a competition	يدخل مسابقة	translate into	يُترجم إلي
establish himself as	يحقق لنفسه مكانة كـ	type something onto a computer	يكتب شيء علي الكمبيوتر
happy with	سعيد بـ	widen horizons	يوسع الآفاق

Definitions

attachments	-A feeling of love or strong connection to some one or something. -A computer file that is sent together with an email message. -An extra piece of equipment.	ملف يرسل بالايمل - جهاز اضافي
Collection	Group of objects of the same type that have been collected by one person in one place.	مجموعة
competition	a situation in which people or organisations compete with each other	منافسة / مسابقة
custom	something that people do in a society because it is traditional	عادة
develop	to make a new product or idea successful	يطور / ينمي
district	an area of a city or country	اقليم / مقاطعة
establish	to achieve or give someone a respected position in society or in an organisation	يحقق / ينجز
law	the system of rules that people in a country or place must obey	قانون
midday	Twelve o'clock in the middle of the day.	منتصف النهار
old-fashioned	not modern and not fashionable any more	قديم/ عفا عليه الزمن
pioneer	one of the first people to do something that other people will continue to develop	رائد
publisher	person or company that produces books, magazines, etc., and makes them available for people to buy	ناشر
routine (n)	the usual way in which you do things	روتين
style	a way of doing or making something that is typical of a particular person, group or period	نمط / اسلوب

Language Notes

- habit عادة شخص - Watching video clips is a bad habit.
 - custom عادة شعب - Colouring eggs on Sham El-Nesseem is an Ancient Egyptian custom.
 - traditions تقاليد - Some traditions are out of date. عفا عليها الزمن.
- award (مقابل عمل شئ بإجادة) - He won the school award last year.
 reward (مقابل سلوك حسن أو عمل جيد) أو تقديم خدمة للمجتمع يكافئ - مكافأة
 - My father gives us chocolate as a reward when we do well.
 present = gift هدية بدون مقابل - My uncle gave me a present on my birthday party
 a ward جناح - عنبر فى مستشفى - Take this patient to a ward three.
 Prize جائزة نقدية (أو رحلة مثلا) تمنح لشخص نجح في شئ - She won the third prize in the competition.
- biography سيرة ذاتية لشخص يكتبها شخص - I want to write a biography of my great grandfather.
 - autobiography سيرة ذاتية لشخص يكتبها الشخص - The leader will publish his autobiography soon
- win يفوز - يكسب (كأس - مباراة - انتخابات) - Egypt won the match against Australia.
 - beat يهزم - يتغلب على (شخص أو فريق) - Egypt could beat Israel.
 - gain يحصل على شئ معنى مفيد (خبرة - معرفة معلومات - شهرة) يكتسب
 - I gained a lot of information during the discussion.
- كما تشير إلى زيادة فى الوزن - السرعة - الكمية
 - People usually gain weight during holidays.
 - earn يكسب (قوت أو رزق) مقابل عمل - Most people don't earn enough money.
- routine روتين (عمل نفس الشئ في نفس الوقت كل يوم) - My daily routine has become more boring.
 - red tape تعقيدات حكومية (روتين حكومي) - I had a lot of red tape to get my passport.
- Retire (يتقاعد) يحال للمعاش - When an employee is 60, he retires and lives on his pension. معاش
 Resign يستقيل من العمل - The manager resigned as a result of the accident.
 Politician رجل السياسة - Yesterday's interview was a debate between two politicians.
 Diplomat دبلوماسي (في سفارة أو في وزارة الخارجية) - Ahmed works as a diplomat in the Ministry of Foreign Affairs.
- on board على متن (سفينة - طائرة) - I climbed on board of the ship.
 - broad عريض - Ali has broad shoulders.
 - abroad الخارج - My uncle travelled abroad.
- graduate from يتخرج من - He graduated from the Faculty of Medicine.
 a graduate of خريج - He is a graduate of the Faculty of Medicine.
 graduate with a degree in يتخرج بشهادة فى - He graduated with a degree in history.
- publish يعلن - ينشر (كتاب) -He works for a company that publishes reference books.
 spread ينتشر - ينشر - Terrorism spreads panic among all classes of society.
 prevail يسود - يعم - Justice will prevail over tyranny.
- disabled ذو إعاقة جسدية We take disabled children on trips at the weekends.
 retarded ذو إعاقة عقلية Retarded children go to special school where they get special care.
 backward متخلف عن النمو الطبيعي (شخص - دولة) - Backward children learn more slowly than others. - The UN helps backward countries.
- work عمل - مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد) I have got a lot of work to do. Mr Ahmed leaves work at two o'clock
 job وظيفة - مهنة (اسم يعد) -He has got a job as a teacher. I have got a lot of jobs to do.
 career مهنة الحياة العملية للفرد -He started his career five years ago.
 profession مهنة (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب) -Teaching is a profession.

الخبرة (ما يكتسبه الشخص من معرفة ومهارات من خلال عمل معين – لا تُجمع) experience

They offered me the job because I had a lot of experience.

مواقف أو تجارب أو خبرات في الحياة – تُجمع Experience(s)

I had some interesting experiences while I was travelling. (= things that happened to me)

تجربة علمية لإثبات صحة شيء ما أو التوصل لنتائج معينة experiment

Teachers usually carry out simple experiments in the laboratory.

لاحظ عدم جمع الكلمات الآتية إذا جاء قبلها عدد وبعدها اسم:

I usually have a ten-minute break for coffee at midday.

ولكننا نقول:

The trip took three days.

The meeting lasted for five hours.

في حالة وجود كلمة time بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم ('s) في حالة المفرد و (s') في حالة الجمع:

in a week's time

in two years' time

mend يقوم بإصلاح (شيء تالف أو لا) **The plumber came to mend the burst pipe.**

amend يقوم بإجراء تعديل أو تغيير في نص أو قانون **The constitution was amended some time ago.**

other than = except **The form cannot be signed by anyone other than you.**

بدلاً من - مفضلاً شيء على آخر rather than = in preference to / instead of

- I think I'd like to stay at home this evening rather than go out.

وإلا otherwise = except **- You'll have to go now, otherwise you'll miss your bus.**

Law (n.) قانون **-It is against the law not to wear a safety belt.**

lawful (adj.) شرعي - قانوني **-He is going to start his lawful job as a journalist.**

Lawyer (n.) محامي **-His first job was a lawyer.**

Customs (n.) عرف-عادات جماعية **-I am not familiar with the customs of the European society.**

traditions تقاليد أو فكر موروثة **- It is a tradition that players exchange T-shirts after the match.**

habit (n.) عادة فردية **-Smoking is a bad habit.**

- believe in (v.) يؤمن بـ **-We all believe in Allah.**

- believer (n) مؤمن - معتقد **-He was a very strong believer in the power of mind.**

-belief اعتقاد **-She married him in the belief that he would change.**

-district(n.) حي – منطقة **-Yehia Haqqi was born in 1905 in Sayyida Zeinab district of Cairo.**

-Distract (v.) يشوش انتباه **-She is distracting me. I'm trying to finish my essay.**

- Distort (v.) يشوه **-It is a bad recording –The microphone distorted our voices.**

Insist on +n. v.ing يصصر علي **-I have insisted on getting the first prize.**

Insist that + جملة يصصر علي **-Have you insisted that you are innocent?**

Persist in + v-ing يصصر علي **- He persisted in studying alone.**

Exercises

Respond the following situations:

8. A friend asks for your opinion about modern novels.
9. A friend asks you what you used to read when you were five.
10. Someone asks you what you think the best thing is about short stories. Give your opinion.
11. Someone asks you what you were doing at six o'clock yesterday evening,
12. You suggest going to the zoo.
13. You think Egypt has the best football team in Africa.
14. Your friend asks you what you think of Yehia Haqqi.
15. Your friend thinks English is easy. You agree.

- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1- A: I'd like an extension of stay, please. B: How long have you been here?
A: Six months. B: How long would you like to extend your stay? A: 3 months.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

- 2) A: I'd like to get a visa to England, please? B: How long would you like to stay there?
A: Six months.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

- 3- A: Good evening. I have a complaint. B: What is wrong?
A: My radio doesn't work. B: Don't worry; I'll repair it for you.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

- 4- A: How much is it? B: It's 600 pounds. A: ok. I will need a blue one.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

- 5- A: What is wrong with you? B: my tooth hurts.
A: open your mouth, please. Don't worry. I will pull it out.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

- 6- A: Why didn't you do your homework? B: sorry, sir. I was too tired to do it.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. My friend and I are going to enter an athletics
a-competition b- composition c- recognition d-champion
2. Professor Jones gave Ayman a camera and all its
a-attacks b- attachments c- mails d- letters
3. Leila sent an e-mail to Samira and an image.
a-attended b- attacked c- attracted d- attached
4. Al -Ahram Weekly, my article.
a-wrote b- translated c- published d- did
5. Midday is 12 o'clock in the day, but midnight is 12 o'clock at
a-night b- noon c- day d- knight
6. It is not , it is old-fashioned.
a- modern b- ancient c- dirty d- clean
7. To means to make a new product or idea successful.
a-divide b- develop c- retire d- recite
8. Al Sydia Zainab is a famous of Cairo.
a-restrict b- governorate c- system d- district
9. Naguib Mahfouz used simple in his novels.
a- style b- draft c- styles d- symbol
10. Hassna is a girl.
a- fashion b- fashioned c- fascism d- fashionable
11. Yehia Haqqi studied at university to be a lawyer.
a- low b- law c- medicine d- art
12. Haqqi worked as a in different countries.
a-ambassador b- diplomat c- writer d- translator
13. Yehia Haqqi wrote a of short stories.
a-group b- school c- pack d- collection
14. As well as two books, he wrote short stories.
a- write b- wrote c- writing d- writes
15. He is an expert Arab culture.
a- with b- to c- on d- by

16. His story, the post man , was into a film.
a- make b- made c - makes d- making
17. This shop sells goods at prices.
a- limited b- fix c - fixed d- fox
18. She is a graduate Oxford University.
a- in b- of c- from d- at
19. He is a publisher his work is tostories and novels.
a-write b- translate c- publish d- public
20. Al Gamalya is a famous of Cairo.
a- restrict b - governorate c- system d- district
21. I really enjoyed that book , it is written in a very simple -----
a-style b - road c- draft d- styles
22. My sister loves clothes and buys ----- dresses.
a- very old b- traditional c- fashionable d- old-fashioned
23. He won a prize for one of the ----- of his short stories.
a- pack b- school c- collect d- collection
24. He worked ----- for more than 20 years.
a- aboard b- above c- abroad d- ashore
25. He has a ----- routine in writing.
a-fixed b- fixing c- fax d- mix
26. As ----- as I am concerned , this is an interesting book.
a-long b- soon c- tall d- far
27. He cannot work because of his
a-ability b - facility c- flexibility d - disability
28. A is one of the first people to do something that others will continue.
a-biologist b - beginner c - pioneer d- bystander
29. All people must the law.
a-obey b- break c- destroy d - damage
30. Some people believe that on animals should be banned.
a-experiments b- experience c - experiences d- examples
31. There was nobody in the house Ali.
a-rather than b - other than c- otherwise d- other
32. I had several bad during my last trip.
a-experiences b- experience c- experiments d- extensions
33. I haven't had a steady since last March.
a-career b- job c- work d- profession
34. Which team do you?
a- export b- import c- support d- report
35. He is regarded as one of the of modern science.
a-heads b- bosses c- supervisors d- pioneers
36. The verb of the word " attachment " is
a-attend b- attack c- attract d- attach
37. Midday is 12 in the day, butis 12 at night.
a-mid year b- midnight c- mid evening d- good night
38. It is not modern , it is
a-stylish b- modern c- new-fashioned d - old-fashioned
39. The person who does something that others will continue is.....
a- pioneer b-engineer c-journalist d-chemist
40. They still wear clothes in siwa Oasis.
a- habits b- traditional c - customs d- tradition
41. We always take a three holiday at the end of the year.
a-months b- month's c - month d- months'
42. Ali isof Ain Shams University.
a-graduated b- graduate c- graduating d - a graduate
43. My father is a / an He is interested in politics.
a-engineer b- diplomat c- politician d- political

44. When I was seven, I wrote a poem which won 2nd prize in a national competition school children.
a- for b-to c- with d-by
45. When I was at university I short stories for student magazine.
a-write b-writes c-wrote d-was writing
46. While I was finishing one story, I of the next one.
a-thought b-thinking c-was thinking d- an thinking
47. I used to write very quickly- I finished most short stories two or three days.
a- in b- for c- since d-to
48. I haven't written any short stories over 20 years.
a- for b-since c-till d- in
49. I write from nine in the morning till three in the afternoon, with break for coffee at midday.
a-ten-minutes b- ten minutes' c- ten minute's d- ten minute
50. I'mI use a pencil and paper. I've tried using a computer, but it gave me a headache.
a-fashionable b- fashioned c-old-fashioned d-fashionably
51. When I'm happy what I've written, my secretary types it onto the computer.
a- to . b- for . c-by . d-with
55. My publisher that I send everything as an e-mail attachment.
a-persists b- assists c- insists d- resists
56. I spend two or three days the week's work until I'm completely happy with what I've written.
a- to check b- checking c-check d- to checking
57. Yehia Haqqi was born in the Sayyida Zeinab of Cairo.
a- distinction b- district c-distract d- distort
58. He graduated in and worked for a short time as a lawyer.
a- dew b- law c-low d- sew
59. In 1929, he began his as a diplomat
a- job b- profession c- career d- life
60. The time he spent in France, Italy, Turkey and Libya gave him
A- experiencing b- experienced c- Expert d - experiences
61. His first short story, published in 1925, him as one of the greatest short story writers of the Arab world.
a- set up b- establish c- established d- establishing
62. Haqqi wrote in a new way about Arab society and in the twentieth century.
a- costumes b- consumes c- customs d- castes
63. Haqqi was also interested in the Arabic language and he a new style of writing which is respected today.
a- develop b- developed c- developing d- promoting
64. As well as writing his own novels and stories, Haqqi also translated Russian, French, Italian and Turkishinto Arabic.
a- literature b- literary c- litter d- letter
65. He was a very strong in the power of education and supported many young Egyptian writers.
a- belief b-believe c- believer d-believers
66. Haqqi died in 1992, but is still thought of as theof the modern short story and the novel.
a- son b- father c- father-in-law d- Mum
67. Early black and white photos show people inclothes.
a- fashionable b- old-fashioned c- fashionably d- newly fashionable
68. The sun is at its strongest at
a- midnight b- day c- afternoon d- midday
69. I don't really have aduring the holidays.
a- red tape b- routine c- system d- rest
70. My friend and I are going to enter an athleticsWe all hope to win something.
a- game b- tour c- course d- competition
71. Yehia Haqqi came from a poorof Cairo.
a- distract b- district c- distort d- distinct
72. My brother wants to be a lawyer when he graduates, so he is studyingat university.
a- law b- low c- dew d- lewd

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1- A publicizer is someone who produces books, newspapers ,etc
- 2- Before he left the country, he has paid all his debts.
- 3- Haqqi was born in 1905 in the Sayyida Zeinab distract of Cairo.

- 4- He broadened the ship to Greece.
- 5- He developed a new style of writing.
- 6- He graduated from law.
- 7- He is a graduate in Assuit University.
- 8- He is going to enter a reading commission and he is hoping to win it.
- 9- He spent a three days holiday in Acapulco.
- 10- He wanted to help the poor and the disability.
- 11- He worked aboard for more than 20 years.
- 12- He writes by a very simple style.
- 13- He wrote two collisions of short stories.
- 14- His novels were made of films.
- 15- His training as a law affected the way he wrote his novels.
- 16- I have a collocation of English books.
- 17- I have insisted in getting the first prize.
- 18- It is very hard for me to be used to the Europeans consumes.
- 19- She doesn't receive the prize yet.
- 20- She sent me her photograph as an e-mail detachment.
- 21- The guide offered tourists information on local customary.
- 22- This price reduction is due to complexion among suppliers.
- 23- While he is being in London, he went shopping.
- 24- Yehia Haqqi developed a new steel of writing which is respected today.
- 25- Yehia Haqqi is a writer of children's infection.
- 26- Yehia Haqqi is still thought of as the mother of the modern short story and the novel in Egypt.
- 27- Yehia Haqqi was a strong belief in the power of education.
- 28- Yehia Haqqi was interested in the Arabic language and he developed a new steel of writing.
- 29- Yehia Haqqi was one of the pioneers of modern Egyptian literary.
- 30- Yehia Haqqi worked like a diplomat.

-Translate into Arabic:

Sports and games play an important role in building up the body and the character. Through sports, young people find an outlet to their energies. So, the government spares no effort to encourage sports.

As well as writing his own novels and stories, Haqqi also translated Russian, French, Italian and Turkish literature into Arabic. He was a very strong believer in the power of education and supported many young Egyptian writers. He died in 1992, but is still thought of as the father of the modern short story and the novel in Egypt.

Some Egyptian writers have written books and articles advocating the rights of women. They have called for women's equality with men. Now women have the same rights as men and even hold important positions in the society.

Translate into English:

1- يجب علي الوالدين توجيه ورعاية أبنائهم ليواصلوا رحلة الحياة بأمان.

2- ندرة المياه قد تكون سببا في اندلاع الحروب بين الدول في المستقبل .

3- تفخر مصر بكتابها العظماء امثال نجيب محفوظ الحائز علي جائزة نوبل في الادب.

4- بساطة الاسلوب و سهولته اهم ما ميز يحي حقي.

5 - كانت عائشة عبد الرحمن (بنت الشاطئ) تكتب باسم مستعار بسبب التقاليد في المجتمع.

6 - السيرة الذاتية الشخصية يكتبها الشخص بنفسه

Grammar

The present perfect tense

Form

Subj. الفاعل + have/has + P.P.

– تستخدم has مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He/she/it):

-I have tidied my bedroom.

–Ali (He) has played tennis for an hour.

Negation

Subject + hasn't / haven't + p.p.+.....

-They haven't watched the match yet.

-The student hasn't done his homework yet.

Yes / No Q.

Have /Has + Subj. الفاعل + + P.P. ?

- Have you tidied your room?

- Yes, I have (tidied my room).

- Has the student done his homework?

- No, he hasn't (done his homework yet).

Wh-' Q.

Q.W. +have/has+ subject+ P.P.....?

- Where have you played the match?

-How long have you stayed here?

Passive

Obj المفعول + have / has+ been + p.p.

- I have tidied my bedroom.

- My room has been tidied (by me).

-Ali (He) has played tennis for an hour.

- Tennis has been played for an hour.

Uses الاستخدامات

1- يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وأثره مازال موجود .

-She has cleaned the kitchen. (The kitchen is clean now)

- He has broken his leg. (He can't walk easily)

2- حدث انتهى في وقت غير محدد في الماضي :

- She has polished her shoes.

- He has fed the sheep.

- لكن عند تحديد وقت الحدث نستخدم الماضي البسيط:

-She cleaned the kitchen yesterday.

- He fed the sheep in the afternoon.

3- يدل المضارع التام علي حدث متكرر (أي أن ذلك الحدث قابل للحدث مرة أخرى) :

-Abu Terika has scored a hundred goals.

(He can score more)

- لكن إذا استخدمنا الماضي البسيط مع حدث متكرر فمعني ذلك أن الحدث توقف:.

- He wrote 46 novels.

(He stopped writing)

4- يعبر المضارع التام عن أحداث تمت حديثا.

- I've just finished reading this book.

5- يعبر المضارع التام عن أحداث لم تحدث بعد.

- She's never played tennis.

6- يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن خبرات سابقة دون تحديد وقت حدوثها .

- Have you ever met anyone famous?

- She's never met anyone famous yet, but she hopes to one day.

7- نستخدم (has /have been to) بمعنى ذهب لمكان وعاد أما (has /have gone to) ذهب لمكان ومازال هناك (لم يعد)

- My sister has gone to school. (She is still at school now.)

- My sister has been to the cinema. (She isn't there now).

- يستخدم المضارع التام مع الكلمات الآتية:

Just/already/yet/so far/ever/never/lately/recently/since/for / so far /up till now

- He has typed five letters so far.

- كما يستخدم المضارع التام إذا وجدنا الجملة بما يلي :

- It's/This is the first (second...) time...

- It's the first time I have been to this place.

- It's (This) is the only...

- This is the only play I have seen.

- In the last few years/months.....
- **Egypt has changed a lot in the last few years.**
- In recent years
- **It has not rained in the Western Desert in recent years.**
- Over the ages / over the years....
- **The earth has become more crowded over the ages.**

ملاحظات:

- 1 - لاحظ أن ever/never/just/ already بين have/has والتصريف الثالث PP. :
- I have just written the letter.
- He has never done karate.
- 2 - يأتي بعد since زمن يحدد بداية الحدث أما for يأتي بعدها مدة هذا الحدث.

Since		For	
Since	ساعة 12 o'clock	For	a moment
	اسم شهر October		two seconds / three minutes
	اسم يوم Friday		four hours / five days
	اسم فصل summer		six nights / seven weeks
	تاريخ يوم 7th August		eight months/ one season
	تاريخ سنة 2000		nine years
	جملة ماضي بسيط I arrived Then /yesterday last		ages a long time the last

- We have owned this house since 1988
- He has known the same friends for three years.
- كما يأتي بعد since أيضا اسم يدل على وقت معلوم مثل :
- lunch / lunchtime / his childhood / her wedding / their arrival.....
- She has stayed her since her marriage.
- He has known the same friends since his childhood.
- 3 - الجملة التي تأتي بعد since تكون ماضي بسيط:
- I haven't seen him since he left for Cairo.

4- تستخدم (ever) غالبا في السؤال بينما تستخدم (never) للنفي القاطع:

- Have you ever met the manager in person?
- I have never seen such a strange person.
- نستخدم ever في الجمل التي تبدأ بـ No
- Nothing like this has ever happened to us.
- No student has ever answered this question.
- يمكن استخدام ever في الجمل التي تتضمن صيغة تفضيل:

→ + subject+ have/has+ ever +P.P. + صفة تفضيل

- This is the strangest match I have ever watched.
- The most exciting novel I have ever seen was "Oliver Twist".
- لاحظ أنه عند استخدام never بدلا من ever نستخدم such (a/an) adj. + n.
- This is the worst luck I have ever had. = I have never had such bad luck.
- في حالة استخدام ever في جملة بها never / before نبدأ بـ This is the first time
- I have never seen a lion before. = - This is the first time I have ever seen a lion.

5 - تستخدم yet في نهاية الأسئلة و الجمل المنفية.

- Has he arrived yet?
- They haven't eaten yet.
- تستخدم yet في نفي جملة بها just / already
- He has just arrived.
- He hasn't arrived yet.
- في حالة استخدام yet بدلا من still نستخدم مضارع تام منفي بدلا من المضارع المستمر:
- He is still writing the report.
- = - He hasn't finished writing the report

6 - نستخدم already في الأسئلة و الجمل المثبتة.

- Have you already written to John?
- He has already had dinner.
- عند استخدام before now مكان already يحول زمن الجملة للماضي البسيط
- He has already finished.
- = - He finished before now.

7 - عند استخدام since / for بدلا من the last time / last / when / ago نحول الماضي البسيط إلى مضارع تام منفي.

- I last ate fish when I was in Alex.
- = - I haven't eaten fish since I was in Alex.

8 - إذا كانت الجملة مضارع تام منفى و بدأنا بـ It's نستخدم التركيب التالي

→ It's + ماضى بسيط مثبت + last + فاعل + since + مدة زمنية + It's

- I haven't seen him for ages. = - It's ages since I last saw him.

9- نستخدم (just) غالبا في الاثبات و السؤال:

-What has he just said ? -She has just turned on the computer.

- إذا استخدمنا just بدلا من a moment ago / a short time ago نحول الماضى البسيط إلى مضارع تام مثبت.

- The train left a moment ago. = - The train has just left.

10- عند استخدام ago بدلا من since / for نحول المضارع التام المثبت إلى

began / started + to + inf.

- It has rained for two hours. = - It began to rain two hours ago.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام ago مع since :

- I haven't seen him since three years ago.

11 - نستخدم كل من (recently/lately) بنفس الطريقة في السؤال :

-Has Barakat scored goals lately/recently?

- يفضل استخدام (recently) في الاثبات و (lately) في النفي :

-She has moved to a new house recently. -He hasn't phoned me lately.

→ The last time+جملة ماضى بسيط+was in/ when

→ =فاعل+ last..... in/when.....

→ = فاعل+ haven't/hasn't + P.P. since.....

-The last time I saw Ali was in 2009. =I last saw Ali in 2009. =I haven't played football since 2009.

- إذا كان التحويل من (for) إلى (since) صعب (أي أنه لو كانت المدة لا يمكن تحويلها إلى تاريخ) نستخدم التركيبة نستخدم الطريقة التالية:

It (is - was - has been) ماضى بسيط since مدة

- He hasn't travelled for ages. (since) - It is ages since he travelled.

He hasn't studied for along time. (since) - It is along time since he studied.

Conjugation of Verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular Verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

1- بصفة عامة يتم تصريف الأفعال المنتظمة بإضافة (ed) لنهاية مصدر الفعل:

-visit/ visited - watch/watched - land / landed

2- إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) لا ينطق يضاف له حرف (d) فقط :

-like /liked - change / changed - bake / baked

3- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد و كان الفعل يتكون من مقطع واحد أو أكثر بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير قويا في النطق (stressed) فإنه يضاف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ed) :

- stop / stopped - travel / travelled - ban / banned

4 - إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (y) فإنه يتحول إلى (ie) قبل إضافة (ed):

- study / studied - dry / dried - try / tried

5- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل إضافة (ed):

- panic → panicked - picnic → picnicked

Irregular Verbs الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

- الأفعال الغير منتظمة لا توجد لها قواعد للتصريف و يجب ان تحفظ ، و يمكن تقسيمها الي ثلاثة انواع :

-أفعال تصريفاتها الثلاثة واحدة مثل :

infinitive	Past simple	Past Participle (P.P.)
put	put	put
shut	shut	shut
hit	hit	hit
let	let	let

-أفعال ذات تغير واحد مثل :

buy	bought	bought
think	thought	thought
build	built	built
sleep	slept	slept
hear	heard	heard

-أفعال تصريفاتها الثلاثة مختلفة مثل :

drink	drank	drunk
swim	swam	swum
write	wrote	written
speak	spoke	spoken

The past simple tense

Form Subj. الفاعل + S.C. التصريف الثاني للفعل

-He visited his friends. -They watched a film.

Negation Subject + didn't + inf.....

-They didn't watch the match yesterday. -The student didn't do his homework.

Yes / No Q. Did + Subj. الفاعل + + inf. ?

- Did you tidy your room? - Yes, I did. - Yes, I tidied my room.
- Did the student do his homework? - No, he didn't (do his homework).

Wh-' Q. Q.W. اداة استفهام + did / didn't+ subject+ inf.....?

- Where did you watch the match? -Why didn't you stay at a hotel?

Passive Obj المفعول + was / were + p.p.

-They watched a film. - A film was watched (by them).

الاستخدامات Uses

- 1 - يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث انتهى في الماضي
-I studied French when I was in secondary school.
- 2- يعبر عن عادة في الماضي
-Aya used to play tennis, when she was young.
- 3 - وصف أحداث في سرد قصة
-Ali found a bag ,then he went to the police station.
- 4 - في الحالة الثانية من اسلوب الشرط (If)
-If he helped us, we would win.
- 5 - يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ويعتبر ماضي غير حقيقي يعبر عن المفترض و ليس الواقع :

1 - I wish +subj. ماضى بسيط + فاعل

- I wish mum wasn't ill. - I wish the Egyptian team played well.

2-It's time +subj. ماضى بسيط + فاعل

-It's time he paid the bill. - It is time father arrived.

2-I 'd rather +subj. ماضى بسيط + فاعل

-I would rather she helped him. - I'd rather Ali didn't come.

Yesterday - ago - last - once - in the pastetc.

- Last week, I went to Alexandria. - Two months ago, we flew to London.

5-The Past Continuous Tense

- تتكون جملة الماضي المستمر المبني للمعلوم من :

Form	Subj. فاعل + was / were + V. ing.....
Negative	- Ali (he) was reading a story. - Aya and Heba (They) were cooking lunch. Subj. فاعل + was not (wasn't) / were not (weren't) + V. ing .
Yes / No Q.	- Ali (he) was not (wasn't) reading a story. - I was not (wasn't) running fast. - Aya and Heba (They) were not (weren't) cooking lunch. Was / Were + Subj. فاعل + V. ing..... ? - Was Ali (he) reading a story? - Yes, he was (reading a story). - Were you running fast? - No, I was not. = No, I was not running fast.
Wh-' Q	Q.W. أداة استفهام + was / were + Subj. فاعل + V. ing.... ? - What was Ali doing (reading)? - Who was running fast?
Passive	Obj المفعول + was / were + being + p.p. - A story was being read by Ali.

الاستخدامات Uses

- للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمر أثناء وقت معين في الماضي :

-Between six and half past six this morning, I was having breakfast.

- للتعبير عن حدث مستمر في الماضي قطعه حدث آخر :

-I was having a shower when the phone rang.

- يأتي في سياق قصة أو موقف في الماضي :

-I was studying Chemistry when I met Jane.

-He was doing research when they arrested him.

- يستخدم الماضي المستمر غالبا مع كلمات مثل (While / when / As / Just as) للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي قطعه حدث آخر :

(While / when / As / Just as) + past con. + , + past simple

-I was having a shower when the phone rang.

- While she was walking in the street, she met one of her old friends.

- It started to rain as we were doing the homework.

- لاحظ أن when يمكن أن يأتي بعدها ماضي بسيط :

-We were doing the homework when it started to rain.

- يمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع when في الماضي البسيط إذا كانا متتابعين ولم يقطع احدهما الآخر :

-When he arrived, he found the door locked.

- يمكن استخدام On بدلا من when و يأتي بعدها V. ing :

= On arriving, he found the door locked.

- يستخدم الماضي المستمر غالبا مع كلمات مثل (While / when / As / Just as) للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي :

(While / when / As / Just as) + past con. + , + past con.

-While I was studying, my father was reading.

- إذا لم يأتي بعد while فاعل يأتي بعدها (v. ing)

-While playing, I fell down.

- يمكن استخدام during بدلا من while و يأتي بعدها noun / V. ing :

-While he was playing the game, he got hurt.

- During the game, he got hurt. = - He got hurt during the game.

- الفعل بعد and يأخذ نفس شكل الفعل الذي يسبقها :

-He was writing a letter and listening to some music.

- لاحظ عدم استخدام (be) في الماضي المستمر :

- While I was at school, I felt a headache.

The Past Perfect Tense

Form

Subj. **الفاعل** + had + P.P.

- I had studied English before I travelled to New York.

Negation

Subject + hadn't + p.p. +

- They hadn't watched the match before they went shopping.

Yes / No Q.

Had + Subj. **الفاعل** + P.P. ?

- Had Soha tidied her room by the time she went to school?

- Yes, she had.

- No, she hadn't.

'Wh-' Q.

Q.W. **اداة استفهام** + had + subject + P.P. ?

- What had happened before you phoned the police?

Passive

Obj **المفعول** + had + been + p.p.

English had been studied by me before I travelled to New York.

الاستخدامات

- يعبر الماضي التام عن حدث وقع قبل حدث آخر في الماضي:

- I had never seen such a beautiful beach before I went to Hurghada.

- I did not have any money because I had lost my wallet.

- يعبر الماضي التام عن حدث وقع قبل وقت معين في الماضي:

- Rania had never been to the theatre before last night.

- I had passed the exam before July.

- كما يستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عما قاله الشخص أو اعتقده:

- He told me that they had already paid the bill.

- He said that he believed that Ali had moved to Luxor.

- I thought that we had already decided on a name for the baby.

- يوضع الظرف أو الحال (adverb) بعد (had) في الجملة الخبرية و بعد الفاعل في الاستفهام:

- I had previously studied English before I travelled to New York.

- Had Soha really tidied her room by the time she went to school?

- He had already started to make breakfast before his wife woke up.

ملاحظات عامة علي الماضي التام

After/as soon as/before/by the time/when/till/until

- After + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) = After + v.ing..... + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

= Having + p.p. + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

- After she had done the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home.

- After doing the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home.

- Having done the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home.

- as soon as + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) = Immediately after (on) + v.ing... + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

= Having + p.p. + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

- He told me as soon as he had heard the news. - He told me immediately after hearing the news.

- Having heard the news, he told me.

- After/as soon as + ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

- After I finished my lunch, I began to revise my lessons.

- My mum asked me to answer the phone as soon as it rang.

- Before/by the time + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

- Before she phoned, she had had tried to send an e-mail.

- By the time I reached the station, the train had left.

Before + v.ing + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

- Before phoning, she had had tried to send an e-mail.

- Before/by the time + ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

- By the time I arrived home, my sister finished the cooking.

- I put my bag on the floor before I opened the door.

- When + ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط	- When I arrived at the station, the train had left.
- When + ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام	- When I had arrived at the station, the train left.
= ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام + The moment	- The moment I had arrived at the station, the train left.
= On + n. اسم / v.ing + ماضي بسيط	- On my arrival at the station, the train left.
- When + ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط	-When I arrived, the train left.

→ ماضي تام (حدث أول) + till/until + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) غالباً منفى

-I didn't go to school till/until I had had my breakfast.

-They didn't start the game until I had arrived.

→ ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) غالباً منفى + till - until → (n. اسم) / (v. ing)

-I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. -They didn't start the game until my arrival.

لاحظ أيضاً استخدام الماضي التام و الماضي البسيط بالطرق التالية:

- It was only when + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) + (that / ,) + ماضي تام (حدث أول).

= It wasn't until + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) + (that / ,) + ماضي تام (حدث أول) .

- It was only when I had switched on the light that he entered the room.

=It wasn't until I had switched on the light that he entered the room.

– يأتي الماضي التام والماضي البسيط مع التعبيرات الآتية ومعناها (لم يكـحتى.....)

- Subj. + had +no sooner+ p.p. Than+ ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان).

= Subj. + had +hardly+ p.p. when + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان).

= Subj. + had + scarcely+ p.p. when + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان).

- She had hardly left when her friends arrived.

- She had no sooner left than her friends arrived.

-She had scarcely left when her friends arrived.

-لاحظ عندما تأتي هذه الروابط في أول الجملة:

- No sooner had + فاعل + p.p.....than + فاعل + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) .

= Hardly had + فاعل + p.p.....when + فاعل + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) .

= Scarcely had+ فاعل + p.p.....when + فاعل + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) .

- No sooner had she left than her friends arrived.

- Hardly had she left when her friends arrived.

- Scarcely had she left when her friends arrived.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer :

- Istories for as long as can remember .
a- was writing b- am writing c- have written d- written
- When I was seven, I a poem which won a prize.
a- is writing b- wrote c- have written d- written
- While I was finishing one story, Iof the next one.
a- thinking b- was thinking c- thought d- have thought
- I used tovery quickly.
a- be written b- write c- writing d- be writing
- As soon as Ia story, I sent it to the magazine editor.
a-'d finished b- have finished c- finished d- finish
- My last novelsix times.
a- was changed b- changed c- changing d- changes
- This bookby a famous writer.
a- was written b- written c- wrote d- was writing
- I reading novels since I was a young child.
a- enjoy b- enjoyed c- have enjoyed d- had enjoyed
- Yesterday, my sister gave, me a book shereading the day before.
a- finished b- has finished c- had finished d- finishes
- Itwhile I was reading the newspaper..
a- delivered b- delivers c- was delivered d- was being delivered
- I..... at least one book a week, but now I don't read so many..
a- have read b- didn't read c- was reading d- read
- Ifootball for three years.

13. I a car accident while coming to school.
a- play b- have played c- was playing d- had played
14. I at six o'clock yesterday evening.
a- was seeing b- saw c- see d- have seen
15. I the newspaper everyday .Now I don't have the time.
a- slept b- was sleeping c- have slept d- sleep
16. As soon as we arrived at school , the first lesson
a- used to read b- was reading c- had read d- have read
17. I the film before I read the book.
a- had begun b- began c- begins d- has begun
18. What when I called you? You seemed very busy.
a- already saw b- have already seen c- had already seen d- has already seen
19. I my computer for three years now.
a- did you do b- were you doing c- are you doing d- have you been doing
20. While she her homework, she was listening to music.
a- have been having b- was having c- had d- have had
21. He the tree when he suddenly fell down.
a- were doing b- was doing c- did d- doing
22. They for England an hour ago.
a- climbed b- climbs c- was climbing d- will climb
23. On the film, Ali came.
a- leave b- left c- were leaving d- will leave
24. They saw the fighting people while home.
a- watch b- watches c- watched d- watching
25. They saw the fighting people while home.
a- were driving b- drove c- driving d- drive
26. How did he to Aswan yesterday?
a- go b- went c- going d- goes
27. My sister the room while I was making tea.
a- cleaned b- was cleaning c- is cleaning d- cleans
28. The first map by El_idrissi .
a- was drawn b- drew c- is drawn d- draws
29. She cut herself while
a- cook b- cooked c- was cooking d- cooking
30. What were you doing when I you last night.
a- phoned b- was phoning c- had phoned d- would phone
31. He the guitar, when I saw him.
a- play b- played c- was playing d- had played.
32. They saw the accident while home.
a- were driving b- drove c- driving d- drive
33. They out of the bank when the policeman caught them.
a- ran b- were running c- had run d- are running
34. The Pyramids were by the ancient Egyptians.
a- building b- built c- builds d- build
35. While she was cooking , her sister homework.
a- was doing b- did c- does d- had done
36. As he was carrying the vase, he it on the floor.
a- drops b- dropped c- had dropped d- was dropping
37. They since last year.
a- hadn't met b- haven't met c- didn't meet d- won't me
38. We some difficulty recently with Maths.
a- had b- have had c- are having d- were having
39. I haven't written a letter since I to England.
a- travelled b- will travel c- have travelled d- travel
40. Shakespeare 37 plays.
a- has written b- wrote c- had written d- was written
41. The e-mails by Ayman.
a- have written b- has written c- have been written d- has been written
42. Don't tell him. He has known.
a- already b- yet c- since d- recent
43. He was born 2006.
a- in b- since c- at d- for
44. My brother to Paris, he came back last week.
a- is going b- will go c- has gone d- has been
45. They haven't visited us the last two years.
a- since b- for c- recently d- already

45. He hasn't studied English-----
a – recently b-lately c-ago d-just
46. Since I graduated, I -----in this company.
a – worked b-had worked c-have been working d-will work
47. He -----the bike for an hour but he hasn't finished yet.
a - has been mending b-has mended c-will mend d-mended
48. I prefer swimming-----skating.
a – on b –to c-than d-over
49. last-----my friend was last week.
a – see b-saw c-has seen d-have seen
50. It is ages since we-----some good news.
a - have heard b-had heard c-heard d-was hearing
51. Have you done your homework-----? That is too fast.
a – yet b-so far c-since d-already
52. -----I was out shopping, I saw three of my friends.
a – Because b –While c-If d-Although
53. At 7.15 yesterday I (will have – have had – am having – was having) dinner with my family.
54. (Because – While – If – Although) I was out shopping, I saw three of my friends from school.
55. By the time she reached the harbour الميناء, the ferry مراكب (had left – leaves – would leave – was left).
56. For more information about our product, you can visit our (website -web cam – web design – spider's web) .
57. Have you ever (meet – met – meeting – meets) a famous person?
58. I (was drawing - am drawing – am drawn – has drawn) a picture right now.
59. I (don't see – am seeing – haven't seen – has seen) him for two years.
60. I (sent – have sent – had sent – will send) you an e-mail earlier this morning.
61. I (never be – have never been – am never – was never) to Acapulco before.
62. I (don't finish – have to finish – haven't finished – didn't finish) my project yet.
63. I paid the money into my (accounting – accountant – count – account) this morning.
64. I'm sure your sister will love the present you (have bought – buy – buying – may have bought) her.
65. In June, 2008, I (would visit – visited – had visited – was visited) my uncle in Canberra.
66. It (is – was – had been – has been) so cold since yesterday.
67. It is easy to change foreign (currency – currents – curtains – courts) into Egyptian money.
68. I've just (been seen – being seen – saw – seen) my friend Peter. He is going shopping.
69. John (paints – will paint -is painting – has painted) the garage at the moment.
70. Last night, while I (surf – was surfing – was being surfed – am surfing) the internet, 11- I found the camera was much cheaper to buy online.
71. Look at this camera I (was buying – buy – bought – have bought) for my sister yesterday.
72. Many people order goods online and have them (delayed – delighted – devoted– delivered) to their homes.

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. A lot of people are thinking that life will be better in the future.
2. Alaa has been to France, he is still there.
3. Alexandria was the last place I was spending a holiday.
4. By the time my father was 18, he has been at work for two years.
5. Gamal Abd El Nasr has built the High Dam.
6. Have you ever play computer games.
7. He didn't helped me last week.
8. He has been watching the film since the last hour.
9. He has gone to Italy. Now he is in Cairo.
10. He hasn't written letters recently.
11. He leaves school and worked in a bookshop.
12. He preferred read books to selling them.
13. He realized that he has been robbed of his money.
14. He thinks he wanted to be a scientist .
15. He would give me back my money a few hours ago.
16. I am understanding this math problem very well.
17. I didn't eat hamburger since last October.
18. I don't have any cash on me, so could I pay by click?
19. I don't speak to him since Christmas.
20. I had just seen my friend Mona.

21. I have attended this school for five years.
22. I have studied at 4 o'clock yesterday.
23. I will see a good film recently.
24. In 1999, I have visited my uncle in Alexandria.
25. In the past, people thought that the earth has been flat.
26. It's time he comes to school
27. Just walking to school, I saw an accident
28. My parents use to live in a small flat in the city centre.
29. My sister is really happy. She is just winning the first prize.
30. My sister wants to open a bank deposit.
31. Our block built five years ago.
32. Our school was opening exactly 25 years ago today.
33. She has been mopping تمسح the floor when she heard the bad news on the radio.
34. She is having a new car .
35. She played the piano since the age of six and she still plays every day.
36. She slipped on a banana skin and breaks her leg.
37. The currency of The USA is the Euro.
38. There has been a real grow in the number of people .
39. They have been reading six books.
40. Twenty million people saw the new film already.
41. We have been taken exams before the holiday began.
42. What were you doing when I am calling you?
43. When my father come home, I was finishing my homework.
44. While was returning home, he saw the accident.
45. Yesterday evening we revised for our English test when all the lights went out.

Test 4

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to the following situations:

- 1.A friend asks you what you used to read when you were five .
- 2.Someone asks you what you think the best thing is about short stories.
- 3.Someone asks you what you were doing at six o'clock yesterday evening.
- 4.Your friend asks for your opinion about modern novels.

2- Mention the place , 2 - Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1. A: Smoking is very dangerous for your health. B : I have tried to stop it, but I couldn't.
A: if you go on smoking, you will be seriously ill.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B..... - Function:

2. A : I have come to report a theft of my briefcase.
B : Don't worry. we will do our best to find it.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B..... - Function:

B- Vocabulary and structure

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1.My friend and I are going to enter athletics we hope to win.
a – competition b – composition c – recognition d cognition
- 2.I sent an e-mail with two They were the photos of my son.
a – attacks b – attachments c – contacts d – e-mails
- 3.The verb of the word " attachment " is
a – attend b – attack c – attracts d – attach
- 4.To means to make a new product or idea successful.
a – develop b – divide c – revolve d – involve
5. One of the first people to do something that others will continue is
a – pioneer b – engineer c – journalist d – chemist

6. Haqqi word as a in different countries.
a – ambassador b – diplomat c – writer d – translator
7. He is an expert Arab culture.
a – with b – on c – that d – by
8. As as I am concerned, this is an interesting book.
a – long b – soon c – tall d – far
9. When I was seven, I a poem which won a prize.
a- is writing b- wrote c- have written d- written
10. While I was finishing one story, I of the next one.
a- thinking c- thought
b- was thinking d- have thought
11. I used to very quickly.
a- be written b- write c- writing d- be writing
12. As soon as I a story, I sent it to the magazine editor.
a- 'd finished b- have finished c- finished d- finish
13. My last novel six times.
a- was changed b- changed c- changing d- changes
14. I the film before I read the book.
a- already saw b- have already seen c- had already seen d- has already seen
15. What when I called you? You seemed very busy.
a- did you do b- were you doing c- are you doing d- have you been doing
16. I my computer for three years now.
a- have been having b- was having c- had d- have had

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. He collects old-fashion bicycles.
2. He is studying medicine. He is going to be a lawyer.
3. The book is written two years ago.
4. The new factory was opening by the president last week.
5. They have lived here since two years.
6. They were born in a poor distract of Alex.

C- Reading

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions

The Taj Mahal, which is outside the city of Agra in India, was built by the Emperor Shah Jahan. It is a tomb for his favourite wife, Mumtaz Mahal. Her body is buried under the building. The Taj Mahal was started in 1633 and took 22 years to build. Today, it is one of the most popular buildings in the world for tourists.

The Taj Mahal is built of white stone which is covered with beautiful designs. The highest part of the roof of the Taj Mahal is shaped like an onion. In front of the building is a lake. At night! in the light of the moon, you can see the Taj Mahal in this lake - it is a beautiful sight.

a) Give short answers to the following questions:

- 1) Who was Mumtaz Mahal?
- 2) In what year did they finish building the Taj Mahal?
- 3) Describe the Taj Mahal.

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4) Why was the Taj Mahal built?
a) in memory of Shah Jahan. b) to attract tourists
c) in memory of Shah Jahan's wife d) as a castle.
- 5) Why can visitors sometimes see the Taj Mahal in the lake?
a) The water is like a mirror b) The building is in the middle of a lake.
c) The Taj Mahal is on an island. d) The city is often flooded

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People suddenly started seeing the strange plants in their gardens last spring. No one had ever seen anything like them before, and no one knew where they had come from: At first some people pulled them out and burned them because they thought they looked horrible

But most people left them where they were, without touching them. The next summer, people enjoyed the big purple-coloured flowers that the plants produced.

It was not until August that people read in their newspapers the first reports that the plants could walk and run and even catch people and kill them. There is never much interesting news in August

so people thought that journalists had made up these stories about waling plants to sell a few more newspapers and make money. Then in September, there was terrible news.....

a) Give short answers to the following questions:

- 1 Why did some people destroy the plants?
- 2 How were the plants dangerous to people?
- 3 What did people think when they read the newspaper stories for the first time?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4) Where is this text from?
 - a- a newspaper
 - b- a science fiction story
 - c- a detective story
 - d- a book on gardening
- 5) What does them refer to in the plants could walk and run and even catch people and kill them?
 - a- the plants
 - b- the journalists
 - c- the newspapers
 - d- the people

D- The Novel

7. Answer the following questions :

- 1- Is Rassendyll also poisoned? Why isn't he as sick as the King?
- 2- Rassendyll tells himself that he has no choice but to pretend to be the King. Do you think he has a choice? Is there something else they can do?
- 3- How and when will they get the King to Strelsau?
- 4- Who overhears their plan? What do they do with the person?

B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions:

"God save both Kings."

1. Who said this and where was he?
2. What did the people say just before this?
3. Why does the speaker say "both Kings"? Who is he talking about?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1- Marshal Strakencz realises that Rassendyll is not the King.
- 2- Antoinette de Mauban calls out, "That is not the real King!"

E - Writing

8. Write a paragraph about 100 words about

How reading literature improves your education.

F- Translation

9. a) Translate into Arabic :

Many studies have shown that it is better to wear your seat belt when you are driving a car .Seat belts greatly reduce the risk of death or injury in accidents .This fact is widely recognized and many governments have passed laws requiring seatbelts use .

b) Translate into English :

1- تنشأ المكتبات العامة في كل مكان لتشجيع أفراد الأسرة علي القراءة.

.....

2- تسعى الدول المحبة للسلام و علي رأسها مصر لاخلاء العالم من اسلحة المار الشامل.

.....

Encourage	يشجع	Peace loving nations	دول محبة للسلام
Headed by	يرأسها	Public libraries	كتبات عامة
intention	نية	Risk	مخاطرة
Massive destruction weapons	اسلحة دمار شامل	seatbelts	احزمة الامان

Unit 5 - *Agatha Christie*

actor	ممثل	headquarters	مركز القيادة	qualities	صفات/سمات
actress	ممثلة	identify	يتعرف على / يحدد	queen	ملكة
aged 85	بالغ من العمر 85	identity	هوية شخص	radio	اللاسلكي
amnesia	فقدان الذاكرة	identity card	بطاقة	radio signals	إشارات لا سلكية
archaeologist	عالم آثار	imminent danger	خطر وشيك الحدوث	recommendation	توصية
arrest = catch	يقبض على	include	يشمل / يتضمن	secret agent	عميل سري
bang	يضرب بقوة	innocence	برائه	set free	يطلق سراح
be based on	قائم / مؤسس على	innocent	برئ	shy	خجول بطبعه
betray his home	يخون وطنه	invade	يغزو	signals	إشارات
busy with	مشغول بـ	invasion	غزو	solution to	حل
captured	يأسر	leader	قائد	solve	يحل
city centre	وسط البلد / مركز المدينة	looming disaster	كارثة وشيكة الوقوع	spy – spy on	جاسوس / يتجسس
close to	قريب من	medical condition	حاله طبية	substance	مادة
commit / do a crime	يرتكب جريمة	military action	عمل عسكري	sure about	متأكد من
crime fiction	قصص الجرائم	military force	قوة عسكرية	suspect	يشك في - المشتبه به
cultural identity	الهوية الثقافية	mouse / mice	فأر / فئران	take control	يسيطر -
deeply affected	يتأثر بعمق	mousetrap	مصيدة فئران	take place	يحدث
Deliberate killing	قتل متعمد	murder	جريمة قتل / يقتل	take responsibility	يتحمل
dig up	يحفر	murderer	قاتل	the free market	السوق الحر
embarrassed about	محرج	national duty	واجب وطني	the underground	المترو
enclose	يحيط بـ / يرفق بـ	on the coast of	على ساحل	the orient train	قطار الشرق
enemy	عدو	on the way back	في طريقه العودة	theatre plays	مسرحيات
enmity	عداوة	overlook	يطل على	transmit message to	يبيت رسالة لـ
especially	وخاصة	performed	يجري / يؤدي	transmitter	جهاز إرسال
excavate	يحفر - ينقب	plan for	يخطط من أجل	travel agent	مندوب السفر
excavation	حفر - تنقيب	play golf	يلعب جولف	two- part word	كلمة مكونة من جزأين
exceed expectations	يفوق التوقعات	poison	سم / يسمم	vital role	دور حيوي
freedom of press	حرية الصحافة	poisonous	سام	welcome to	مرحباً بك في
guilty	مذنب	prove his	يثبت براءته	wounded soldier	جندى مصاب

Expressions

at a young age	في سن صغير	make a plan	يعد خطة
at any time	في أي وقت	make changes to	يجري تغييرات على
be deeply affected by	يتأثر تأثيراً عميقاً بـ	on (his) way to	في طريقه إلى
bring about	يسبب / يحدث	on his first journey	في رحلته الأولى
catch up with	يساير / يواكب	on the coast	على الساحل
close to	قريب من	on the sides of hills	على جوانب التلال
come about	يحدث	over a hundred	أكثر من مائة
deprive of	يحرمان من	pass on information	ينقل معلومات
different from / than / to	مختلف عن	point down	يميل لأسفل
discover something about	يكشف شيء عن	Save... from	ينقذ .. من
get information about	يحصل على معلومات عن	suffer from	يعاني من
get off	يغادر أو ينزل من وسيلة مواصلات	the longest-running play	مسرحية تُعرض لأطول فترة
get on	يركب (وسيلة مواصلات)	to everyone's surprise	لدهشة الجميع
in his forties	في الأربعينيات من عمره	welcome to	مرحباً (بكم) في
instead (of)	بدلاً من	with the help of	بمساعدة
keep up with	يساير / يواكب	work on a crime	يعمل على حل الجريمة
look right for the part	يبدو مناسباً للدور	work on excavation	يعمل في التنقيب

Words & antonyms

apparent	واضح	unclear	غير واضح
arrest	يقبض علي	release	يطلق سراح
attack	يهاجم	defend	يدافع
brave	شجاع	Cowardly (adj.)	جبان
harmful	ضار	harmless	غير ضار
peace	السلام	war	الحرب
innocent	بريء	guilty	مذنب
refuse	يرفض	accept	يقبل
shy	خجول	bold	جريء
temporary	موقت	permanent	دائم
the beginning	البداية	the end	النهاية
the present	الحاضر	the past	الماضي

Derivatives

verb		noun		adj.	
complete	يُكمل	completion	إكمال	complete	كامل / تام
correct	يصحح	correction	تصحيح	correct	صحيح
differ	يختلف	difference	فرق / اختلاف	different	مختلف
include	يشمل	inclusion	اشتمال / ضم	inclusive	شامل
introduce	يُقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تقديمي
poison	يُسمم	poison	السم	poisonous	سام
suspect	يشك في / يشتبه في	suspicion	شك	suspicious	مرتاب / متشكك

Definitions

Amnesia	Not being able to remember , a medical condition that makes you forget things	زهان
Excavation	Digging up the ground to find things from the past. Excavate (v.)	التقيب عن الاثار
Mousetrap	Equipment for catching or killing mice.	مصيدة
Murder(n)	The crime of intentionally killing someone	جريمة قتل
Poison (n)	A substance that may kill or harm you if you eat/drink it	سم
Shy	-Nervous and embarrassed about talking to people -Not confident , especially about meeting or talking to new people.	خجول
Headquarters	The place from where an organization or a company is controlled. e.g. police headquarters,	مكاتب
Identity	- Who someone is e.g. They promised to keep her identity secret. - The things that make one person or group of people different from others e.g. identity card. Cultural identity.	شخصية - هوية
Innocent (adj.)	- Not guilty of committing a crime- not having experience of life. ex. He claims to be innocent of the crime. (Innocence)	بريء
Invasion	- When an army enters a country by force to take control of it.	غزو - هجوم
Secret agent	- Someone who tries to find out secret information about another country.	عميل سري
Spy	- Someone who secretly tries to discover information about a person , country , etc. .	جاسوس
Suspect (n) (v.)	- Someone who may have committed a crime - To think that someone may have committed a crime.	يشتيه في - مشتبه
Transmitter	- Equipment that sends radio messages.(transmit) (v.)	جهاز ارسال

Language Notes

- لاحظ استخدام المقطع en في بداية أو نهاية بعض الكلمات لتكوين الفعل:

able	قادر	enable	يمكن	hard	صلب	harden	يجعله صلبا
courage	شجاعة	encourage	يشجع	length	طول	lengthen	يطول
danger	خطر	endanger	يعرض للخطر	ripe	ناضج	ripen	ينضج
large	كبير	enlarge	يكبر . يضخم	short	قصير	shorten	يقصر
rich	ثري . غني	enrich	يثري	strong	قوى	strengthen	يقوى
broad	واسع	broaden	يوسع	threat	تهديد	threaten	يهدد
cheap	رخيص	cheapen	يخفض السعر	weak	ضعيف	weaken	يضعف
deep	عميق	deepen	يُعمق	wide	متسع	widen	يوسع

- ashamed of (شئ مخزي فعله) يشعر بالخجل من - You must be a shamed of what you have done.
 - shy خجول بطبعه - She is always shy in front of strangers.

- alone بمفرده (شئ مادي) - He carried the stone alone.
 - lonely وحيدا (يشعر بالوحدة) (شئ معنوي) - Despite his friends, he feels lonely.

لاحظ استخدام الاسم بعد حرف الجر in فيما يلي

- 3 metres in height - 5 inches in length - 5 centimetres in depth

وفي حالة عدم وجود حرف جر نستخدم الصفة
 - 3 metres high - 5 inches long - 5 centimetres deep

- based in مقره في - His work is based in Egypt.
 based on قائم على - It is a revision based on unit 1.

- a spy (n) جاسوس (يعرف أسرار) - Rafaat El Hagan was an Egyptian spy.
 spy on (v) يتجسس على - Don't spy on others' affairs.

- coast ساحل - Alex. is located on the north coast of Egypt.
 - shore البحيرة (شاطئ البحر) - I saw some boats on the shore of the sea.
 - beach البلاج (الجزء الرملي عند حافة البحر) - We sat on the beach and ate ice cream.
 - bank ضفة النهر أو القناة - Trees grow along the bank of rivers.

- include يحتوى على جزء أو أكثر من الأجزاء (المكونات) و ليس كل المكونات. - The pair of glasses includes two lenses.
 contain يحتوى على شئ بداخله (على كل) - CD-ROMs can contain words, music and pictures.

- comprise / consist of / is composed يتكون من كل المكونات الأساسية
 - The United Kingdom consists of / is composed of/ comprises England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland

- Enclose يحيط/ يرفق - He enclosed a photo with his letter. My house is enclosed by a high fence.

- Affect = have an effect on يؤثر على - Smoking affects health badly.
 effect تأثير - Smoking has a bad effect on health badly.
 - أحيانا تُستخدم كفعل بمعنى يحدث أو يسبب

- He effected several changes in the company.

- remember to + المصدر يتذكر ثم يفعل الشئ
 I remembered to post the letter.

- remember + (v + ing) يتذكر أنه فعل الشئ - I remembered posting the letter .

- retire يحال للمعاش (يتقاعد)
 - When the employee is 60, he retires and can live on his pension.
 resign يستقيل من العمل - Mr Ahmed resigned his position last week.

رحلة قصيرة trip	- He is in a business trip in London.
رحلة طويلة Journey	- How long is the journey to the coast ?
رحلة بحرية voyage	- We went on a voyage by ship.
رحلة جوية flight	- The flight to Saudi Arabia took two hours.
capture	يأسر . - يقبض علم
- The town was captured by enemy troops.	- She was captured at the airport.
arrest يلقي القبض على	سرقة المعروضات He was arrested for shoplifting.
play (football, basketball, tennis, squash ...)	تستخدم مع الألعاب المتصلة بالكرة .
go (fishing, sailing, swimming, running ...)	تستخدم مع الألعاب المنتهية بـ ing
do (karate, hockey, high jump, judo ...)	تستخدم مع الألعاب الأخرى .
Murder جريمة قتل	- She was charged with attempted murder.
murder(v.) يقتل	- She was accused / convicted of murdering her husband.
Murderer (n.) مجرم قاتل	- He was a professional murderer.
Crime (n.) جريمة	-Violent crime is on the increase.
Criminal (n.) (adj.) إجرامي - مجرم	-He has a criminal record. – He is a dangerous criminal.
Criminologist (n.) عالم في علم الجريمة	- He studied criminology and now works as a criminologist
Poison (n / v) سم - يسمم	- She poisoned the mice.
Poisonous /poisoning (adj.) سام	- Ten people died of poisonous gas yesterday.
poisoned (adj.) مسمم	- He looks as if he is poisoned.
- لاحظ استخدام حروف الجر التالية مع وسائل المواصلات by - on - in	
by	- مع كل وسائل المواصلات بدون فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية أو صفة إشارة) - By (plane – train – ship – boat – car – taxi) - I travelled abroad by plane. - He went to work by car.
on	ما عدا كلمة foot التي تأخذ معها on (on foot) - مع كل وسائل المواصلات مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية أو صفة إشارة) on a (ship – plane – bus – train) - I went to Alex. on a train. - I go to school on foot.
in	ما عدا كلمتي (car – taxi) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية أو صفة إشارة) فتأخذ I go to school in my car. - She goes to school in a taxi.

Exercises

Respond the following situations:

1. A friend asks for your advice about keeping fit. Advise him.
2. A friend wants to meet new people, but he/she is very shy. Make a recommendation.
3. Ask your teacher for advice about how to do well in the next English test.
4. You advise your friend who spends all night studying for the exam.
5. You want some advice from a friend about how you can eat more healthily. What do you ask?
6. Your friend advises you to have rest.
7. Your friend feels tired.
8. Your friend says that you shouldn't stop smoking.
9. Your friend asks your advice about what he would do on the holiday to help other people.
10. Your wants to spend his holiday in a coastal town. Give him advice.
11. You ask your friend about the best way to study English.
12. Your father advises you to sleep early to keep fit.

Mention the place , the speakers and the language each of the following two min-dialogues :

1-A: Show me the names of customers who phoned.
A: O.K. Type this letter and send it now.

B: Here they are.
B: O.K sir.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

2- A: I would like to read a book about the 6th October war.

B: you can find it on the third shelf, on the right.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

3- A: How would you like to pay for it, sir?

B: By credit card.

A: Well .Shall I put it in a bag for you?

B: Yes, please.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

4- A: Where to?

B: The airport, please. Terminal 2 .Could you hurry up, please? My Plane leaves in half an hour.

A: I will do my best, but as you see the traffic is very heavy today.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

5- A: I'd like to know what is on today.

B: It's an action film

A: When does the last performance start?

B: At 12 p.m.

A: OK. Book me a seat, please.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

6 - A: Please fasten your seat belt, sir.

B: OK. Can I have a drink, please?

A: Sorry, sir. You'll have to wait until we take off.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d :

1. Working as a secret in a foreign country can be a very dangerous job.
a-doctor b- guide c- engineer d- agent
2. In many countries, people have to carry an identity to prove who they are.
a-card b- letter c- message d- postcard
3. The Romans Britain in 43 BCE.
a- faded b- deviated c - applied d- invaded
4. We saw a lot of photographs, but we couldn't the man we'd met.
a-qualify b- solidify c- liquefy d - identify
5. How did the man his innocence?
a-deprive b - improve c- prove d- devote
6. The enemy used radios to messages to their ships.
a- transmit b- spend c- try d- develop
7. They that the driver had been going very fast at the time of the accident.
a-inspected b- respected c- suspected d- exerted
8. A is a person you think may have done a crime.
a- suspect b- detective c- survivor d- surgeon
9. A is equipment that sends radio signals.
a- counter b- interpreter c- thermometer d- transmitter
10. means entering another country to take control.
a- Deviation b- Confusion c - Aviation d- Invasion
11. is the place from which a company is controlled.
a- Headquarters b- Headbands c- Headlights d- Headmast
12. A is a person who finds out information about another country or organisation.
a-director b - producer c- consumer d- spy
13. is being unable to remember things.

- a-Depression b- Amnesia c- Fever d- Anaemia*
14. A is equipment for catching and killing mice.
a- trap b- trick c - truck d- mousetrap
15. The crime of killing someone is called
a-blender b- border c- murder d- boiler
16. In his later life, he suffered from He was unable to remember things.
a- paralysis b- amnesia c- cancer d - rheumatism
17. He tried to kill himself by taking
a- vegetable b- fruit c- poison d- protein
18. When the children met the queen, they were too to speak.
a-active b- shy c- lazy d- helpful
19. He had lost his card and was being questioned by the police.
a- honesty b - enmity c- identity d- legality
20. She never went to school. she was taught at home.
a- Included b- Instead c- Installed d- Indebted
21. The man's strange behaviour made the police of him.
a- envious b- jealous c- suspicious d- fabulous
22. If you a crime, you must expect to be punished.
a- do b- make c- have d- act
23. He was seriously by an enemy bullet.
a-wounded b- buried c - handed d- rammed
24. The prisoner will be free next week.
a- stay b- set c- sit d- slip
25. She's always on her neighbours.
a- trying b- dying c- crying d - spying
26. The police found the radio transmitter in the bathroom.
a- hide b - hiding c- hidden d-to hide
27. He stayed in a small hotel the coast.
a-on b- of c- with d- in
28. He lives in a house the city centre.
a-overlooking b- looks c- like d- is overlooking
29. He used to golf with his friends when he was young.
a-do b- do c- play d- played
30. Agatha Christie was the of English crime fiction.
a-king b- prince c- princess d- queen
31. I remember the pyramids when I was 10 .
a- to visit b - visiting c- visit d- visits
32. The actors were excellent at the new play.
a-perform b- performing c- writing d- write
33. She is because she is always nervous and embarrassed.
a- shy b- ashamed c- innocent d- guilty
34. How about the internet?
a-surf b - surfs c- to surf d- surfing
35. He is a he tries to find out information about another country or organization.
a-diplomat b- ambassador c- president d- spy
36. I and Mona cleaned the house by
a- alone b- myself c- herself d- ourselves
37. He was found and set free.
a-clever b- guilty c- innocent d- innocence
38. My grandfather suffers amnesia .
a-by b- with c- from d- in
39. The actors were excellent at the new play.
a- perform b- performing c- writing d- write

40. means having no ability to remember.
a-Insomnia b-Architecture c -Tiredness d-Amnesia
41. A crime of killing a person refers to.....
a- murder b- saving c- photographing d- cycling
42. We used a to catch and kill mice.
a- mouse b- mouth c- board d- mousetrap
43. Many children are about talking to their teachers
a-shy b - ashamed c- shyness d -Chinese
44. All the fish in the river died , someone must have put in water.
a-salt b- poison c- food d- seeds
45. A man was found dead in the road, the police think it was.....
a-murder b-death c-chance d- digging
46. After seeing the mouse , they put a in the kitchen.
a-cupboard b-teapot c-bin d-mousetrap
47. He is a.....he has done a crime.
a-crime b- murder c- criminal d - officer
48. He is a.....he tries to find information about another country
a- diplomat b-ambassador c-president d-spy
49. People have to carry an.....card to prove who they are.
a-identity b- credit c- debit d - hobby

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. All the hostages were finally split free.
2. Finding the spies will help to save the country from indication.
3. Excavation means to dig up the ground to find things from the present.
4. He consisted milk and butter on his shopping list.
5. He fell in the river but his friend deceived him from drowning.
6. He is ashamed he is always nervous and embarrassed.
7. He travelled by his brothers' car.
8. He was set free after being proved that he was guilty.
9. Her stories were made to films.
10. I remember to visit the pyramids when I was 10.
11. In the way back to his hotel, he was arrested by the police.
12. Insomnia means having no ability to remember.
13. Murder is the crime of hurting people.
14. She died aging 80.
15. She lives in a big house over locking the sea.
16. She was the younger of three children..
17. She was too spy to ask anyone for help.
18. Since tiring from the company, she has done voluntary work for a charity.
19. Some of the books are basing on her travels.
20. The government employed two secret accountants to get information about other countries.
21. The police are trying to discover the density of a baby found by the side of a road.
22. The price contains breakfast and accommodation.
23. The room was 3 metres width.
24. The site has been executed by archaeologists.
25. This new evidence will prove the old man's innocent.
26. We went to school by his car.
27. With everyone's surprise, the young girl won the competition.

Translate into Arabic :

Some of the most important aims of education are to build the Egyptian citizen who is able to face the future and create a productive society .Education also aims at preparing a generation of scientists able to stand up the monopoly of science and technology by some countries .

Agatha Christie is the best-selling author of all time. She has sold over two billion books worldwide and has been translated into over 45 languages. She also wrote over a dozen plays, including The Mousetrap, which is now the longest running play in theatrical history.

A wise educational policy directs education towards fulfilling the needs of society. It also deals with its current and future problems. This leads to the welfare of both the individual and the society.

In some poor countries , over twenty percent of the children die in their first year of life . The reason for this is the lack of medical care and medicine. Another cause is food and water shortage .

Translate into English :

تنشأ الإصابة بانفلونزا الخنازير من الاتصال المباشر مع الخنازير المصابة

يعتمد النجاح في الحياة على الصبر والعمل الجاد

- لا تقاس حياة المرء بالسنين التي عاشها و لكن بالخبرات التي اكتسبها.

- تمكنت السلطات من القبض علي الجاسوس بعدما عثروا علي جهاز الارسال في غرفة نومه.

- من حقه أن تعبر عن رأيك بحرية ولكن يجب أن تحترم الآخرين.

- نقص الغذاء يهدد حياة الملايين من البشر في كل أنحاء العالم..

- أي جريمة مهما طال اختفائها سوف تنكشف يوما ما.

- كان صديقي هو الناجي الوحيد من الحادث.

Grammar

The Passive Voice المبنى للمجهول

1-The passive present simple

المضارع البسيط المبنى للمجهول

➔ Object مفعول + am / is / are + p.p.

-He plays table tennis.

= Table tennis is played (by him).

-They don't watch films.

= Films aren't watched (by them).

2-The passive present continuous

المضارع المستمر المبنى للمجهول

➔ Object مفعول + am / is / are + being + p.p....

-She isn't eating a sandwich.

= A sandwich isn't being eaten (by her).

- Ali is watering the plants.

= The plants are being watered (by Ali).

3-The passive present Perfect المضارع التام المبني للمجهول

Object مفعول + has / have + been + p.p..... .

- I have fed the baby. = The baby has been fed (by me).
- Mum has washed the dishes. = The dishes have been washed (by mum).

4-The passive past simple الماضي البسيط المبني للمجهول

Object مفعول + was / were + p.p..... .

- They built this house long ago. =This house was built long ago (by them).
- I didn't eat fish for lunch. = Fish wasn't eaten (for lunch) by me.

5-The passive past continuous الماضي المستمر المبني للمجهول

Object مفعول + was / were + being + p.p.

- Aya wasn't studying English. = English wasn't being studied (by Aya).
- We were doing homework. = Homework was being done (by us).

6-The passive past Perfect الماضي التام المبني للمجهول

Object مفعول + had + been + p.p..... .

- She had sold the goat. = The goat hadn't been sold (by her).
- Omer hadn't seen a wolf before. = A wolf hadn't been seen (by Omer) before.

7-The passive with simple modals and semi-modals

المبني للمجهول مع الأفعال الناقصة البسيطة و نصف الناقصة

Object مفعول + (will-would-can-could-may-might-shall-should-must-have to- has to- had to- will have to-ought to-need to- needn't-used to- be used to- be going to- be to- seem to - appear to- be about to-be supposed to-would rather - had better)+ be +p.p..... .

- He will feed the camel. = The camel will be fed.
- I can carry this bag. = This bag can be carried.
- He should use a spoon. = A spoon should be used.
- He used to help his mother. = His mother used to be helped.
- He needs to see a doctor. = A doctor needs to be seen.
- He is going to buy a mobile. = A mobile is going to be bought.
- He has to pay a fine. = A fine has to be paid.

8-The passive with perfect modals and semi-modals

المبني للمجهول مع الأفعال الناقصة التامة و نصف الناقصة

Object مفعول + (will-would-can-could-may-might- should-must- ought to-need to- needn't..) +have + been + p.p..... .

- She will have saved enough money. -Enough money will have been saved.
- He should have done the job. -The job should have been done.
- He could have paid the bill. -The bill could have been paid.
- He must have lost his money. - His money must have been lost.
- She needn't have made the cake. - The cake needn't have been made.

ملاحظات عامة علي المبني للمجهول

People /They (think – say – believe – know – suppose – expect – allege..)
= It + is + (thought-said-believed-known- supposed-expected....etc.)

= المصدر / الضمير (am / is are) + p.p + to + + inf.

= Object مفعول + am / is / are + (thought-said-believed-....etc.) + to + inf.

- People believe that Ali is able to win the cup. - I t is believed that Ali is able to win the cup.
- Ali is believed to be able to win the cup. - The cup is believed to be able to be won by Ali.

People /They (thought – said – believed – knew – supposee – expected – alleged..)

= It + was + (thought-said-believed-known- supposed-expected....etc.)

= المصدر / الضمير (was / were) + p.p + to + inf. /to have + p.p.....

=Object مفعول +(was / were) +(thought-said-believed-....etc.)+ to + inf.

- I thought that Omer opened the front door. - It was thought that Omer opened the front door.
- Omer was thought to have opened the front door. - Omer was thought to open the front door.
- The front door was thought to have been opened by omer.

- في حالة وجود مضارع مستمر نستخدم (to be + ing) :

I think he is making a plan. - It is thought that he is making a plan.- He is thought to be making a plan.

- في حالة وجود ماضي مستمر نستخدم (to be +V- ing) أو (to have been +V- ing)

- I think she was making a cake. - It is thought that she was making a cake.
- She is thought to be making/ to have been making a cake.

-إذا كان الفاعل (No one- Nobody) فيمكن ألا نضع (by) وتنفي الجملة

No one wrote the passage. -The passage was written by no one. -The passage was not written.
- كلمة (all) يمكن أن تحول الى (Not all) وكلمة (any) يمكن أن تحول الى (No):

- He didn't eat all the sweets. - All the sweets weren't eaten by him. -Not all the sweets were eaten.
- She didn't buy any books. - Any books weren't bought by her.
- No books were bought by her.

- إذا جاء في الجملة مفعولين احدهما عاقل والآخر غير عاقل :

- He sent me a letter. -A letter was sent to me. - I was sent a letter.

-يستخدم حرف الجر for مع أفعال معينة مثل:

buy / build / find / order / make / leave / save / get / keep...

- He bought his mother a present. - A present was bought for my mother by me.
- The woman kept the cat hungry. - The cat was kept hungry.

-يستخدم حرف الجر to مع أفعال معينة مثل:

give / bring / lend / offer / pass / read / sell / show / write.....

- He passed me the ball. - The ball was passed to me.
- The offered her some juice. - Some juice were offered to her.

- صيغة الأمر عند التحويل لمجهول نستخدم :

Let + مفعول + be + p.p

- Finish your homework. -Let your homework be finished
- Don't open the door. -Don't let the door be opened.

- مع الأفعال make / see / help / hear / notice / watch نستخدم inf. في المعلوم و نستخدم to + inf. في المجهول:

- I saw him steal the money. - He was seen to steal the money.
- I heard him say so. -He was heard to say so.
- We made her study hard. -She was made to study hard.

- إذا جاء بعد الأفعال السابقة ing في المعلوم ، نستخدم ing في المجهول أيضا :

- I saw him playing tennis. He was seen playing tennis.

يمكن استخدام (get) بدلا من (be) مع بعض الأفعال مثل :

get arrested / get killed/ get married / get divorced يطلق / get caught يقبض علي / get elected ينتخب /
get lost / get hurt / get beaten يهزم / get delayed يتأخر / get confused يرتبك / get burnt / get
damaged / get fired يفصل من العمل / get run over يصد
.....

-The police caught him. -He was caught by the police. = He got caught by the police.
-She beat me at chess. -I was beaten at chess. = I got beaten at chess.

- غالبا يتحول الفعل (let) للمجهول باستخدام (مصدر + to be allowed) :

-My father let us go out. -We were allowed to go out.

- الأفعال مثل (like/hate/ love/ dislike) ممكن أن يأتي بعدها (مصدر + to) أو (v.ing) فتختلف صيغة المجهول :

-I don't like people cheating me. -I don't like being cheated.
-I don't like people to cheat me. -I don't like to be cheated.

- عند تحويل السؤال الى مجهول نتبع الخطوات التالية :

1 - نحول السؤال الى جملة 2 - نحول الجملة الى مجهول 3 - نحول الجملة الى سؤال

-When does he drink milk?
1 - He drinks milk. 2 - Milk is drunk (by him). 3 - When is milk drunk (by him)?
Did you buy a car ?
1-You bought a car. 2- A car was bought (by you). 3-Was a car bought (by you).

أحيانا لا بد من استخدام (الفاعل + by) مع أفعال معينة مثل:

build / invent / discover / design / write / damage / compose / destroy

- Naguib Mahfouz wrote ' The Thief and the Dogs'.
- ' The Thief and the Dogs' was written by Naguib Mahfouz.

لاحظ هذه التغييرات التالية عند التحويل الى المبني للمجهول:

Active	Passive
It is possible	= can be + PP
It's impossible	= can't be + PP
It's necessary	= must be + PP
It's unnecessary	= needn't be + PP
It's probable	= may be + PP
It's improbable	= might be + PP
It's advisable	= should be + PP
It's inadvisable	= shouldn't be + PP

- It's necessary to wash vegetables before eating.
-Vegetables must be washed before eating.
- It is impossible to drink petrol. - Petrol can't be drunk.

عند تحويل الجملة الخبرية الى مبني للمعلوم نتبع الآتي :-

- نضع الفاعل بعد by في أول الجملة وإذا كان محذوفاً يمكن استنتاجه .

- نحذف (v. to be) ونضع فعل التصريف الثالث يناسب زمن و فاعل الجملة .

- نحذف (v. to be) ، by إن وجدت . - نأتي بالمفعول من أول الجملة ونضعه بعد الفعل مباشرة .

- The lesson is prepared by me. - I prepare the lesson.
- The match will be played by him. - He will play the match.

- الفعل have لا يبنى للمجهول ويحول إلى ما يساويه في المعنى .

Have = own – possess – belong to – suffer – eat – buy – spend – take

- I have a car. - A car is (possessed – owned) by me.
- I had a new shirt yesterday. - A new shirt was bought by me yesterday.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d :

1. Agathaat home by her mother.
a- was taught b- is taught c- is being taught d- taught
2. She is thoughtsuffered from amnesia.
a- to b- to be c- to have d- having
3. Itthat she cleaned and repaired some of the things that were found..
a- thinking b- was thinking c- thought d- was thought
4. Some of her storieson her travels to these countries.
a- be based b- base c- are based d- have based
5. The playperformed without a break.
a- 'd performed b- have been performed c- has been performed d- performed
6. Her best booksin over a hundred years.
a- was published b- have been published c- published d- publish
7. The mousetrapin 1947 by Agatha Christie.
a- was written b- is written c- wrote d- was writing
8. It was written as a radio playThree Blind Mice.
a- is called b- calling c- was called d- called
9. The same charactersfor the first eleven years .
a- played b- were playing c- were played d- play
10. Since then the actors many times.
a- changed b- have been changed c- have changed d- were changed
11. It is now known that last month wasfor two years.
a- hot b- hotter c- the hotter d- the hottest
12. Egypt is believed tothe best tourist attractions .
a- has b- have c- having d- be having
13. It has been reported that foreign tourismby 20% last year.
a- is increasing b- has increased c- increase d- increased
14. The Mousetrapas a radio play in 1947.
a- is written b- was written c- has written d- has been written
15. Agatha Christie's booksmore than 40 languages.
a- had translated b- were translated c- translated d- translate
16. 2008 Olympic Games ...by millions of people all over the world.
a- are watched b- have been watched c- were watched d- has been watched
17. Petraby the Romans in 106 AD.
a- has been captured b- was captured c- captured d- was being captured
18. The Eiffel Towerby Gustave Eiffel in 1889.
a- have been designed b- was designed c- had designed d- have designed
19. The Cairo Metro is used toabout 10 million passengers every day.
a- be carrying b- was carrying c- carrying d- carry
20. Many of Agatha Christie's storiesinto films .
a- 've been made b- had made c- were making d- made
21. This year's prize for crime fictionby a 78-year-old man.
a - was won b- has been won c- was winning d- will be won
22. The last World Cup Finalon TV by three hundred million people.
a- saw b- is seen c- was seen d- will be seen
23. English and Arabicin most tourist offices.
a - speak b- spoken c- is spoken d- are spoken
24. One of the classroom windows.....
a- were broken b- broken c- has been broken d- are broken
25. A famous tennis player is believedafter a city centre road accident.
a- to hurt b- to be hurt c- to have hurt d- hurt
26. It is now known that Egyptby increasing numbers of tourists last year.
a- visited b- was visited c- is visited d- has been visited
27. it is believed that languagesto younger children at schools.
a -taught b- are teaching c- is taught d- are taught
28. Itthat archaeologists have found a new pyramid at Saqqara

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| a – reports | b-reported | c-was reporting | d- has been reported |
|-------------|------------|-----------------|----------------------|
29. He is ----- to have suffered from amnesia.
a – think b – thinking c – to think d – thought
 30. A famous tennis player ----- to be hurt in the accident.
a – is believed b – are believed c – is believing d – are believing
 31. Money -----to bring happiness.
a – thought b – will think c – has thought d – is thought
 32. It was reported ----- cancelled.
a – that the match b – that the match was c – to have d – have been
 33. They are expected ----- the cup.
a – to have won b – that they will win c – to win d – to have been won
 34. My son ----- to get full marks.
a – believes b – believed c – is believing d – is believed
 35. It -----that money is very important.
a – can't deny b – can't have denied c – denied d – can't be denied
 36. We don't know where he lives . ----- believed to live in Tanta.
a – It is b – It was c – He is d – He has
 37. He ----- to be one of the most intelligent pupils.
a – considers b – is considered c – has considered d – is considering
 38. ----- is known that smoking is harmful to health.
a – Everyone b – It c – No one d – He
 39. It has ----- reported that he the criminal.
a – be b – been c – being d – is
 40. ----- thought that he will take part in the race.
a – It is b – It has c – He is d - He was
 41. It was -----that he killed the old woman.
a – suppose b – supposing c – supposes d – supposed
 42. It is reported ----- she cleaned her room.
a – to b – that c – be d – been

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. A 78-year old man has been won this year's prize for crime fiction.
2. A famous tennis player is believed to be hurting after a city centre road accident.
3. A new pyramid at Saqqara has found by archaeologists.
4. A terrible thing was happened yesterday.
5. He is said too be a thief.
6. He is thought to have making a plan.
7. Her best books have published in over a hundred countries.
8. It believes that the terrorists escaped.
9. It has been reporting that foreign tourism increased by 20% last year.
10. It has known that smoking causes serious diseases.
11. It is been reported that he took the money.
12. It is believed that young children can be teaching languages at school.
13. It is fear that there are no survivors of the crash.
14. It is know that he can help us.
15. It is now being known that last month was the hottest for two years.
16. It said that the Wall of China is the greatest building on Earth.
17. It thought that he is making a plan.
18. It was believed that he stole the bank.
19. It was reported that the team to lose the game.
20. Many of Agatha Christie's stories have made into films and TV programmes.
21. Nobody saw near the crime scene.
22. She is believed to have steal the documents
23. She was believed to have steal the car.
24. She was teaching at home by her mother.
25. Since then, the actors have been changing several times.
26. Since then, the play performs without a break.
27. The crime has solved.
28. The night will spend in a hotel because of heavy snow.
29. The same characters were playing by the same actors.
30. The story is about a group of people who are not knowing to each other.
31. The sun is risen in the east.

5. She tried to prove her innocent.

6. He can't remember any thing .He suffers from amnesia.

C- Reading

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions

Psychologists have been coming up with lots of theories about motivation. They have been busy answering questions on what it is, where it comes from and why some people suffer from a lack of it while others have too much of it .

The most obvious place one needs to be motivated is the workplace. Most of us are motivated to succeed at work. Professor Cooper found that a large percentage of successful people had lost a parent, been left by a parent or suffered other tragic loss before the age of eighteen. Cooper claimed that the reason for seeking success is not to achieve power over others, but to gain control over what is happening in their lives.

Here are some tips to help boost your motivation Firstly, eat well and exercise. A fat stomach is not going to make you very energetic Secondly; it is useful to define your goals by writing them down. Thirdly, hang around positive people if the people you spend your free time with are constantly complaining about life, maybe it's better you looked for new companions. Sleep well and take breaks and holidays. By putting these ideas into practice, you will enjoy higher levels of motivation and a better quality of life.

a) Give short answers to the following questions:

1- Do people according to psychologists have similar levels of motivation for success? Explain.

2- According to the text, where do people most likely want to achieve success?

3- Why do people who suffered in their childhood seek success?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

4. According to research by Professor Cooper, a huge number of successful people.....

a) had good parents

b) had suffered the loss of a loved one in childhood

c) were orphans

d) wanted to have power over other people .

5. The word "boost" means

a) make greater

b) make smaller

c) make older

d) make thinner

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The act of dialogue among cultures and civilizations faces multiple theoretical and practical questions. Fundamental questions regarding civilization and culture, and the intellectual and scientific preoccupations in this regard should not be underestimated. I would like, however, to emphasize that the main objective for this initiative of dialogue among cultures and civilizations is in fact to initiate a new paradigm in international relations and those among human beings in our contemporary world. This necessity will be clearer when we compare it with the other paradigms which currently form the basis of international relations.

We cannot invite people and governments to the paradigm of dialogue of cultures and civilizations without learning lessons from history, without thoroughly investigating the reasons behind major world disasters in the twentieth century and their continuation in the current one, and without passing judgment on the existing dominant paradigm which is based on a dialogue of power and glorification of might.

Dialogue among civilizations, viewed from an ethical perspective, is in fact an invitation to discard what might be termed the power oriented will, in favour of a love oriented one. In this case, the result of dialogue will be empathy and compassion. And the interlocutors will primarily be thinkers, leaders, artists and all benevolent intellectuals who are the true representatives of their respective cultures and civilizations.

Relying on shared principles, objectives, and threats in order to find shared solutions is a major step towards changing the existing situation and isolating the extremists who, by sanctifying violence and force, have spoilt the world for all its inhabitants regardless of their culture or civilization.

a) Give short answers to the following questions:

1 What is the main purpose of dialogue among civilizations?

2 What should be done before inviting people to dialogue among cultures??

3 What is the major step to change the existing situation?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4) Where is this text from?

a- a newspaper

b- a science fiction story

c- a detective story

d- a book on gardening

5) What does "extremists" mean?

a- the thinkers

b- the fundamentalists

c- the moderates

d- the people

D- The Novel

7) (A) Answer the following questions:

1. What kind of people lives in the old part of the city? What does Rassendyll do when the Marshal wants him to ride through the old part of town?
2. Why is Sapt so anxious about Rassendyll's decision to ride alone through the old town?
3. Why does Duke Michael's face turn white when he sees "the King" (Rassendyll)?
4. Does Michael realise that this is not the real King? How do you know?

B) Read following quotation and answer the questions:

"Tell your soldiers to ride ahead of me. I don't need them or you. You can wait here until I've continued through the old town alone. "

1. Who says this to whom?
2. Where are they and when is this?
3. Why does the speaker say this? -

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. It is Marshal Strakencz's idea for the King to ride through the old part of town alone.
2. All the people smile and cheer the King.

E - Writing

8. Write a paragraph about 100 words about

A famous writer you would like to be like him or her

F- Translation

9. a) Translate into Arabic :

The great divisions among humankind and the dominating source of conflict will be cultural. Nation states will remain the most powerful actors in world affairs, but the principal conflicts of global politics will occur between nations and groups of different civilizations. The clash of civilizations will dominate global politics.

b) Translate into English :

- ينبغي علينا أن نشجع الاستثمار في المجالات الزراعية و الصناعية و السياحية .

- ان ارتفاع الاسعار الجنوني يرهق ميزانية البيوت المصرية ويجعلنا نتخلي عن كثير من السلع الكمالية.

Budget	ميزانية	Exhaust	يرهق
clash	تصادم	global politics	السياسات العالمية
conflict	صراع	Luxury goods	سلع كمالية
divisions	فوارق – فواصل	occur	يحدث
Do without	يتخلي عن	principal	رئيسي
dominating	مسيطر	world affairs	شئون العالم

Unit 6 – The Importance of Trees

absorb = take in	يمتص	fill	يملأ	protect from	يحمي
absorption	امتصاص	forest clearance	إزالة الغابات	queue	طابور
add to	يضيف إلى	fuel	وقود	queue up	يصطف - يقف في طابور
alleviate suffering	يخفف المعاناة	furniture	أثاث	rain forests	الغابات المطيرة
annual festival	مهرجان سنوي	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	reason for	سبب
balance	توازن	gloves	قفازات	recharge	يعيد شحن
bark	لحاء الشجر	goats	ماعز	reclaim the desert	يستصلح
branches	فروع	great shift	تحولا كبيرا	rely on	يعتمد على
breath	تنفس	hammer	المطرقة	remove	يزيل
breathe	يتنفس	harden	يصبح أشد صلابة	rings	حلقات - دوائر
bridge	كوبرى / جسر	incredible	لا يصدق	roots	جذور
brush teeth	ينظف الأسنان	instead of	بدل من	rubber	مطاط / استيكة
building houses	بناء المنازل	instruments	آلات	Sap	النسغ / عصارة النبات
calculate	يحسب	international community	المجتمع الدولي	serious	جاد - خطير
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	keep --- away	يبعد	set regulations	يضع اللوائح
cardboard	ورق مقوى	leaves	أوراق شجر	set rules	يضع القواعد
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	length	الطول	soil	تربة
chlorophyll	الكلوروفيل	lengthen	يطول	solve the crisis	يحل الأزمة
close together	بالقرب من بعض	list	قائمة	spread awareness	ينشر الوعي
cut down	يقطع	local x global	محلي x عالمي	stake	دعامة نبات
deep	عميق	make medicines	يصنع الدواء	strength	قوة
deepen	يعمق	manage to	يتمكن من	strengthen	يقوي
demerits	عيوب	materials	مواد خام	surprise	مفاجأة - يفاجئ
depend on	يعتمد على	merits	مميزات	the United Nations	الأمم المتحدة
depth	عمق	musical instrument	آلة موسيقية	toothpaste	معجون الأسنان
dig	يحفر	noise pollution	التلوث الضوضائي	tube	أنبوبة
do damage	يسبب تلف	nuts	بندق - مكسرات	turn into	يتحول إلى
drill into the tree	يحفر	oxygen	أكسجين	turpentine	سائل لإزالة الطلاء
equipment	معدات	paint remover	مزيل طلاء	tyre	إطار مطاطي
exert efforts	يبذل الجهود	palm trees	النخل	valuable	شيء ذو قيمة
extract	يستخرج/ يستخلص	photosynthesis	البناء الضوئي	value	قيمة - يقيم
fall over	يقع من على	play the piano	يعزف على البيانو	violin	كمان
fertilizers	الأسمدة	products	منتجات	wooden stick	عصا خشبية

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adj.	
add	يُضيف	addition	إضافة	additional	إضافي
close	يُغلق	closure	إغلاق	closed	مغلق
construct	يبني	construction	بناء	constructive	بناء
destroy	يُدمر	destruction	تدمير	destructive	مُدمر / هدام
harden	يجعله صلبا	hardness	الصلابة	hard	صلب
lengthen	يُطوّل / يطيل	length	الطول	long	طويل
measure	يقيس	measurement	قياس	measurable	يمكن قياسه
mix	يخلط	mixture	خليط	mixed	مختلط
remove	يُزيل	remover removal	مزيل إزالة	removable	يمكن إزالته
Sharpen	يسن / يحد	Sharpness	حدة	Sharp	حاد
Shorten	يقصر	Shortage	نقص	Short	قصير
widen	يُوسّع	width	عرض / اتساع	wide	واسع

Expressions

abide by the law	يلتزم بالقانون	keep .. away from	يُبعد .. عن
along the sides of the street	علي جانبي الشارع	leave out	يستبعد
believe it or not	صدق أو لا تصدق	make paper out of wood	يصنع الورق من الخشب
break the rules	يُخالف القواعد	make up	يُشكّل / يُكون / يخترع قصة
cubic centimeter	سنتيمتر مكعب	point downwards	يمتد أو يتجه لأسفل
develop new techniques	يُطور أساليب جديدة	put down roots	يستقر (في مكان معين)
do a favour	يقدم خدمة أو معروف	put out fire	يُطفئ النيران
do damage to	يُضرر / يلحق ضررا بـ	reduce noise pollution	يقلل التلوث الضوضائي
do good to	يعود بالفائدة علي	resolve / solve the crisis	يحل الأزمة
get better at	يتحسن في	set of instructions	مجموعة تعليمات
get in the team	ينضم للفريق	set rules and regulations	يضع القواعد واللوائح
give out	يُخرج / يُطلق	sports equipment	أجهزة رياضية
in the shape of a circle	علي شكل دائرة	spread awareness	ينشر الوعي
international community	المجتمع الدولي	take in	يتمص / يفهم / يخدع

Words & antonyms

about	تقريبا / حوالي	exactly	بالضبط
attached	متصل	detached	منفصل
better	أفضل	worse	أسوأ
fertile	خصب	infertile	غير خصب
health	الصحة	illness	المرض
initial	أولي	final	نهائي
minor	ثانوي	major	رئيسي
negative	سلبي	positive	ايجابي
punishment	العقاب	reward	الثواب / المكافأة
upwards	متجه لأعلي	downwards	متجه لأسفل
valuable	قيم	valueless	بلا قيمة
wealth	الغني / الثروة	poverty	الفقر

Definitions

bark	The material that forms the surface of the wood of a tree	لحاء الشجر
calculate	To find out something or measure something by using numbers	يحسب
cardboard	Very stiff thick paper, used especially for making boxes	ورق مقوي
extract	To remove something	يستخرج/يستخلص
harden	To become firm or stiff.	يصبح أشد صلابة
instrument	Something such as a piano or violin used for producing musical sounds	أداة / جهاز
products	Things that are made or grown to be sold	منتجات
ring	An object in the shape of a circle	حلقة
roots	The parts of trees that grow under the ground and find water.	جذور
rubber	A substance used for making tyres, boots, etc.	مطاط
sap	The liquid that carries food through plants and trees	النسغ / العصارة
toothpaste	Substance used for cleaning your teeth	معجون اسنان
tube	A pipe that liquids or gases go through.	أنبوبة
turpentine	A strong-smelling liquid used for removing paint	سائل لإزالة الطلاء
width	The distance from one side of something to the other	عرض / اتساع

Language Notes

- manage to + المصدر يتمكن من
- succeed in + (v + ing) ينجح في

- He managed to answer the test.
- He succeeded in answering the test.

- hear (سماع عارض . بدون قصد)
- hear from يتلقى رسالة من
- hear of يسمع أخبار عن / يعرف بوجود شخص أو شيء
- hear about يسمع . يتلقى معلومات عن

- When I was walking in the street I heard someone crying.
- Have you heard from Ahmed?
- She disappeared and was never heard of again.
- You will hear about this later.

- weather
- What will the weather be like tomorrow ?

- الطقس : حالة الجو من مطر و رياح و ثلوج في فترة معينة
- What was the weather like yesterday?

- climate
- The climate of Egypt is fine all the year round.

المناخ : حالة الطقس في مكان محدد

atmosphere

الغلاف الجوي : ما يحيط الأرض أو المكان

- Atmosphere is the mixture of gases that surrounds the Earth.

- use + object + to + inf يستخدم لـ
- use + object + for + (v + ing) يستخدم لـ
- use as يستخدم كـ

- We use wood to make furniture.
- We use wood for making furniture.
- Wood is used as a fuel.

everyday (adj.)

تستخدم ككلمة واحدة بمعنى يومي وهي في هذه الحالة صفة

- I meet a lot of people in my everyday life.

every day (adj.)

تستخدم ككلمتان منفصلتان بمعنى كل يوم وهي في هذه الحالة حال.

- I go to school every day.

else

تستخدم بعد الكلمات التي تبدأ بـ (some – every – no – some) مثل

- Someone else / everyone else.

else

تستخدم بعد الكلمات التي تنتهي بـ (one / thing / body) مثل

- Something else / nothing else.

else

و تستخدم بعد أدوات الاستفهام (what / who / why / where)

- What else do you need? - Who else attended the meeting?

connect something to something يوصل بجهاز
connect someone / thing with something يوصل / يرتبط بـ

- First connect the printer to the computer

- There was nothing to connect him with the criminal

contact يتصل بـ

- Please do not hesitate to contact me if you need anything

breathe in = inhale يستنشق
breathe out = exhale يزفر

- Plants breathe in carbon dioxide
- Plants breathe out oxygen.

made in صنع في

- This car is made in Japan .

made of (المادة المصنوع منها ما زالت موجودة)

- The bag is made of leather .

made from (المادة المصنوع منها لم تعد موجودة)

- The cake is made from flour.

help to + inf. يساعد يأتي بعدها المصدر مسبقاً بـ (to)

- He helped me to do the job.

help + inf. (to) يساعد يأتي بعدها المصدر بدون

- He helped me do the job.

help with + n. (with – in) يساعد يأتي بعدها الاسم مسبقاً بـ

- He helped me with the job.

hold / held / held يقيم / يمسك

- He held the chair.

hold an opinion / belief / view يؤمن برأي / اعتقاد / وجهة نظر

- She holds the opinion that the world will end soon.

hold a meeting / a conference	hold a position / a post	hold an opinion
hold (500) people	hold (him) responsible for	hold the line = hold on

hold back يمنع / يعوق	- The police couldn't hold back the crowds.
hold up يعطل	- Sorry, I didn't mean to hold everybody up.
catch يمسك	- The cat caught the fish with its mouth.
catch يصطاد حيوان	- Cats like to catch mice. - The police caught the thief.
catch يلحق بـ	- We have to get up early to catch the first bus.
catch يصاب بـ	- It's easy to catch Bird Flu if you are not careful.
catch يعلق بـ . يشبك في	- I caught my new T-shirt in a nail.

count يعد على أصابعه	- Scientists are able to calculate the speed of sound.
Calculate يحسب بالآلة	- Some tribes can't count up to nine.

similar to مشابه لـ (اختلاف)	- The two books are similar but this one is new.
the same as نفس الشيء بدون اختلاف	- He wears the same suit every day. -
the same + (noun)	- They have the same nationality.

- لاحظ استخدام الصفة في هذا التركيب:

- It (be) + adj. + of + someone +(not) to do something
(nice / kind / stupid / silly / clever / polite / careless)
-It is kind of you to help me. -It was careless of Jack not to lock the door.

- يُضاف المقطع th الي بعض الكلمات لتكوين الاسم.

wide	width	long	length	strong	strength
deep	depth	grow	growth	heal	health

- الصفة المركبة تتكون عادة من كلمتين وتصف الاسم بعدها.

- Adj. / Adv. / n. + V + ing: / -Adj. / Adv. + P.P.

old-fashioned	densely-populated	kind-hearted
deeply-rooted	open-minded	absent-minded
brightly-coloured	widely-used	strong-minded
far-reaching	long-lasting	mouth-watering
never-ending	labour-saving	fast-growing

- تأتي catch بمعاني مختلفة:

catch the ball	catch a thief	catch fire
catch a disease	catch fish	catch a train /a bus
catch up with	catch someone's attention	catch sight of

- Wander يتجول -He wandered around the mall for half an hour.
- wonder يتساءل / يستغرب / يتعجب
-I wonder if I could borrow your car. •Sometimes I wonder about his behaviour.
- Quiet هاديء -You should be quiet so as not to wake the baby.
- Quite تماما / الي حد ما -The food you cook is quite good. -That's quite a different situation.
- Quit يترك / يغادر / يتوقف عن -She's going to quit her job.
- Root (n.) جذر نبات / شعر/اسنان - اصل -Money is the root of all evils.
- Rooted (adj.) متأصل -Most crimes are rooted in ignorance.
- Root out (v.) يستأصل -It is our aim to root out corruption.
- Damage (n /v) تلف- يتلف -The storm did a lot of damage.
-He suffered brain damage in the car crash. - Smoking damages health.
- Damaging (adj.) متلف - The world suffers from the damaging effects of pollution.
- Damaged (adj.) تالف - It will cost a fortune to repair the damage to the roof.

Communication Skills

Asking for Instructions	Giving Instructions
Would you tell me	Be careful (not) to.....
Would you show me	First / Then.... / Next.... / Finally....
How does + subj. + inf.....?	First,, then
How can I + inf.?	First, After that,
Can you show me how to + inf.?	It is a good idea to
What do you think I ought to do next?	Remember (not) to
What should I do if	You should make (be) sure that.....
Can you tell me	

Exercises

Respond the following situations:

41. You are at an interview. You are asked about your marital status.
42. You are introduced to someone you have never met before.
43. You ask your friend about how to plant a tree.
44. You give your friend instructions about how to make tea the English way.
45. You give your instructions how to use the computer.
46. You tell your brother how to plant a tree.
47. You tell your friend about the best way to switch off the computer.
48. You want to make tea the English way. Ask your friend for advice.
49. Your friend asks how he can make tea.
50. Your friend asks you how to operate the computer.
51. Your friend asks you how to recharge a mobile.
52. Your sister ask for your advice about how to keep fit.

Mention the place , the speakers and the language each of the following two min-dialogues :

- 1-A: I'd like to renew my passport, please.
 B: You need to fill in this form and bring two recent photos

Place: - Speaker A:..... - Speaker B:..... - Function:

- 2-A: Can I book a flight to London, please? B: Sure. When would you like to travel?
 A: Tomorrow morning.

Place: - Speaker A:..... - Speaker B:..... - Function:

- 3- A) I'd like to change some money, please. B) Cash or Travellers' cheques?
 A) Travellers' cheques B) That is fine .Sign the cheques and Show me your passport.

Place: - Speaker A:..... - Speaker B:..... - Function:

- 4- A) Could you arrange us a trip to Luxor? B) Certainly .BY coach or by train. A) By train, please.

Place: - Speaker A:..... - Speaker B:..... - Function:

- 5- A) Can I see your driving license, please? B) What for?
 A) You have parked in a no-parking area.

Place: - Speaker A:..... - Speaker B:..... - Function:

- 6- A) How can I help? B) Well, my car has been stolen. A) How?
 B) I had parked it last night in front of my house In Ramses street .In the morning it wasn't there.

A) What make is it?

B) BMW.

Place: - Speaker A:..... - Speaker B:..... - Function:

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d :

1. The tallest tree in the world is a giant Sequoia and 83.8 meters.....
a- tall b- high c- long d- wide
2. A tree's leaves help it tolight from the sun.
a- take in b- take out c- take off d- take to
3. Theis like our skin - it protects the living part of the tree on top of the Land.
a- Park b- parking c- bark d- barking
4. The tubes carry water from a tree'sto its leaves.
a- rots b- roots c- bark d- stem
5. If the bark is damaged, the tree dies.
a- well b- good c- badly d- worse
6. Animals such as goats, love eating....., so it's especially important to keep animals away from young trees.
a- leaves b- stem c- roots d- bark
7. It is possible to calculate the age of a tree by counting its, without cutting the tree down.
a- rounds b- circles c- rings d- barks
8. The Of the ring depends on the climate and the amount of rain.
a- length b- width c- weight d- thickness
9. If it's a year, the rings are narrower.
a- stormy b- rainy c- windy d- dry
10. We make paper wood from trees.
a- of b- into c- out of d- out
11. We can use wood as a for cooking and heating.
a- oil b- fuel c- fool d- full
12. Trees help the earth to breathe and they us from global warming.
a- protect b- prevent c- keep d- protective
13. In addition to these uses, trees also give us chemicals.
a- valueless b- value c- valuable d- valuate
14. Turpentine, which is used as painted remover, is made from the of trees.
a- seed b- sap c- sop d- soap
15. Sap can also be used to make
a- robber b- rubber c- razor d- robbery
16. If wood is, chemicals are produced which can be used to make medicines and some kinds of plastic.
a- cooled b- boiled c- vapourized d- heated
17. Wood products can also be paper, cardboard and materials from which clothes can be made.
a- turned b- turned into c- turned off d- turned out to
18. Wood are also used in some types of ice cream and other foods.
a- production b- products c- produces d- producing
19. The width of the ring depends on the
a- weather b- climate c- water d- sun
20. Theare the parts of trees that grow under the ground and find water.
a- roots b- rots c- reeds d- leaves
21. The hard outside part of a tree is called the
a- park b- bark c- brake d- break
22.are the flat green parts at the ends of the branches of a tree.
a- loaves b- seeds c- leaves d- fruits
23. A.....grows on a plant or tree and has seeds inside.
a- fruit b- leaf c- bark d- branch
24. Every year , trees grow extraof new wood.
a- root b- ring c- seed d- bark
25. The noun of "wide" is

- | <i>a- widen</i> | <i>b- wider</i> | <i>c- width</i> | <i>d- widest</i> |
|--|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 26. "long" is an adjective ,butis the noun. | | | |
| <i>a- lung</i> | <i>b- longest</i> | <i>c- longer</i> | <i>d- length</i> |
| 27. "high" is an adjective butis a noun. | | | |
| <i>a- height</i> | <i>b- highness</i> | <i>c- highest</i> | <i>d- hire</i> |
| 28. "deep" is an adjective butis a noun. | | | |
| <i>a- depth</i> | <i>b- deepen</i> | <i>c- deepest</i> | <i>d- deepening</i> |
| 29. Strong is an adjective butis a noun. | | | |
| <i>a- strength</i> | <i>b- strongest</i> | <i>c- stronger</i> | <i>d- stream</i> |
| 30. Every year, the cells under the bark of a treeand become new wood. | | | |
| <i>a- hard</i> | <i>b- harder</i> | <i>c- hardly</i> | <i>d- harden</i> |
| 31. This road is narrow for all today's traffic, so they are going toit. | | | |
| <i>a- wide</i> | <i>b- widen</i> | <i>c- width</i> | <i>d- wider</i> |
| 32. That old bridge is very weak. They will have to.....it soon | | | |
| <i>a- strong</i> | <i>b- strengthen</i> | <i>c- strength</i> | <i>d- strongen</i> |
| 33. My new trousers are too long , so my mother is going tothem. | | | |
| <i>a- shorten</i> | <i>b- shortage</i> | <i>c- shorts</i> | <i>d- short</i> |
| 34. This knife doesn't cut very well. I need toit. | | | |
| <i>a- sharp</i> | <i>b- sharpness</i> | <i>c- sharpen</i> | <i>d- sharper</i> |
| 35. That film is so popular that the queues to see iteveryday. | | | |
| <i>a- long</i> | <i>b- length</i> | <i>c- lengthen</i> | <i>d- lengther</i> |
| 36.is the liquid that carries food in trees . | | | |
| <i>a- sap</i> | <i>b- soap</i> | <i>c- sob</i> | <i>d- sop</i> |
| 37. The.....is a large wooden musical instrument with strings inside and black and white bars that produce sounds when you press them. | | | |
| <i>a- violet</i> | <i>b- guitar</i> | <i>c- piano</i> | <i>d- sax</i> |
| 38. We useto remove paint. | | | |
| <i>a- corrector</i> | <i>b- gas</i> | <i>c- Turpentine</i> | <i>d- kerosene</i> |
| 39. Car tyres and the bottoms of some shoes are made of | | | |
| <i>a- rubber</i> | <i>b- plastic</i> | <i>c- synthetic</i> | <i>d- gum</i> |
| 40. People puton their brush to clean their teeth. | | | |
| <i>a- tooth varnish</i> | <i>b- nail varnish</i> | <i>c- tooth brush</i> | <i>d- toothpaste</i> |
| 41. Coal, gas and oil are kinds of | | | |
| <i>a- materials</i> | <i>b- wood</i> | <i>c- furniture</i> | <i>d- fuel</i> |
| 42. Beds, chairs and cupboards are | | | |
| <i>a- materials</i> | <i>b- wood</i> | <i>c- furniture</i> | <i>d- fuel</i> |

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Car tyres and the bottoms of some shoes are made from rubber.
2. Goats and other animals can die trees by damaging the bark.
3. He is capable to reading and writing English..
4. It is possible to inculcate the age of a tree.
5. It is ten metres longly.
6. Park is the hard outside part of the tree.
7. Sap is used to making rubber.
8. Some poor countries suffer from food shortness.
9. The cells below the bark firm new wood every year.
10. The climate today is so cold. I can't go out.
11. The more air there is in a year, the wider the tree rings are.
12. The storm made a lot of damage.
13. The tallest tree is among two and three thousand years old.
14. The tree is 120 metres high.
15. The tree's leaves help it to take off light from the sun.
16. There are many things that are made of trees.
17. They can exact a very thin piece of wood.
18. This cream contains expands from several plants.
19. This road contacts Assiut with Fayoum.
20. Trees can protect us from local warming.
21. Trees help to increase pollution.

22. Tubes carry water from the bark to the leaves.
23. Turpentine is used as a paint mover.
24. We can make paper down of wood.
25. We need wood from trees for demolishing houses.
26. What do you refer for?
27. Wood can be used as a fuel for cooking and heating.

Translate into Arabic:

Poverty and social problems may lead some children to end up living in the streets. Sooner or later, street children will turn to a life of crime. The whole society should help these children grow up to become good citizens.

Every year Egypt celebrates the international Child's Day in November. Prizes are given to children who successfully take part in the "Reading for All" competition. Creative children in the different branches of knowledge are honoured.

Hospital patients have been shown to recover from surgery more quickly when their hospital room offered a view of trees. The strong ties between people and trees are most evident in the resistance of community residents to removing trees to widen streets.

Translate into English:

- يجب أن نستفيد من تجارب الآخرين في الصناعة و التكنولوجيا.

- زيادة ثاني أكسيد الكربون في الغلاف الجوي هي السبب الرئيسي للاحتباس الحراري.

- يهدد التلوث حياة الجنس البشري علي سطح الكرة الأرضية.

- تعتبر الاشجار اقدم و اضعف النباتات علي الارض.

- ان قطع الغابات ذو اثر خطير علي البيئة.

- تواجه البيئة مخاطر عديدة بسبب سوء استغلال للموارد الطبيعية.

Grammar

1-Zero Conditional

→ If + present simple + , + present simple
→ present simple + If + present simple

- تعبر هذه الحالة عن حقيقة ثابتة لا تتغير ولا ترتبط بزمن معين مثل الحقائق العلمية و الحقائق الاخرى المسلم بها:

- If you heat ice, it melts.
- Streets become wet if it rains.
- If water is frozen, it turns into ice.
- If we mix red and green, we get orange.
- لا بد ان تكون الحقيقة عامة و ليست خاصة و اذا كانت الحقيقة خاصة نستخدم الحالة الاولى :
- If you heat the ice in this pan, it will melt.
- Streets will become wet if it rains tonight.
- يمكن استخدام (when) بدلا من (if) في الحالة الصفرية:
- When you heat ice, it melts.
- Streets become wet when it rains.

2-First Conditional

- If + present simple , → +subj. + will/may/ can/ must/should/ might+inf.....
 → subj. + will/may/ can/ must/should/ might+inf.... → If + present simple

- تعبر الحالة الشرطية الاولى امكانية حقيقية لحدوث شيء في المستقبل تتوفر شروط حدوثه:

IF	Condition الشرط	Result النتيجة	Possibility الموقف/الامكانية
If	Ola gets good marks,	she will go to university.	=If the condition is met, then she definitely will go.
If	Ola gets good marks,	she may go to university.	=The speaker is not sure .
If	Ola gets good marks,	she should go to university.	=The speaker is expressing his or her opinion, giving advice.
If	Ola gets good marks,	she can go to university.	=This means that it is possible.
If	Ola gets good marks,	she could go to university.	=This means that it is possible, but not that likely.
If	Ola gets good marks,	she might go to university.	=This means that it is possible, but not that likely.
If	Ola gets good marks,	she must go to university.	=The speaker is expressing his or her strong opinion, giving strong advice.

- وقد تعبر هذه الحالة عن موقف ربما يكون حقيقي في المضارع:

- If you are hungry, I'll get you a sandwich.
- يمكن ان تكون جملة جواب الشرط في صيغة الامر لاعطاء الامر المشروط :
- If Ali phones, tell him to meet me at the cinema.
- If you meet the big boss, ask him for higher salaries.
- لاحظ انه يمكن استخدام (it is + adj. + to + inf.) في جملة جواب الشرط:
- If I find a good flat, it is easy to get married. - It is difficult to breathe if you climb Mount Everest.

بدائل أداة الشرط (If)

- أولا : يمكن استخدام الكلمات الآتية بدلا من (If) ويليهما جملة مع مراعاة معنى كل أداة:

- بشرط أن (that) providing - في حالة حدوث (that) in the event - في حالة (in case) - فقط لو only if
 سواء أو لا Whether.....or not - طالما as long as - بشرط ان provided(that)

- I'll attend the party provided that he invites me.
- I'll lend you the money as long as you promise to pay it back soon.
- He will travel abroad in case he gets the passport.
- She will pass the test only if she studies hard.

- ثانيا : يمكن استخدام الكلمات الآتية بدلا من (If) ويليهما (n. / v.ing) :

→ In case of في حالة / With بـ / By بـ + noun/ v. ing.....

- In case of getting his passport, he will travel abroad.
- She will pass the test with / by studying hard.

→ Unless = Except if = If not + جملة

- You will be late if you don't hurry. = You will be late unless you hurry.
- = You will be late except if you hurry.

→ Without (But for) + noun/ v. ing.....

- Without (But for) hurrying, you will be late.
- It is difficult to breathe if you climb Mount Everest.

حذف أداة الشرط (If) في الحالة الاولى

- يمكن استخدام (should) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الشرطية الاولى كالتالي:

→ Should + subj. + inf....., → subj. + will + inf.....

- Should she study hard, she will pass the test.
- Should he get his passport, he will travel abroad.

3-Second Conditional

→ If + Past simple, → subj. + would/could/might + inf....
→ subj. + would/could/might + inf... → If + Past simple

- تعبر الحالة الثانية عن موقف غير محتمل أو شيء تخيلي في المضارع:

- If I had a million dollars, I would buy a big house.
= I would buy a big house if I had a million dollars.
- If he liked milk, he would drink this glass.
- If I were a bird, I could fly.
- يمكن أن تعبر الحالة الثانية أحيانا عن شيء مستحيل:
- If dogs had wings, they would be able to fly.
- يمكن استخدام (was/were) مع المفرد:
- If I (was/were) a millionaire, I'd build a big hospital.
- If she (was/were) healthy, she could help her mum.
- It is difficult to breathe if you climb Mount Everest.
- تستخدم الحالة الثانية أيضا للتعبير عن النصيحة:
- If I were you, I'd help poor people.
- If I were you, I wouldn't waste my time.
- لاحظ أن الصيغة السابقة تستخدم أيضا للتخيل:
- If I were a car, I'd like to be a Mercedes.
- If she were a boy, she wouldn't be more brave.

بدائل أداة الشرط (If)

- أولا : يمكن استخدام الكلمات الآتية بدلا من (If) ويليهما جملة مع مراعاة معنى كل أداة:

- only if فقط لو
- in case في حالة
- in the event (that) في حالة حدوث
- providing (that) بشرط أن
- provided (that) بشرط أن
- Whether.....or not أو لا سواء

- I'd attend the party only if he invited me.
- He would travel abroad in the event (that) he got the passport.
- She would pass the test in case she studied hard.

- ثانيا : يمكن استخدام الكلمات الآتية بدلا من (If) ويليهما (n. / v.ing) :

→ In case of في حالة / With بـ / By بـ + noun/ v. ing.....

- In case of getting his passport, he would travel abroad.
- She would pass the test with / by studying hard.

→ Unless = Except if = If not + جملة

- You would be late if you didn't hurry. = You would be late unless you hurried.
- = You would be late except if you hurried.

→ Without / But for / If it weren't for + noun/ v. ing.....

- Without (But for) hurrying, you would be late.

- تحل (If it were not for+V. ing /n.) محل (But for - without) في الحالة الثانية:

→ If it were not for + v.ing/n... → subj.+ Would + inf. ...

- But for (Without) her cleverness, she would get low marks.

= If it weren't for her cleverness, she would get low marks.

حذف أداة الشرط (If) في الحالة الثانية

1- يمكن ان تحذف (if) و تبدأ الجملة بـ (were) يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) :

→ Were+ subj. / obj. + to+ inf....., → subj. / obj. + would+inf.....

- If he worked hard, he would succeed. = Were he to worked hard, he would succeed.

2- وإذا كانت (were) فعل أساسي في الجملة تأتي مكان (if):

→ Were+ subj. / obj., → subj. / obj. + would+inf.....

- If I were tall, I would play basketball. = Were I tall, I would play basketball.

3- تحل Had محل If في الحالة الثانية ويليه اسم بشرط أن تكون فعلا اساسي للجملة :

→ Had+ subj., → subj. / obj. + would+inf.....

- If I had a million dollars, I would buy a big house.

= Had I a million dollars, I would buy a big house.

4- يمكن استخدام (should) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الشرطية الاولى كالتالي:

→ Should + subj. + inf....., → subj.+ would+inf.....

- Should I have a million dollars, I would buy a big house.

3-Third Conditional

If + Past perfect → subj. + (would/could/might) have + PP...

subj. + (would/could/might) have + PP... → If + Past perfect

-تستخدم الحالة الثالثة للتعبير عن احداث وقعت في الماضي و بالتالي فهي شرط مستحيل الحدوث و تستخدم للانتقاد او التعبير عن الندم:

- If you had driven more carefully, you would not have had an accident.

- If we had played a little better, we could have won the game.

- You could have bought a computer if you had saved your money.

- يمكن أن تأتي (Had) بدلا من (if) :

- Had you driven more carefully, you would not have had an accident.

- Had you played a little better, we could have won the game.

- تحل (If it hadn't been for+V. ing /n.) محل (But for - without) في الحالة الثالثة:

If it hadn't been for + v.ing/n... → subj.+ Would + inf.

- Without (But for) his help, I would have failed.

= If it hadn't been for his help, I would have failed.

ملاحظات على الجمل الشرطية

2- لاحظ ان جملة جواب الشرط هي الجملة الرئيسية و هي التي يتكون منها السؤال:

- If she wins the prize, she will buy a camera.

- Will she buy a camera if she wins the prize? - What will she do if she wins the prize?

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d :

7. If the bark is badly damaged , the tree
a- die b- will die c- dies d- shall die
8. Yousee the rings if you cut the tree down.
a- could b- can c- would d- should
9. If there's a lot of rain during the year, the rings quiet wide.
a- are b- would be c- will be d- shall be
10. If it's a dry year, the ringsnarrower.
a- be b- will be c- are d- have been
11.water is boiled , it turns into vapour.
a- While b- Because c- When d- Although
12. If those goatsthe bark on my trees, the trees will die.
a- had eaten b- are eating c- ate d- eat
13. If water freezes , Itinto ice.
a- will turn b- is turning c- turns d- turned
14. If people don't get enough food , theyill.
a- will become b- would become c- become d- would have become
15. If itraining for much longer , the will flood.
a- goes on b- went on c- had gone on d- will go on
16. If the farmer's fields get very dry this summer , hethem.
a- irrigates b- will irrigate c- would irrigate d- irrigated
17. If the wind is very strong, ita lot of damage .
a- would do b- will do c- would have done d- did
18. If there is a sandstorm tonight, all buildingsdusty .
a- would be b- are c- will be d- be
19. If you mix yellow and blue , yougreen.
a- will get b- get c- would get d- got
20. If you don't water these plants soon, they
a- will die b- die c- would die d- would have died
21. If you heat ice, it
a- will melt b- would melt c- melts d- would have melted
22. If scientists study the rings of trees, theyinformation about our climate in the past.
a- could find b- can find c- would find d- would have found
23. If you pick those apples now, theytaste very sweet.
a- won't b- don't c- wouldn't d- didn't
24. If you leave now , youcatch the train.
a- would b- will c- ought to d- should
25. If a tree has deep roots, itover in strong winds.
a- wouldn't have fallen b- doesn't fall c- wouldn't fall d- won't fall
26. waterif the temperature is zero or below.
a- freezes b- freeze c- will freeze d- would freeze
27. If you throw that stone , youa window.
a- break b- will break c- would break d- have broken
28. I will get a headache if Itoo long the computer.
a- spend b- will spend c- would spend d- spent
29. If she trains hard , shenext week's race.
a- wins b- will win c- would win d- won
30. If you will mix red and white , youpink.
a- get b- will get c- would get d- got
31. If you practise a sport, youin the sports team.
a- gets b- will get c- would get d- got
 If you work hard , youthe first.
a- will be b- are c- would be d- shall be
32. I want to make tea the English way .whatI do ?

a- will

b- can

c- would

d- should

33. It is a goodto wait for three or four minutes-the tea tastes better if you wait.

a- thought

b- thinking

c- idea

d- way

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Don't worry if I was late tonight.
2. He can stay with me provided he agreed to help with the housework.
3. Hurry up! If we don't hurry, we'd be late
4. I will tell you if I saw anything unusual.
5. I would have been angry if it happens again.
6. If he arrive early, he will catch the bus.
7. If he will be sick, he had better go to bed.
8. If I felt tired, I will go to bed.
9. If I found any money at school, I will take it to the teacher.
10. If metals heat, they expand.
11. If she ran all the way, she'll get there in time.
12. If she trains hard, she wins next week's race.
13. If she works hard, she earns more money.
14. If the bark of the tree was badly damaged, the tree dies.
15. If there was a lot of rain during the year, the rings are quite wide.
16. If they didn't come soon, I'm not going to wait.
17. If you heat ice, it freezes.
18. If you throw that stone, you break a window.
19. If you will mix red and white, you get pink.
20. It's raining hard. We get wet if we go out.
21. Metal floats if it puts in water.
22. The dog doesn't attack you if you sit quite still.
23. Unless you don't wear boots, you may get bitten by snakes.
24. Water will freeze if the temperature is zero or below.
25. We see the whole match if we leave now.
- 26.

Test 6

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

1. A friend asks you how to switch on TV.
2. A friend wants to know the best way to keep fit.
3. Ask your teacher for how to study English vocabulary.
4. You want some instructions from a friend about how you can use the internet.
- 5.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language each of the following two min-dialogues:

1. A: Can I get some information about restaurants where I can have my meals?
B: Certainly sir. What kind of restaurants? A: Not expensive ones. But not cheap either.

Place: - Speaker A:..... - Speaker B:..... - Function:

- 2 A: Can I help you, sir? B: Yes, please, I want lead – free petrol.
A: How many liters, Sir? B: 20, please

Place: - Speaker A:..... - Speaker B:..... - Function:

B- Vocabulary and structures

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The bark protects the tubes which carry water and salts from the.....underground to the leaves.

a- branches	b- trunks	c- roots	d- seeds
-------------	-----------	----------	----------
2. He went to the dentist tothe bad tooth that caused the pain.

a- extract	b- plant	c- set	d- push
------------	----------	--------	---------

3. The innerof the wheel must be filled with air.
a-cylinder b-tube c- vessel d-pipe
4. Parents do their best totheir children from dangers.
a-by b- on c-from d-to
5. He dependshis brother's help to get his needs.
a- to b- on c- for d- in
6.you tell me how to switch on the TV set, please?
a- Would b- Should c- shall d- Must
7. The earthquakea lot of old houses last week.
a- supported b- mended c- repaired d- damaged
8. He didn't obey the,so he was punished.
a- instruction b- instructions c- construction d- constructions
9.water boils , it becomes steam
a- while b- when c- Because d- even if
10. If a piece of metalin water, it sinks .
a- put b- is put c- puts d- has put
11. You will be late for workyou don't take a taxi.
a- unless b- if c- so d- while
12. If a volcano erupts, itdust into atmosphere.
a- will send b- sent c- would send d- sends
13. If it rains tomorrow, Ito the library.
a- go b- will go c- won't go d- would go
14.you work hard, you won't pass the exam.
a- if b- unless c- providing d- as long as
15. If the ice caps melt , the sea level
a- will rise b- would rise c- has risen d- rose
16. If metal is heated , it
a- will expand b- expand c- has expanded d- expands

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1.He works hardly.
- 2.If people don't get enough food , they will become ill.
- 3.If you go to Sharm El sheikh, you spend a wonderful holiday.
- 4.In short we need more money.
- 5.We make paper into wood from trees.
- 6.What do you think I ought do next?
- 7.

C- Reading

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions

Trees alter the environment in which we live by moderating climate, improving air quality, conserving water, and harboring wildlife. Climate control is obtained by moderating the effects of sun, wind, and rain. Radiant energy from the sun is absorbed or deflected by leaves on deciduous trees in the summer and is only filtered by branches of deciduous trees in winter. We are cooler when we stand in the shade of trees and are not exposed to direct sunlight. In winter, we value the sun's radiant energy. Therefore, we should plant only small or deciduous trees on the south side of homes.

Wind speed and direction can be affected by trees. The more compact the foliage on the tree or group of trees, the greater the influence of the windbreak. The downward fall of rain, sleet, and hail is initially absorbed or deflected by trees, which provides some protection for people, pets, and buildings. Trees intercept water, store some of it, and reduce storm runoff and the possibility of flooding.

Dew and frost are less common under trees because less radiant energy is released from the soil in those areas at night.

Temperature in the vicinity of trees is cooler than that away from trees. The larger the tree, the greater the cooling. By using trees in the cities, we are able to moderate the heat-island effect caused by pavement and buildings in commercial areas.

Air quality can be improved through the use of trees, shrubs, and turf. Leaves filter the air we breathe by removing dust and other particulates. Rain then washes the pollutants to the ground. Leaves absorb carbon dioxide from the air to form carbohydrates that are used in the plant's structure and function. In this process, leaves also absorb other air pollutants—such as ozone, carbon monoxide, and sulfur dioxide—and give off oxygen.

By planting trees and shrubs, we return to a more natural, less artificial environment. Birds and other wildlife are attracted to the area. The natural cycles of plant growth, reproduction, and decomposition are again present, both above and below ground. Natural harmony is restored to the urban environment.

a) Give short answers to the following questions:

- 1 How can trees improve the environment?
2. What is the effect of trees on air?
- 3- What is the relation between the size of tree and temperature?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

4. Dew and frost are less common under trees as
a) heat is released from the sun. b) Energy is released from the soil.
c) energy released at night d) energy released from soil at night .
5. The word "deciduous" means
a) losing leaves in autumn b) evergreen c) takes decisions d) small

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many experts believe there are too many people in the world. Unless there are big changes in the way people think about the number of children they should have, the world's population will double in 25 years .there will be more than 20 cities with populations greater than 20 million. Now there is only one. Some people- who do not understand what ' overpopulation ' means point to countries such as Australia-and say, "There is plenty of room there." Although most of Australia is unpopulated, and much of it is thinly populated; there are reasons for this. Firstly, much of the land is desert and waterless, and secondly, even the land that is not desert is not suitable for anything, not even growing grass. Another major problem We shall have to face as the world's population grows, is a shortage of energy. We are using up coal and oil and when they have been used up, we shall have to find something to take their place. It is true that we can make electricity from the heat of the sun and moving water, but we do not yet have the technology to do this in a big way. Perhaps, the biggest problem we shall have when the world's population doubles will be pollution. The air we breathe is already badly polluted.

a) Give short answers to the following questions:

- 1- How many present cities have a population of over 20 million?
- 2- According to the passage, why is a great area of Australia unpopulated?
- 3- Mention two problems we will face as a result of overpopulation.

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4) The underlined word "they" refers to.....
a- coal and oil b- the world's population
c- experts d- population in Australia
- 5) We do not make electricity from the heat of the sun on a large scale because.....
a) We don't have the required money. b) it is harmful.
c) We don't have the technology needed for that. d) it is just impossible.

D- The Novel

7) (A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Does the Princess know that this is not the real King? What does she say about him?
- 2- Why do Rassendyll and Sapt need a permit to leave the city?
- 3- How do they get a permit from the King?
- 4- What does Fritz do while Sapt and Rassendyll go to Zenda?
- 5-

B) Read following quotation and answer the questions:

"You mustn't try too hard. I'm not sure it was a good idea to ride alone through the old town. Duke Michael won't like it if you become too popular with his people, you know."

- 1- Who says this to whom?
- 2- Where and when is this said?
- 3- Why did the person ride alone through the old town and why won't Duke Michael like it if the person becomes too popular?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1- Fritz thinks it is a good idea for Rassendyll "the King" to become popular with the people.
- 2- Sapt tells Fritz that he may let Michael into the King's bedroom.

8. Write a paragraph about 100 words about

Trees are important for man and environment .

F- Translation

9. a) Translate into Arabic :

One of the environmental problems is the slight rise in the temperature of the earth .As the world becomes hotter, there could be serious changes in weather and widespread flooding as water level in seas and oceans rises .The heavy rains in various parts of the world this winter may be considered a warning to man to stop polluting the atmosphere.

b) Translate into English:

1- زيادة الأسعار المستمر تؤثر تأثيرا مباشرا على حياة الكثيرين وخاصة محدودى الدخل.

2- تشجع الحكومة الصناعات المحلية حتى تستطيع أن تستغني عن كثير من الواردات التي تحتاج الى عملية صعبة

Continuous rising prices	ارتفاع الاسعار المستمر	Level	مستوي
Do without	يستغني عن	Local industries	صناعات محلية
Fixed / limited income	دخل محدود	Serious changes	تغيرات خطيرة
Flooding	فيضان	Slight rise	ارتفاع طفيف
Hard currency	عمله صعبة	Warning	تحذير
Have a direct effect	له تأثير مباشر	Widespread	واسع الإنتشار

Unit 7 – Great Engineering

a lot newer	أجدد كثيرا	eventually	أخيرا	raise	يرفع
amazing	مذهل	finish	ينهى	rays	أشعة
amazing works	أعمال مذهلة	flood	يفيض	reconstruction	إعادة البناء
ancient	قديم	giant	عملاق	re-open	يعيد افتتاح
attack	يهاجم / هجوم	government	الحكومة	rescue	ينقذ
base	قاعدة / سفح	great	عظيم	rescue operation	عملية إنقاذ
carry	يحمل	great wall of china	سور الصين العظيم	ride	يركب / يمتطي
carve	ينحت	hold	يمسك	rise	يرتفع
certain times	أوقات معينة	illuminate	ينير	rising sun	الشمس المشرقة
cheap	رخيص	illumination	إنارة	safe	يوفر
city centre	وسط المدينة	improve	يحسن	save money	يوفر مال
cliff	جرف صخري	invest	يستثمر	site	موقع
combination	خليط - مزيج	investment	استثمار	sound like	يشبه
commuter	المسافر يوميا إلى العمل	investor	مستثمر	station	محطة
complete	يكمل	lift	يرفع	statue	تمثال
concrete base	قاعدة خرسانية	line	خط	stop attackers	يمنع المهاجمين
consider	يعتبر	make a plan	يدبر خطة	structure	بناء
construction	بناء	massive	ضخم	temple	معبد
cost	يتكلف / تكلفة	modern	حديث	the middle east	الشرق الأوسط
diameter	قطر	monuments	آثار	the way to	الطريق إلى
dig	يحفر	Nile valley	وادي النيل	the whole thing	الشيء بأكمله
draw up a plan	يرسم خطة	on horse backs	على ظهر الخيل	tourism	السياحة
drilling machine	آلة حفر	Open (v / adj.)	يفتح - مفتوح	tourist	سائح
emperor	إمبراطور	pick	يلتقط	tunnel	نفق / يحفر نفق
empire	إمبراطورية	plan	خطة	underground	مترو الأنفاق
engine	محرك - موتور	position	موقع - يقع	unthinkable	غير معقول
engineer	مهندس	progress	تقدم - تطور	weigh	يزن
engineering	الهندسة	project	مشروع	weight	الوزن
engineering project	مشروع هندسي	railway	نظام سكة حديد	whether ---- or	سواء أو

Expressions

a journey on the underground	رحلة بالمترو	foreign investment	الاستثمار الأجنبي
a massive project	مشروع هائل	geographical location	موقع جغرافي
a work of engineering	عمل هندسي	get to	يصل إلى
accessible to	متاح لـ	in the same position	في نفس المكان أو الموقع
attractive to	جذاب لـ	infrared rays	الأشعة تحت الحمراء
be attached to	متصل بـ	investment opportunities	فرص الاستثمار
be made out of	مصنوع من	keep the attackers out	يبعد المهاجمين
building construction	إنشاء المباني	light up	ينير / يضيء
building materials	مواد بناء	make a plan	يضع خطة
building site	موقع البناء	massive efforts	جهود هائلة
ceramic tiles	بلاط سيراميك	provide water for agriculture	يوفر الماء للزراعة
Connect... with	يوصل .. بـ	reach a length of	يصل طوله إلى
cut into a particular shape	يقطع في شكل معين	related to	مرتبط بـ
cut into pieces	يقطع إلى قطع صغيرة	remove obstacles	يزيل العقبات
cut into rock	يحفر في الصخر	road construction	إنشاء الطرق
Divide... into	يُقسم إلى	save them a lot of money	يوفر لهم كثير من المال
dominate the headlines	تتصدر عناوين الأخبار	take pride in	يفخر بـ
encourage investments	يشجع الاستثمارات	ultraviolet rays	الأشعة فوق البنفسجية
environmental pollution	التلوث البيئي	with a diameter of	بقطر يبلغ

Words & antonyms

ancient	قديم	modern	حديث
build	يبني	demolish	يهدم
catch (the train)	يلحق بـ	miss (the train)	يفوته
different	مختلف	the same	نفس الشيء
hesitant	متردد	confident	واثق
illuminate	يضيء	darken	يُظلم
massive	هائل	tiny	ضئيل الحجم
maximum	أقصى / الحد الأقصى	minimum	أدنى / الحد الأدنى
merits	مزايا	demerits	عيوب
raise	يرفع	lower	يخفض
save	يوفر	waste	يبدد
unthinkable	غير محتمل / مستحيل	likely	محتمل

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adj.	
attract	يجذب	attraction	جذب	attractive	جذاب
deduce	يستنتج	deduction	استنتاج	deductive	استنتاجي
forget	ينسى	forgetfulness	النسيان	forgetful	كثير النسيان
illuminate	يضيء	illumination	إضاءة	illuminating	مضيء
repeat	يكرر	repetition	تكرار	repetitive	متكرر
tour	يقوم بجولة سياحية	tourism	السياحة	tourist	سياحي
		tourist	سائح		

Definitions

commuter	someone who regularly travels to work, especially a long distance	المسافر يوميا إلى العمل
diameter	a line that goes from one side of a circle to the other and passes through the centre	قطر
engineering	the work of designing the way roads, bridges, machines, etc. are built	الهندسة
investment	something that you buy because it will be valuable or useful later	استثمار
base	a low hard surface on which other things can be built/the lowest part or surface of something	قاعدة / أساس
carve	to cut something, especially stone or wood, into a particular shape	ينحت
cliff	a high steep rock or piece of land	جرف صخري
illuminate	to make light shine on something	ينير / يضيء
monument	a large structure that is built to remind people of an important event or famous person	أثر
position	put something or someone in a place	موقع - يقع
raise	to move or lift something to a higher position	يرفع
rays	of light or energy from the sunعناشع narrow beams	اشعة
unthinkable	impossible to imagine or accept	غير معقول

Language Notes

carved into منحوت في

- The temple was carved into cliff.

carved out of منحوت من

-The statue is carved out of wood.

- commute from .. to .. / commute between .. and ... يسافر يوميا الى مكان العمل ومنه ...

- She commutes from Banha to Cairo.

- The judge commuted the fine to 2,000 dollars.

-commute يُخفف العقوبة

decide to + inf يقرر	- She decided to go out.
decide on + noun يحدد . يقرر	- You have to decide on your goal in life.
decide that + sentence يقرر	- He decided that you should attend.

site موقع أثرى / بناء	- Abu Simble is the site of two temples south of Aswan.
site موقع على شبكة الإنترنت	-You can apply for the job on our website.

raise (d) + مفعول	يربى حيوانات / يجمع مال / يرفع
- Raise your hand if you want to answer.	- He raised a lot of money a broad.
- His uncle raises cattle and sheep.	

rise - rose - risen	يرتفع / تشرق / ينهض ليحيى شخص / يستيقظ (بدون مفعول)
- The sun rises in the east.	- I rise at 6.00 in the morning.
- When the visitor entered, all students rose.	- Taxis fare have risen

arise arose arisen	يزيد عن الحد / يحتدم / ينشأ (بدون مفعول)
- A lot of problems arise because of misunderstanding.	

arouse (مفعول) aroused	يثير / يوقظ
- His behaviour aroused the suspicion of the police.	- Don't arouse the baby.

conquer يغزو (عدو أو بلد)	-The Normans conquered England in 1066.
occupy يحتل (مكان أو بلد)	- The capital has been occupied by the rebel army.
Raid يشن (غارة)	-Villages along the border are regularly raided.

الصفات المنتهية بـ ed تعبرغالباً عن أشخاص	
- I'm very tired today.	- I'm interested in reading books.
أما الصفات المنتهية بـ ing تعبرغالباً عن أشياء	
- Shopping is very tiring.	- I watched a very interesting film yesterday.
adjectives (ing)	ويمكن أن تأتي الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) مع العاقل إذا كان الشخص هو الذي يسبب هذه الصفة.
- He is boring.	(It means that he causes boredom)

هذه الكلمات إذا جاء قبلها عدد محدد تكون مفرداً أما إذا لم يسبقها عدد محدد وتشير لكميات كبيرة تكون جمعاً.	
Hundred – thousand – million – billion - trillion	
- His salary is 500 hundred pounds a month.	
- Thousands of people watched the match on TV yesterday.	

realize يدرك	- I'm sorry, I didn't realize that it was so late.
achieve يحقق	- He achieved most of his ambitions.
reach (goal – aim – target) يصل إلى	- He reached his goal after long hours of hard work

lose يخسر . يفقد شئ	- Our national team lost the last match.
Miss يفقد شخص . يفوته مواصلات	- I missed my uncle very much.
	- He missed the train as he got up late.

proud of (something / someone) فخور بـ	- Her parents are very proud of her.
proud to do something فخور أن	- I am proud to receive this award.
take pride in يفتخر بـ	- She takes a great pride in her work.

keep			
keep	يحافظ على / يربى / يظل	keep off	لا تقترب / يبعد
keep at	يواطب على	keep out	يتجنب . يحجز
keep away from	يبعد عن	keep pace with	يساير . يواكب
Keep back	يعوق	keep to	يلتزم
keep down	يسيطر على	keep up	يستمر
keep in	يحبس	keep up with	يساير . يواكب

cut

cut	يقطع	cut out	تتوقف آلة
cut down	يقلل . يختصر . يقطع شجرة	cut to size	يقطع حسب المقاس
cut off	يوقف إمداد	cut up	يمزق

work

work against	يعمل ضد	work on (someone)	يحاول أن يقطع الشخص
work for	يعمل لحساب	work on (something)	يصنع أو يصلح أو يحسن الشئ
work (himself) up	يتضايق أو يغضب من شئ	work out	يحل -حسب- يتدرب بانتظام
work in \ into	يمزج	work up	يحسن أو يطور أو ينمي
work in someone's favour	يعمل لصالحه - يفيد	work with	يعمل مع . يساعد

لاحظ استخدام الاسم بعد حرف الجر in فيما يلي:

- 7 metres in height -5 inches in length - 3 centimetres in depth

وفي حالة عدم وجود حرف جر نستخدم الصفة

- 7 metres high - 5 inches long - 3 centimetres deep

-لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية :

-BCE = Before the Christian Era. = BC (Before Christ) (قبل الميلاد)

-CE = Common Era / the Christian Era = AD (Anno Domini) بعد الميلاد

- لاحظ أن BC تكتب بعد التاريخ لكن AD تكتب قبله :

- This mummy dates back to 3500 BC. - The roman invasion took place in AD 340.

mass (n.)	كتلة - حجم - شامل	-One litre of water has a mass of one kilogram.
massive (adj.)	ضخم	-A massive block of rock fell down the mountain.
The masses (n.)	الجمهير	-He failed to win the support of the masses.
Mess (n.)	فوضى	-Don't make a mess in the kitchen.

Base (n.)	قاعدة - مكان إقامة	-It is easy to fasten the monitor onto the base.
basis (n.)	اساس - سبب	- There is no legal basis for his claims.
Basic (adj.)	اساسي - رئيسي	-The basic problem is very simple.

Nearly = approximately = about = roughly (adv.) تقريبا - حوالى

- The underground carries nearly three million people every day.

-يمكن تأكيد صفة المقارنة بين اثنين بإضافة.

(Much - slightly - a bit- a lot - greatly - a little ...)

- My car is much faster than yours. -This flat is slightly more expensive than our new flat.

- لاحظ ما يلي

The first line opened in 1982 = the first line was opened in 1982.

-lose (v) يفقد / يضيع / يخسر -loss فقدان / خسارة -loose غير محكم / غير مثبت جيدا / مفكوك

-illuminate يضيء / ينير - The streets were illuminated with coloured lights.

-eliminate يمحو / يزيل / يستبعد / يهزم

- Our team was eliminated in the first round. - We should try to eliminate illiteracy in Egypt.

-Size حجم - I was amazed at the size of their garden.

-Diameter قطر - The diameter of the Earth is about 13,000 km.

-Know = have information about something يعرف

- There are instructions telling you everything you need to know. - I have known him for years.

-recognize يتعرف علي / يعترف بـ (رسمياً)

- I didn't recognize you in your uniform. - British medical qualifications are recognized in Canada.

- Listen to يستمع أو يصغي بانتباه -He listened to the news on the radio.
- Hear يسمع بدون قصد -She heard some noise outside. -Raise your voice, please. I can't hear you.
- Cost يكلف - How much does a house like that cost in America?
- Pay يدفع - Can I pay by credit card?
- Charge يفرض أو يطلب ثمنا -The restaurant charged us 40 pounds for the meal.
- historic هام من الناحية التاريخية
- historical هام من الناحية التاريخية / مرتبط بدراسة التاريخ
- Historic / historical monuments آثار تاريخية
- Historical research أبحاث في التاريخ

Communication Skills

Language to deduce information

- Why do you think (they built the Suez Canal)?	- I think they must have (built it to make travelling by sea easier).
- How do you think (they built the Suez Canal)?	- Well, they might have used (thousands of workers).
- What problems and difficulties do you think there were in (building...)?	- I'm sure it can't have been easy. - Surely, it must have cost a lot of money.

Exercises

Respond the following situations:

- Karim thought he had shut the gate to the field, but now the goats are all in the road.
- Leila took her driving test yesterday .Now she is looking unhappy.
- My friend told me the homework was on page 41, but there isn't a page 41.
- Someone asks you why the Pyramids were built.
- Why is everyone putting their umbrellas up?
- You suddenly find out that there is no money in your pocket. You make a deduction.
- Your brother asks you how they built the Great Wall of China.
- Your friend asks you why the table mountain cable car was built.
- Your friend phoned you several times, but you didn't answer.
- Your friend seems happy. He took the exam result yesterday.
- Your friend tells you that The Trans-Siberian Railway is the longest railroad in the world.
- Your teacher told you the Suez Canal took thousands of workers to dig it.

Mention the place , the speakers and the language each of the following two min-dialogues :

- 1- A: Excuse me. I need to find out about modern farming in Egypt for a university project.
B: All the information on agriculture is on the second floor.
A: Thank you. Can I take any of the books out?
B: Yes. Just bring them to the desk near the entrance.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

- 2 A: Do you remember what happened? B: No, I just remember waking up in the road.
A: How do you feel now? B: Not too bad. Will I have to stay here tonight?
A: We are not sure yet. We will have to check you have no broken bones.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

- 3 - A: My parents would like me to apply here. Would you recommend it? B: yes, definitely.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

- 4- A: Could you tell us why you would like to study here?
B: Your biology department has a very good reputation.
A: And if we accept you, What do you hope to do when you graduate?
B: Well, I would like to work for a food company.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

5- A: Your ticket and passport, please.

B: Here you are.

A: Would you like a window seat or an aisle seat?

B: A window seat, please.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

6 - A : Can I help you madam?

B : Two kilos of meat , please.

A : It is 135 pounds.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The way from here is to take an underground train.
a- long b- short c- expensive d- quickest
2. Cairo Metro is the underground railway system in Africa or the Middle East.
a- lonely B- alone c- only d- solo
3. It's newer than London or Paris System.
a- more b- a lot c- less d- most
4. The first line in 1989. It's about 44 kilometres long and goes from the Helwan to New El Marg.
a- was opened b- is opened c- opening d- opens
5. Cairo Metro must have made travelling around Cairo easier for....
a- commuters b- commutes c- communicators d- compensators
6. The metro must have people a lot of money and improved the journeys to work.
a- rescued B saved c- provided d- supplied
7. There are two lines in the metro system at the moment, but there are for six lines.
a- plans b- works c- hopes d- wishes
8. under the Nile can't have been easy.
a- Diving b- Sailing c- Swimming d- Tunnelling
9. They used a massive drilling machine called Nefertiti. It dug a tunnel with a of over eight meters.
a- monometer b- diameter c- trimetric d- hemi meter
10. The whole thing sounds like a engineering project. It can't have been cheap.
a- mass b- masses c- misses d- massive
11. We're very the underground, and it's considered to be one of the most modern underground systems in the world.
a- pride of b- ashamed of c- proud of d- shy of
12. The underground is an in Egypt's future as a centre for tourism and business.
a- investor b- investing c- investment d- investments
13. Egypt has many amazing ... of engineering, both ancient and modern.
a- works b- work c- establishments d- sites
14. Abu Simbel is the site of two temples which were a cliff in about 1250 BC.
a- built into b- made into c- carved into d- curved
15. The larger temple was so that at certain times of the year, the rays of the rising sun would illuminate the statues.
a- put b- positioned c- built d- constructed
16. The government decided to build Aswan High Dam. Thus, the Nile Valley would be and that Abu Simbel itself would be under water.
a- flooded b- watered c- dried d- dug
17. It was that Egypt should lose one of its most important monuments, so plans were made to rescue it.
a- thinkable b- unthinkable c- thoughtful d- thoughtless
18. The massive statues were into pieces which over 30 tonnes each.
a- weighed b- weighted c- weigh d- weightless
19. These pieces were raised over 60 metres up the cliff, where they were to a concrete base.
a- cut d- tied c- attached d- connected
20. Today, the temples, which were in 1968, are an amazing combination of ancient and modern engineering.
a- opened b- re-opening c- re-opened d- opening

21. Enemies were..... the rich towns of northern China.
a- attack b- attacking c- provoking d- retaking
22. The emperor decided tothe attacks out, so work on the Great Wall of China began in 220 BC .
a- preserving b- consecrating c- Leap d- keep
23. Eventually, the wall reached a length of 6400 km. It is the longestever built and was all made without machines.
a- super structure b- structure c- infrastructure d- inner structure
24. Its five-meter width isenough for soldiers to ride along on horses to stop attackers from climbing over the wall.
a- wide b- long c- high d- deep
25. My father studiedat university and has designed many important bridges
a- engineer b-engineering c- engine d- mechanism
26. Education is an / ain the future of a country and its young people
a- aim b- wish c- hope d- investment
27. Nearly four milliontravel to and from London every day.
a- travelers b- passengers c- commuters d-workers
28. The Great Wall of china was a/anproject which took hundreds of years to complete.
a- investment b- mass c- massive d- masses
29. That tunnel has aof 7.6 metres.
a- size b- volume c- width d- diameter
30. The verb of "engineering" is
a- engine b-engineer c- eugenics d- engines
31. "Massive" is an adjective, butis the noun.
a- masses b-mass c-miss d- mess
32. "Commuter" is a noun butis a verb.
a- communicate b- commute c- commit d- commute
33. "Investment" is a noun butis a verb.
a- investigate b- invest c- insist d- persist
34. The quickest way to get to the city centre is toan underground train.
a- come b- have c- take d- ride
35. A journey on the undergroundone pound.
a- costs b-pays c-worth d- takes up
36. People canmoney by travelling on the underground.
a- keep b- rescue c- safe d-save
37. The first line of the Paris Metro systemin 1900.
a- started b- opened c- ended d- finished
38.is a hard surface on which other things can be built.
a- basic b- bases c- base d- basis
39. Tois to cut stone or wood in a particular shape.
a- crave B carve c- curve d- carver
40. Tois to make light shine on something.
a- roommate b- illumine c- illuminate d- terminate
41. A large structure that is built to remind us of an important event or a famous person is a
a- manumit Monument c- memorial d- memory
The height of theis 25 metres.
a- way b- tunnel c-cliff d- route
42. The artistthe structure from a massive piece of stone.
a- curved b- craved c- carved d- covered
43. At night, bright lights alwaysin front of the palace.
a- lighten b-Light c- illuminate d- ammoniate
44. if you want to ask the teacher a question , you shouldyour hand.
a- rise b- arise c- arouse d- raise
45. The sphinx isnear the Pyramids of Giza.
a- Put b- positioned c- laid d- lie
46. The statue of the pharaoh is a famous ancient.....
a- memorial b- souvenir c- memory d- monument
47. The statue is built on a hardmade of concrete.
a- basis b- basic c- base d- bases

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1- A strong economy depends on a healthy manufacturing basic.

- 2- A transporter is someone who travels a long distance to work every day..
- 3- Egypt has many amazed works of engineering.
- 4- He infected his life savings in his daughter's business.
- 5- It was thinkable that Egypt should lose one of its most important monuments.
- 6- It was unthinking that she could be dead.
- 7- It's the only grounded railway system in Africa or the Middle East..
- 8- Keep away from the edge of the stiff - you might fall.
- 9- The Cairo underground line is 44 km length.
- 10- The earth is discriminated by the sun.
- 11- The emperor decided to keep the attacks away.
- 12- The explosion made a passive hole in the ground.
- 13- The funnel goes under the Nile.
- 14- The government has made a plan to rise taxes.
- 15- The Great Pyramid is about 150 metres height.
- 16- The Great Wall of China is 6,400 Km wide.
- 17- The Great Wall of china is the longest structure never built .
- 18- The Great Wall of China was built to keep the attackers of.
- 19- The statue was possessed at the entrance of the castle.
- 20- The street is 50 metres length.
- 21- The top of the wall is 5 m long.
- 22- The width of the tunnel is eight metres.
- 23- There are a lot of history monuments in Egypt.
- 24- They used a massive drill machine called Nefertiti.
- 25- This statue is built on a hard basis of concrete.
- 26- Trains carry near two million people every day.
- 27- We should stop people pollute the environment.

Translate into Arabic:

You can never live in isolation from others, so you have to be careful when you choose a home for the future. You will certainly be lucky to have good co-operative neighbours, but it is misery to live next door to neighbours from hell.

In 1954, the government decided to build Aswan High Dam. This meant that the Nile Valley would be flooded and that Abu Simbel itself would be under water. It was unthinkable that Egypt should lose one of its most important monuments, so plans were made to rescue it.

Translate into English:

- تكمن أهمية مترو القاهرة في انه قضى علي الاختناق المروري في القاهرة و وفر الوقت و المال و الجهد.

- يعتبر سور الصين العظيم اطول مقبرة علي مر التاريخ.

- حصلت مصر علي كأس الأمم الأفريقية ثلاث مرات متتالية، محققة بذلك إنجازا عظيما.

- لابد أن نعيد النظر في الخريطة السكانية لمصر ونشجع الناس علي الانتقال إلي المدن الجديدة.

-لا بد ان نهتم بتربية النشء علي القيم و الاخلاق الحميدة.

- تسعى الحكومة الي تطوير التعليم حتي يخدم سوق العمل .

Grammar

Making deductions الاستنتاج

Meaning	Present Deduction	Past Deduction
- I'm sure - I'm certain - I think - I believe - I imagine - Certainly - definitely - I suppose - Impossible	must + inf.	must have + p.p.
	-She wears a white coat and helps a doctor. She must be a nurse.	-Ahmed was unhappy yesterday. He must have lost the match against Ali.
	Can't + inf.	can't have + p.p.
-I'm not sure -I'm not certain - perhaps - It is probable -It is likely	may + inf.	may have + p.p.
	- I'm not sure where Yara is. She may be in the garden.	- I didn't see Omer at school today. He may have got up late. It's likely.
	might + inf.	might have + p.p.
-it is possible -I don't think so -I don't believe -I don't know	might + inf.	might have + p.p.
	- I don't know why he doesn't look happy. He might feel ill.	- I don't think he won the race. He might have lost it.

- يمكن استخدام could بدلا من may / might :

- She could be ill. -He could have been a doctor.

- لكن يمكن أن تعبر (could have + P.P.) أيضا عن شيء كان من الممكن حدوثه ولكنه لم يحدث:

-He hasn't visited us for a long time. He could have been busy.

= He may/might have been busy.

-He was able to do the job but he didn't = He could have done the job

- نستخدم الشكل الآتي للتعبير عن استحالة حدوث الشيء في الماضي :

- couldn't have + p.p.

- He couldn't have killed the man. He was in prison.

-أحيانا يمكن أن تعبر الجملة عن الاستمرار وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم:

- must / can't / may/ might / could+ be + V+ing

- What is Ali doing in his room?

- I'm not sure. He may be studying.

- must / can't / may/ might / could+ have been + V+ing

- What was Linda doing?

- She must have been working on her computer.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d :

- He's got a very good memory, he
a- must have forgotten b- can't have forgotten c- might have forgotten d- may have forgotten
- He is never usually late; hemissed his train.
a- must have b-can't have c-might have d- may have
- It is made of plastic, itcost a lot of money..

- | | | | |
|---------|---------------|---------|--------------|
| a- must | b- can't have | c- will | d- has to be |
|---------|---------------|---------|--------------|
- 4) I was out until midday, sheme this morning.
a- must ring b- can't have rung c- must have rung d- will have rung
- 5) The streets are covered in sand, therea sandstorm last night.
a- must be b- can't be c- might have been d- must have been
- 6) There are braches all over the ground, itwindy yesterday.
a- can't be b- might be c- must be d- must have been
- 7) Dinahave been at school yesterday .the list of the absent included her name.
a- must b- can't c- needn't d- mustn't
- 8) We don't know when earthquakes happen .Theypredicted.
a- were b- can't be c- have been d- had been
- 9) His bad exam resultshave frustrated his poor parents.
a- must b- should c- can't d- needn't
- 10) Theymad, the solution they gave is very reasonable.
a- must be B -can't be c- may be d- would be
- 11) Shefoolish she says she believes in magic.
a- can't be b- may be c- must have been d- must be
- 12) Thisbe his car. He is too poor to afford such an expensive vehicle
a- may b- can't c- must d- might
- 13) The streets are wet , itrained while we were in
a- must have b- can't have c- neednt have d- should have
- 14) What you are saying.....be true. I am sure it isn't.
a- may b- can't c- might d- must
- 15) I cannot find my eyeglasses. Ihave left them at home.
a- must b- can't c- may d- might
- 16) I don't know where my school bag is, mum.It isn't here. Youhave left it on the train.
a- might b- can't c- would d- can't have
- 17) Look, Hamid's keys are on the table. Hehave seen them when he left this morning.
a- must b- may c- can't d- should
- 18) I rang you this morning, but you didn't answer. Sorry , Ihave been asleep.
a- would b- will c- can't d- must
- 19) He has only been in the laboratory for ten minutes. Surely, hehave finished his experiment already.
a- wouldn't b- must c- can't d- won't
- 20) Ali fell off his bike this morning. Do you know if he ok? His mother says hehave broken his arm.
a- must b- can't c- should d- mustn't s
- 21) Everyone is putting their umbrellas up , itstarted raining.
a- can't have b- must have c- would have d- have
- 22) Leila took her driving test yesterday. Now she is looking very unhappy. Shefailed.
a- can't have b- will have c- would have d- must have
- 23) my friend told me the homework was on page 41, but there isn't page 41.hebeen mistaken.
a- can't b- must have c- may d- might
- 24) Karim thought he had shut the gate but the goats in the road. Heleft it open.
a- can't b- should c- must d- must have
- 25) I think this structure was built about 200 years ago. Ithave been very difficult .Those pieces of metal look incredibly heavy.
a- can't b- must c- might d- should
- 26) Do you think they made the pieces nearby or brought them from somewhere else? Theyhave brought them very far.
a- must b- can't c- would d- shall
- 27) They must have brought them by boat. No, theyhave brought them by boat .The boat would have sunk.
a- mustn't b- can c- may not d- can't

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1-A: Do you know where Hala is? B: No, I suppose she should have gone shopping.
- 2-A: What do you think of my theory? B: I'm not sure. You must be right.
- 3-Ali hasn't contacted me. He mustn't have got my message.
- 4-He can't be rich. He owns two cars and a large house.
- 5-He doesn't speak Arabic. He must be Egyptian.
- 6-He had to take a taxi; he can't have got up late.
- 7-He has got a villa and a car .He can't be rich.
- 8-He is a clever doctor, he must have been a bad student .

- 9- He must be ill. He eats like a horse.
- 10- He mustn't have seen the accident. He was ill in bed when it happened.
- 11- He never does any work, but he's always at the top of his class. He can't be very clever.
- 12- I am very uncertain, he must have been asleep.
- 13- I can't find the theatre tickets. They must fall out of my pocket.
- 14- I could go out but I didn't feel like it, so I stayed at home.
- 15- It is probable, he must have arrived late.
- 16- Many people like visiting Sharm EL sheikh. It may be a wonderful place.
- 17- Neither of them attended the meeting, didn't they?
- 18- She must be here. I know for certain that she's away on holiday.
- 19- She must have arrived yet. It's much too early.
- 20- She must have arrived. I'm not sure.
- 21- She rarely reads the papers, hasn't she?
- 22- She's been arrested for murder, isn't she?
- 23- There is no water in the bottle. He might have drunk it..
- 24- They dug the well a week ago, don't they?
- 25- They haven't lived here for very long. They must know many people.
- 26- Tom might have written this letter because it is in French and he doesn't know French.
- 27- You shouldn't park here. It is a "No parking area".
- 28- You've been travelling all day. You can't be tired.

Test 7

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

1. My friend told me the homework was on page 41, but there isn't a page 41.
2. Someone asks you why the Pyramids were built.
3. Why is everyone putting their umbrellas up?
4. You suddenly find out that there is no money in your pocket. You make a deduction.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language each of the following two min-dialogues :

- 6- A: Have you got anything to declare, sir? B : Just these two laptops.
A: You'll have to pay 300 pounds.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

7. A: May I have my hair cut? B: Yes, you are welcome.
A: I would like to cut it short. B: Ok. Sir.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

B- Vocabulary and structure

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I am not sure what my son is doing. He -----be watching TV.
a – must b – may c – might d – can't
2. It is moving by itself. It ----- be a rock.
a – must b – may c – might d – can't
3. You ----- my mobile . I didn't mind at all.
a – may use b – must use c – can't have used d – could have used
4. He is smiling , he -----be happy.
a – must b – may c – might d – can't
5. I don't know the reason for his sadness. He ----- some bad news.
a – must have heard b – may have heard c – could hear d – can't have heard
6. The man ----- by the thief, I am sure.
a – must have killed b – must have been killed c – might have killed d – may have killed
7. The criminal ----- have escaped through that well-locked door.
a – could b – couldn't c – must d – may
8. That restaurant ----- be very good, it is always full of people.
a – must b – may c – might d – can't
9. I have lost one of my gloves, I must ----- it somewhere.
a – drop b – have dropped c – dropping d – drops

10. The first line of the Paris Metro system ----- in 1900.
a – opened b – played c – moved d – painted
11. ----- is a large structure that is built to remind us of an important event or a famous person.
a – cliff b – base c – monument d – raise
12. To ----- means to make light shine on something.
a – carve b – raise c – illuminate d – cut
13. to move or lift something to a higher position means
a – raise b – cut c – illuminate d – buy
14. To carve is to cut stone or wood into a particular
a – shade b – shadow c – shallow d – shape
15. The carved the sculpture from a massive piece of stone.
a – artist b – actor c – director d – player
16. The Wall ----- a length of 6400 km.
a – arrived b – reached c – got on d – came

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Abu Simbel is the sight of two temples.
2. He has a lot of money, he can't be rich.
3. He must has had an accident.
4. I am sure he might be an engineer.
5. The temple was curved into a cliff.
6. We are proud to being Egyptians.

C- Reading

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions

The Trans-Siberian Railway or Trans-Siberian Railroad in Russian is a network of railways connecting Moscow and European Russia with the Russian Far East provinces, Mongolia, China and the Sea of Japan. It is the longest railway in the world. Today, the railway is part of the Eurasian Land Bridge. The plans and funding for construction of the Trans-Siberian Railway to connect the capital, Moscow, with the Pacific Ocean port of Vladivostok were approved by Czar Alexander II in St. Petersburg. After the revolution of 1917, the railway served as the vital line of communication for the Czechoslovak Legion and the Allied armies that landed troops at Vladivostok during the Siberian Intervention of the Russian Civil War. Full-time construction on the Trans-Siberian Railway began in 1891 and was put into execution and overseen by Sergei Witte, who was then Finance Minister. The Trans-Siberian Railway gave a positive boost to Siberian agriculture, facilitating substantial exports to central Russia and Europe. It influenced the territories it connected directly, as well as those connected to it by river transport.

a) Give short answers to the following questions:

1. What is the agricultural effect of The Trans-Siberian Railway?
2. Whom was the construction on Trans-Siberian Railway overseen by?
- 3- What is the Trans-Siberian Railway?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

4. The Trans-Siberian Railway connects
a) Africa, Asia and Europe. b) Asia, Europe and Far East.
c) Asia and Europe. d) Asia and Far East.
5. The word "territories" means
a) times b) areas c) terrorists d) terraces

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Suez Canal is an artificial sea-level waterway in Egypt, connecting the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea. Opened in November 1869, it allows water transportation between Europe and Asia without navigating around Africa. The northern terminus is Port Said and the southern terminus is Port Tawfik at the city of Suez. Ismailia lies on its west bank, 3 km (1.9 mi) north of the half-way point.

When first built, the canal was 164 km (102 mi) long and 8 m (26 ft) deep. After multiple enlargements, the canal is 193.30 km (120.11 mi) long, 24 m (79 ft) deep, and 205 metres (673 ft) wide. It consists of the northern access channel of 22 km/14 mi, the canal itself of 162.25 km/100.82 mi and of the southern access channel of 9 km/5.6 mi.

It is single-lane with passing places in Ballah By-Pass and in the Great Bitter Lake. It contains no locks; seawater flows freely through the canal. In general, the Canal north of the Bitter Lakes flows north in winter and south in summer. The current south of the lakes changes with the tide at Suez.

The canal is owned and maintained by the Suez Canal Authority (SCA) of the Arab Republic of Egypt. Under international treaty, it may be used "in time of war as in time of peace, by every vessel of commerce or of war, without distinction of flag.

The main alternative is travelling around Cape Agulhas at the south of the African continent. This was the only route before the canal was constructed, and—more recently—when the canal was closed. It is still the only route for ships which are too large for the canal. In the early twenty-first century the long route has enjoyed increased popularity because of increasing piracy in Somalia and high canal tolls.]

a) Give short answers to the following questions:

- 1- What is the only alternative of the Suez Canal?
- 2- What does SAC stand for??
- 3- Is Egypt completely free to use the canal?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4) The underlined word "it" refers to.....
a- Egypt b- the Suez Canal c- The Suez Canal Authority d- International treaty
- 5) The Suez Canal isthe route of the Cape Agulhas.
a) shorter and safer than b) shorter than c) safer than d) as safe and long as
- D- The Mask of Gold

7. Answer the following questions :

1. Who else is riding to Zenda? Which way do they go at the fork in the road? Which way do Sapt and Rassendyll go?
2. What do you think the message "all is well" means?
3. What do Sapt and Rassendyll find inside the lodge?
4. What does Sapt want Rassendyll to do?

B) Read following quotation and answer the questions:

"We'll go back to Strelsau. The King will be back in the capital again tomorrow!"

1. Who says this to whom?
2. Where are they and what has happened?
3. How will the King be back in the capital tomorrow?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. They find Josef and Johann's mother killed in the cellar.
2. Sapt wants Rassendyll to leave Ruritania immediately.

E - Writing

8. Write a paragraph about 100 words about

A famous engineering project

9. a) Translate into Arabic :

The government has set up a number of new cities in the desert to solve the problem of housing. Great efforts are also made to reclaim the desert and turn it into green fields. Our deserts are rich in minerals which are necessary to industry.

b) Translate into English :

- تمتلك مصر الكثير من الاعمال الهندسية الرائعة؛ القديمة و الحديثة.

ساعد السد العالي علي حماية مصر من الفيضان و توليد الكهرباء باسعار زهيدة.

Unit 8 – Dr Jeckyll and Mr. Hyde

admit	يعترف	engineering	الهندسة	permanent	دائم
appear	يظهر	eventually	أخيرا	permanently	بطريقة دائمة
appearance	مظهر / ظهور	evil	الشر	personal	شخصي
approve of	يوافق	fight	يقاتل	personality	ذو شخصية
author	مؤلف	frighted	خائف	personnel manager	مدير شئون العاملين
autobiography	سيرة بواسطة الكاتب	frightening	مخيف	playwright	كاتب مسرحي
badly	بطريقة سيئة	frustrated	محبط	post operation	فترة النقاهة
bestseller	الأكثر مبيعا	frustration	إحباط	present	يقدم / هدية / حاضر
biography	سيرة ذاتية	good	الخير	presentation	تقديم / عرض
blackmail	ابتزاز / يبتز	guest	ضيف	Profession	مقدم برنامج
bribe	رشوة	health	الصحة	recuperate	يستشفى
camp	معسكر	healthy	صحي	recuperation	النقاهة
campaign	حملة	host	مضيف	respected	محترم
character	شخصية	hostess	مضيضة	respectable	جدير بالاحترام
colleague	زميل	human	البشرية	sale	مبيعات - او كازيون
comment	يعلق على	human nature	الطبيعة البشرية	science	العلم
commit	يرتكب	humanity	البشرية	scientist	عالم
complain	يشكو	island	جزيرة	secret	سري
complaint	شكوى	isle	جزيرة	strife	يئاضل
confess	يعترف	kick	يركل	struggle	يكافح
conflict	صراع	kidnapped	مخطوف	supernatural	خارق للطبيعة
cure	العلاج	kidnappers	مختطفون	Take	ياخذ دواء
denial	إنكار	knock	يطرق	temporary	موقت
deny	ينكر	literature	الأدب	violence	العنف
disappointed	خائب الأمل / محبط	living things	الكائنات الحية	violent	عنيف
disappointment	خيبة الأمل	make medicine	يصنع دواء	well	بئر
disapprove of	لا يوافق	own up	يعترف	will	وصيه

Expressions

a charismatic personality	شخصية مؤثرة (كاريزمية)	indomitable will	إرادة لا تقهر
a conflict of interests	تعارض المصالح	kind to	عطوف على
a crisis of conscience	أزمة ضمير	knock on (at) the door	يطرق على الباب
a matter of conscience	مسألة ضمير	live on the island	يعيش على الجزيرة
a respectable profession	مهنة جديرة بالاحترام	look for = search for	يبحث عن
at the least	على الأقل	look your best	تبدو علي أفضل صورة
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	of his own free will	بإرادته الحرة
be committed to	ملتزم بـ	once a month	مرة في الشهر
be wrong about	مخطئ بشأن	personal appearance	المظهر الشخصي
behave towards others	يتصرف تجاه الآخرين	personality traits	سمات الشخصية
belong to	يخص / ينتمي إلى	take medicine	يتناول الدواء
commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة	take place	يحدث
commit suicide	ينتحر / يقدم على الانتحار	take the place of	يحل محل
conflicting results	نتائج متضاربة	the black market	السوق السوداء
do experiments on	يجري تجارب على	the conflict between good and evil	الصراع بين الخير والشر
do research on / into	يجري أبحاث على	the human race	الجنس البشري
Do terrible things	يفعل أشياء فظيعة	the light is off	النور غير مضاء
have health problems	لديه مشكلات صحية	the light is on	النور مضاء
have interest in	لديه اهتمام بـ	under control	تحت السيطرة
human rights	حقوق الإنسان	willful murder	جريمة قتل عمد
in different directions	في اتجاهات مختلفة	worn out	مرهق

Words & antonyms

abundance	وفرة	lack	نقص
adequate	كاف	inadequate	غير كاف
admit	يعترف	deny	ينكر
approve (of)	يوافق علي / يستحسن	disapprove (of)	لا يوافق علي
evil	الشر	good	الخير
former	السابق	latter	اللاحق
natural	طبيعي	artificial	صناعي
permanently	بصفة دائمة	temporarily	بصفة مؤقتة
pessimism	التشاؤم	optimism	التفاؤل
respect	احترام	disrespect	عدم احترام
right	يمين	left	يسار
right	صواب	wrong	خطأ
sufficient	كاف	insufficient	غير كاف

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adj.
amaze يدهش	amazement دهشة	amazing مدهش
Admit يقر بـ / يسمح بدخول	Admittance سماح بدخول Admission اقرار / اعتراف	
behave يتصرف / يسلك	behaviour تصرف / سلوك Biography سيرة ذاتية	behavioural سلوكي Biographical خاص بالسيرة الذاتية
conflict يتضارب / يتعارض	conflict تضارب / تعارض / صراع	conflicting متعارض / متضارب
decide يقرر	decision قرار	decisive حاسم
express يعبر عن	expression تعبير	expressive معبر
injure يصيب	injury إصابة	injured مصاب
	Permanence دوام	Permanent دائم permanently(adv)
	Profession مهنة / حرفة Professional شخص محترف Professionalism الاحترافية Professor استاذ جامعة	Professional محترف
recover يُشفى / يسترد	recovery شفاء / استرداد	recoverable يمكن استرداده
Respect يحترم	Respect احترام	Respected محترم لانجازاته Respectable جدير بالاحترام Respectful يتصرف باحترام
Recuperate يستجم / يتعافى من مرض	Recuperation استجمام / تعافى من مرض	
wound يجرح	wound جرح	wounded مجروح / مصاب

Definitions

admit	agree or say that something is true, although you do not want to	يقر / يقبل
appearance	the way that someone or something looks or seems to other people	مظهر
biography	a book about a person's life	سيرة ذاتية
blackmail	to make someone pay you money or do what you want by threatening to tell secrets about them	يبتز
colleague	Someone you work with.	زميل
commit a crime	do something illegal	يرتكب جريمة
human nature	behaviour, faults qualities. etc. that are typical of ordinary people	الطبيعة البشرية
in conflict	a situation of disagreement or fighting between people or groups or ideas	في صراع
knock (v)	hit a door with your hand in order to attract someone's attention	يطرق الباب
permanently	for all future time, or for a very long time	للأبد / بشكل دائم
personality	someone's character, especially the way they behave towards other people	شخصية
profession	a job that needs special education and training	حرفة

recuperate	to spend time getting better after an illness, injury, etc.	يشفي
respectable	behaving in a way that people think is socially acceptable or morally right	محترم
Will (n.)	a legal document in which you say who you want to give your money and property to after you die	وصية

Language Notes

- relation علاقة رسمية - Relations between the two countries have improved recently.
- relationship علاقة شخصية أو أسرية - I have a good relationship with my parents.
- Make + someone + inf. يُجبر شخص علي عمل شيء - They made her sign the cheque.
- Make + Obj. + adj. يجعل - He did everything he could to make us happy.
- Make = be / become - I don't think he will ever make a good doctor.
- Respected (adj.) يحظى بالاحترام والإعجاب بسبب عمله أو إنجازاته - He is one of the most respected managers.
- Respectable (adj.) محترم (يتصرف بطريقة مقبولة اجتماعيا وأخلاقيا) - He comes from a respectable family.
- Respectful (adj.) يُظهر الاحترام لـ - We should be respectful towards elderly people.
- Would rather + inf. = would prefer + to + inf. تفضيل التفضيل
- I'd rather stay at home. = - I'd prefer to stay at home.
- Would rather + inf.than + inf. يفضل - We'd rather go to the park than watch TV.
- Would rather + inf. +n. than + n. يفضل - I'd rather have coffee than tea.
- rather + adj. / adv. = fairly / to some degree إلى حد ما - It's rather hot today, isn't it?
- Prefer + to + inf. / V+ing. يفضل - He prefers to play tennis. - He prefers playing tennis.
- would prefer to + inf. يفضل - I'd prefer not to discuss this issue.
- Prefer + V+ing. + to + V+ing - He prefers watching football to playing it.
- It is time to + inf. لقد حان وقت - It is time to go home.
- It is time for + n. لقد حان وقت - It is time for dinner.
- It is time + فاعل + Past simple كان يفترض أن - It is time she went home.
- Fault خطأ - I'm very sorry. It's my fault.
- Foul خطأ في الرياضة - He had committed 3 fouls in the match.
- fall / fell / fallen يسقط - The book fell from his hands.
- fail يفشل / يرسب - He failed the English exam.
- fell يقطع (شجرة) - A lot of trees along the road were felled.
- human (adj.) بشري / إنساني - The accident was the result of human error .
- humane (adj.) عطف - The refugees اللاجئين receive humane treatment .
- Find + obj. + adj. - I find it easy to study English.
- Fend for (yourself) يعتني (بنفسه) - We had to fend for ourselves while our parents were away.
- defend (yourself) يدافع عن نفسه - You should be able to defend yourself in dangerous situations.
- admit + v. + ing يعترف / يقر / يقبل - They admitted stealing the money.
- admit that + جملة يعترف / يقر / يقبل - They admitted that they had stolen the money.
- Confess (v.) يعترف رسميا -He confessed the murder.
- suggest + v. + ing يقترح - Ali suggested going to the club.
- suggest + مصدر / مصدر + should + مصدر يقترح - Ali suggested we should go to the club.
- Ali suggested we go to the club.
- Temporary مؤقت - He tries to find a temporary job during the summer holiday.
- Permanent دائم - Their stay is not temporary, it is permanent.
- Agree to + (inf. - N) يوافق - He agreed to sign the papers. - He agreed to our plan.
- Agree with someone يتفق مع - I'm afraid I don't agree with you.
- Agree on (something) مجموعة تتفق علي شيء - We agreed on a price for the car.
- Agree that (sentence) يوافق (جمله) - It was agreed that he was the thief.
- Accept (invitation / apology / condolences / bribes) يقبل (دعوة . اعتذار . تعازي . رشوة) - He didn't accept her apology.
- Quite - fairly + إلى حد ما صفة حسنة - He is quite (fairly) good at English.
- Rather غير حسنة + إلى حد ما صفة - He is rather bad at English.
- complain to + شخص يشكو لـ - She complained to her father about her money.
- Complain about شيء يشكو من - He complained about his work.
- Complain of + مرض يشكو من مرض - He complained of headache.
- Complain that + جملة كاملة يشكو من جملة كاملة - He complained that he didn't get his salary.

Foreigner (أجنبي (شخص من دولة أخرى)

Foreign (أجنبي (صفة لوصف البلاد / البضائع / اللغات)

Stranger (غريب (شخص لا أعرفه)

- He isn't from Egypt, he is a foreigner. -

- Learning foreign languages is very important.

- I'm a stranger here; I don't know where the post office is.

Knock on = at يطرق على

Knock off the price يخفض السعر

Knock something off يسرق - يبعد عن مسار

- While I was sleeping, he knocked on the door.

- Shopkeepers knock off the prices to sell a lot.

- The assistant was busy, so the thief knocked off some jewellery and ran away. Scientists can knock an asteroid off its course by setting off an explosion near it.

- do/carry out/ conduct research into/ on -He is doing research into cancer . يجري بحثاً علي / في

Cure (v.) (n.)	يعالج - علاج	Recuperate	يتسشفي - يستجم
Heal (up) (v.)	يلتئم للجروح والكسور	Recuperation (n.)	استشفاء - استجمام
Recover from	يشفي من	Rehabilitate	يعيد تأهيل بعد مرض اوسجن
Recovery	شفاء	Therapeutic (adj.)	علاجي
do experiments on	يجري تجربة	bestseller	الأكثر مبيعاً
do research into	يقوم ببحث في	frightened of	خائف من
commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة	frightening	مخيف
protecting from	يحمي من		

- Good at جيد في

- Good to طيب مع

- Good for مفيد . صالح لـ

- He is good at English.

- He is good to his friends.

- Taking exercises is good for you.

- Temporary مؤقت

- Permanent دائم

- He found a temporary job during the summer holiday.

- I got a permanent job in Vodafone.

Communication Skills

Making Suggestions	Responding to Suggestions
- How about + V+ing.....?	- I'd go along with that.
- I'd say.....?	- Sorry, I don't agree. (Disagreeing)
- Let's	- That sounds fine.
- Let's say.....	- That's what I think
- Shall we + inf..... ?	- I'm not sure about that. (Disagreeing)
- We could.....	- I agree.
- What about + V+ing.....?	- That's a good idea.
- Why don't we/you/they.....?	- Personally, I'd prefer.. (Disagreeing)

Exercises

Respond the following situations:

- 1.A friend asks you whether you would like to go somewhere together at the weekend. Suggest the beach.
- 2.A friend doesn't want to go to the beach, but suggests the swimming pool. You are quite happy with his suggestions.
- 3.A friend suggests going to the cinema in your town tomorrow. You are not sure.
- 4.You advise a friend of yours not to eat too much.
- 5>Your brother stays up all night.
- 6>Your friend has pain in his back.
- 7>Your friend suggests playing video games, you don't like the idea.
- 8.You're doing a project on wildlife. Ask a friend of yours for more information.
- 9.You suggest spending the weekend in Luxor.
- 10>Your friend suggests going to a swimming pool, you like the idea.
- 11.You friend suggests that you join a book club, but you want to join a sports club.
- 12.You offer to help an old man to cross the street.

Mention the place , the speakers and the language each of the following two min-dialogues :

- 1- A: Passport and tickets, please. B: Here you are.
 A: Smoking or non-smoking? B: Non-smoking, please.
 A: Thank you. I've given you a window seat 20B. Here's your boarding card.

Place: - Speaker A:..... - Speaker B: - Function:

- 2- A: May I have your order, sir? B: - Yes, I'd like some fish, please.
 A:- How would you like it? B: - Fried. please.

Place: - Speaker A:..... - Speaker B: - Function:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- As I was going to bed, Ithat my son's bedroom light was still on.
a- saw b- was seeing c- see d- had seen
- 2- When I knocked on the door and went in, my sonin bed.
a- is reading b- read c- am reading d- was reading
- 3- I complained that it waslate and that it was time for him to go to sleep.
a- quite b- quiet c- quit d- rather
- 4- My son wouldn't be able to sleep until he..... it.
a- has finished b- 'd finished c- finished d- finishes
- 5- Treasure Island was written in 1883 and has been aever since.
a- bookseller b- best sale c- bestseller d- best sales
- 6- The, Robert Louis Stevenson, was born in Edinburgh, Scotland, in 1850.
a- author b- authority c- authors d- authorite
- 7- As a child, he had problems and spent a lot of time in bed.
a- wealth b- health c- filthy d- healthy
- 8- He was more interested in..... as he wanted to be a writer.
a- literate b- literary c- literature d- litter
- 9- He wanted him to be an engineerhim.
a- as b- like as c- the same d- like
- 10- In 1873 he was very ill and his doctor told him he should go abroad to.....
a- heal b- curse c- recuperate d- cover
- 11- He went to the south of France, where he started to write essayand short stories.
a- reviews b- views c- visions d- revisions
- 12- He wrote his best works,Treasure Island, Kidnapped and Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde between 1880 and 1887.
a- includes b- to include c- including d- included
- 13- When his father died. Later, Stevenson and his wife to the South Seas and visited the island of Samoa.
a- sail b- sails c- sailed d- had sailed
- 14- The climate there was goodStevenson's health.
a- for b- at c- to d- with
- 15- I must....., I found Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde even more exciting than Treasure Island.
a- confide b- reveal c- disclose d- admit
- 16- Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde takesin London in the nineteenth century.
a- place b- part c- up d- a part
- 17- Dr. Henry Jekyll, ascientist, is doing research into human nature.
a- respectable b- respectful c- respected d- disrespectful
- 18- He believes that human beings have a good and evil side and that these sides are always
a- conflicting b- in conflict. c- conflicted d- being conflicted
- 19- Dr. Jekyll'sdisagree with his ideas and disapprove of his research.
a- colleagues b- classmates c- follows d- mutes
- 20- Dr. Jekyll starts doing secret experiments....himself to prove his ideas.
a- in b- into c- on d- over
- 21- He takes special medicine which changes not only his character, but also his.....
a- appearing b- disappearance c- disappear d- appearance
- 22- He becomes Mr. Hyde, an evil man who looks frightening, has a violent personality and terrible crimes.
a- does b- makes c- commits d- comments

- 23- Dr. Jekyll rewrites his....., leaving everything to Mr. Hyde, a man they do not know.
a- well b- will c- willing d- wellness
- 24- They think that Dr. Jekyll may be protecting Hyde from the police, or that Mr. Hyde is Dr. Jekyll.
a-black market b- blacklist c- blackmailing d- black mail
- 25- Dr. Jekyll has now proved that human nature is both good and, but soon he starts to enjoy being Mr. Hyde.
a- envy b- evil c- envious d- vicious
- 26- He changes into Mr. Hyde more often and finds it more difficult toDr. Jekyll.
a-change back into b-change into c- turn into d- turn on
- 27- My brother went on holiday to Aswan. Now he is decided to live there
a- permanent b- always c- continuous d- permanently
- 28- I thought the test would be easy , but I mustI am finding it quite difficult .
a- confess b- admit c- decree d- certify
- 29- Someoneon the door late last night , but I didn't open it.
a- knock b- hit c- banged d- knocked
- 30- Doctors and nurses belong to the medical
a- career b- job c- trade d- profession
- 31- All my friends come from veryfamilies.
a- respect b- respectable c- respects d- disrespectful
- 32- My grandfatherat the moment after a long illness.
a- is healing b- is curing c- is recuperating d- is recovering
- 33- I am reading a newof William Shakespeare .he had a very interesting life
a- biography b- novel c- story d- tale
- 34- Ali wasn't badly injured in the accident , but histook longer than we thought .
a- healing b- recuperation c- recover d- recuperate
- 35- I have worked in a lot of different places.Now I would like a more ...job.
a- permanent b- permanently c- temporary d- temporarily
- 36- You can findinformation about many writers on the internet .
a- biography b- biographical c- auto-biography d-graph
- 37- When he said sorry , it was anthat he had been wrong.
a- admittance b- admission c- admit table d- admit
- 38- Ipeople who are honest and work hard.
a- respectable c- respectful c- respect d- respect less
- 39- If you are a doctor, it is very important to behave.....towards your patents.
a- Professional b- profession c- professionally d- profess
- 40- A person you work with you is a
a- classmate b- colleague c- fellow d- mate
- 41-is the way someone looks to other people.
a- personality b- person c- personal d- Appearance
- 42- We say a persona crime.
a- does b- makes c- commits d- commends
- 43-is the behaviour or qualities typical of ordinary people.
a- human race b- human being c- human nature d-human
- 44- Someone's character, the way someone behaves towards others is.....
a- personality b- appearance c- person d- personal
- 45- A legal document saying what should happen to someone's money and things after they die is a
a- well b- wellness c- willing d- will
- 46-is a situation of disagreement or fighting between people or groups.
a- war b- Conflict c- ease d- dispute
- 47- She has a very niceShe is kind to everyone she meets.
a- personality b- personal c- personally d- personnel
- 48- People whoserious crimes should be sent to prison
a- do b- commit c- make d- have
- 49- He left everything to his son in his
a- will b- well c- certification d- document
- 50- When my brother started his new job , all hiswere friendly and helpful.
a- fellows b- colleagues c- classmates d- mates

Water will have become one of our most serious problems. Demand for water will increase ten times between now and 2050, and there could be serious shortages. Water could be the cause of war if we do not act now.

Translate into English:

- تعمل القراءة على النهوض بالطفل وتنمية مواهبه لكي يكون لديه القدرة على الإبداع.

- هل تحب أن تعمل كعميل سري ؟

- يجب أن تحترم مشاعر الآخرين وأن تكون متعاوناً وصبوراً .

- يستخدم الطلاب المصريون أجهزة الكمبيوتر في مدارسهم وسيكون لذلك أثره العظيم في تقدم مصر.

- يعتقد بعض العلماء أن الطعام المعدل وراثياً هو الحل الوحيد لمشكلة نقص الغذاء في الدول النامية.

- اعتقد أن الانسان له جانبان ,طيب و شرير و أن هذان الجانبان في صراع دائم .

- كان دكتور هنري جيكل عالماً محترماً يجري ابحاثاً في الطبيعة البشرية.

Grammar

Reported Statements

الجملة الخبرية في الكلام الغير مباشر

- نبدأ بالمتحدث و يأتي بعده فعل قول مثل (said / told / reported / answered / declared) ولاحظ ان (told) لابد ان يأتي بعدها المخاطب
- تحذف علامات التنصيص و نستخدم (that) و يمكن أن تحذف - تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم و المخاطب - تتغير الأزمنة كما يلي:

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
Cook / cooks	→ cooked	Will	→ would
Cooked	→ cooked/had cooked	Shall	→ would
is / are cooking	→ was/were cooking	May	→ might
have / has cooked	→ had cooked	Can	→ could
has / have been cooking	→ had been cooking	Must	→ (had to)

- هناك كلمات معينة تتغير في غير المباشر كما يلي:

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
now	then	tonight	that night
this	that	today	that day
these	those	yet	by then
here	there	tomorrow	the day after
(two days) ago	(two days) before	next week	the following week
last week	the week before / the previous week	the day before yesterday	two days before
yesterday	the day before	the day after tomorrow	in two days' time

- She said, "I shall write a letter tomorrow." - She said (that) she would write a letter the day after.

- He said to me, "I can't do it now." - He told me (that) he couldn't do it then.
 - He said, "I have bought a mobile." - He said (that) he had bought a mobile.

- لا تتغير الأزمنة في الحالات التالية:

1 - لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان فعل القول في المضارع أو المستقبل:

- She says, "I don't believe this story." - She says she doesn't believe that story.

2- لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة:

- She said, "If water freezes, it changes into ice."
 - She said that if water freezes, it changes into ice.

3- لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

(now / just now / a moment ago / a minute ago / a short time ago / recently)

- He said just now, "I have already done my work." - He said just now he has already done his work.

4 - في حالة وجود if يتغير الزمن في الحالة الأولى فقط:

- He said, "If it is fine, I'll go for a swim." - He said if it were fine, he would go for a swim.

5 - في حالة وجود if only / I wish :

- He said, "I wish I got the prize." - He said he wished he got the prize.

- إذا جاء المتكلم و فعل القول في نهاية الجملة أو وسطها يوضع في أولها .

- "I visited the zoo last week." said Ali. - Ali said that she had visited the zoo the week before.

- إذا كان المخاطب داخل الأقواس يوضع خارجها بعد فعل القول .

- Samir said "I want to work with you, Nabil." - Samir told Nabil that he wanted to work with him.

- في حالة وجود جملتين نستخدم (and that) أو (and added that):

- He said to me, "I didn't post the letter. I'll ask Ali to post it for me."

- He told me he hadn't posted the letter and that he would ask Ali to post it for him.

- يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلا من (said to) عند نقل الجملة إلى غير المباشر ويأتي بعدها (v.ing):

أصر علي /insisted on /اعترض علي /apologised for/objected to /أنكر /denied /أقر / قبل /Suggested/admitted

- He said, "Let's discuss this question now." -He suggested discussing that question then.

- وفي حالة استخدام that بعد بعض هذه الأفعال تحول الجملة بنفس القواعد السابقة:

- He said, "I wasn't there when the crime happened."

- He denied being there when the crime happened.

- He denied that he had been there when the crime happened.

- يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلا من (said to) عند نقل الجملة إلى غير المباشر ويأتي بعدها (to + inf):

Promised / offered / advised / agreed / threatened / reminded/decided / Refused

- He said, "I'll give you all the money you need."

- He promised to give me all the money I needed.

- وفي حالة استخدام that بعد بعض هذه الأفعال تحول الجملة بنفس القواعد السابقة:

- He promised that he would give me all the money I needed.

إذا بدأت جملة الكلام المباشر بـ (Yes / sure / of course / certainly / okay) فإنها تحذف و تتحول الي:

answered in affirmative / agreed / admitted / acknowledged

- He said, "Yes, it is my coat".

- He acknowledged that it was his coat.

إذا بدأت جملة الكلام المباشر بـ (No / sorry / never) فإنها تحذف و تتحول الي:

answered in negative / refused /denied

- She said, "No, I can't swim".

- She denied that she could swim.

- إذا كانت جملة الحديث المباشر تحتوي على كلمة تحية مثل (good morning) يكون فعل القول (wished):

- He said to me, "Good morning. It is a nice day".

- He wished me good morning and added that it was a fine day

- إذا كانت جملة الحديث المباشر تحتوي على كلمة وداع مثل (good bye) يكون فعل القول (bade):

- "Good bye, Omer", she said.

- She bade Omer good bye.

- إذا كانت جملة الحديث المباشر تحتوي على كلمة شكر يكون فعل القول (thanked):

- He said to Heba, "Thank you very much".

- He thanked Heba very much.

- إذا جاءت كلمة اعتذار مثل (I'm sorry) فهي قد تتحول الي (He apologized)

- إذا جاءت (must/needn't) للتعبير عن ضرورة في المضارع فإنها تتحول إلى (had to)

- He said, "I must go now." - He said that he had to go then.
- She said, "I needn't buy a camera." - She said that she didn't have to buy a camera.

- أما إذا جاءت هذه الأفعال للدلالة على المستقبل فتتحول كالتالي :

- must → would have to - needn't → wouldn't have to

- He said, "I must go tomorrow." - He said that he would have to go the day after.
- She said, "We needn't move in next week."
- She said that they wouldn't have to move in the following week.

- لكن إذا جاءت (must) للتعبير عن الاستنتاج فلا تتحول :

- Ali said, "this man must be a pilot". - Ali said that that man must have been a pilot.

- وكذلك (mustn't) فلا تتحول :

- The policeman said, "You mustn't park your car here."
- The policeman said that I mustn't park my car there.

- لا تتغير التعبيرات التالية عند التحويل من مباشر إلى غير مباشر :

Would like - should like - had better

- The teacher said, "You'd better study hard."
- The teacher said (advised me) that I'd better study hard."

- أسلوب التعجب في غير المباشر يتحول إلى جملة عادية تبدأ بـ It was..

- Heba said, "What a nice weather!" = Heba said that it was a nice weather.

Reported Questions الأسئلة

- الجملة الاستفهامية هي التي تبدأ بأداة استفهام أو بفعل مساعد أو ناقص ونجد في نهايتها علامة الاستفهام .

تتحول الجملة الاستفهامية من المباشر إلى الغير مباشر كما يلي:

- 1- تحول said أو said to إلى says / asked ← says / asks ← say / ask
2- لاحظ أنه يمكن تحويل said إلى inquired / wanted to know / wondered مع عدم استخدام ضمير مفعول بعدهم .
3- تحذف علامات التنصيص
4- عند وجود Do - Does تحذف ويضع الفعل ماضي بسيط وعند وجود Did تحذف والفعل يصبح ماضي تام .
5- تحول صيغة السؤال إلى إثبات أي الفاعل + الفعل .

- Ali said to Ahmed, "why do you go to school late?"

- Ali asked Ahmed why he went to school late.

- He said, "Have you ever been abroad?" - He wondered if I had ever been abroad.

- في حالة الأسئلة التي يجاب عنها بـ yes / no نربط بكلمة if أو بكلمة whether وهما بمعنى "فيما إذا"

- She said, "Do you speak French?" = She asked if I spoke French.

- في حالة الأسئلة التي تبدأ بأداة استفهام ، تستخدم نفس أداة الاستفهام كأداة ربط :

- He said, "Where did you spend your summer holiday?"
= He wanted to know where I had spent my summer holiday.

- He said, "What are you doing now?" = He asked what I was doing then.

- لا تتغير الأزمنة في الحالات التالية:

1- لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان فعل القول في المضارع:

- "How much do you earn?" He says. - He wonders how much I earn.
- "How much do you earn?" He said. - He wondered how much I earned.

2- لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان السؤال عن حقيقة:

- "How much does a litre of water weigh?" He says. - He wonders how much a litre of water weighs.

3- لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان السؤال قد قيل منذ فترة وجيزة ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

(now / just now / a moment ago / a minute ago / a short time ago / recently)

- He said just now, "Have you met the manager?" - He asked just now if I has met the manager.

- في حالة تحويل السؤالين إلى غير مباشر نستخدم (and if) أو (أداة استفهام + and)

- He said, "Why are you late? Did you miss the bus?"

He wondered why I was late and if I had missed the bus.

-He said, "Where did you buy the trousers. How much did they cost you?"

= He wanted to know where I had bought the trousers and how much they had cost me.

- في حالة العرض offer :

- He said, "Shall I get you some tea?" (He offered ...)

He offered me some tea. أو He offered to get me some tea.

- في حالة الطلب request :

- He said, "Could you open the window, please?" (He asked...)

-He asked me to open the window. أو - He asked if I could open the window.

لاحظ ما يلي جيداً

- إذا كانت قاعدة if في السؤال يكون التحويل كالتالي :-

- "If you see Samy, will you ask him?" Hassan said.

- Hassan asked whether if I saw Samy I'd ask him.

2- Yes أو No توجد في الكلام المباشر رداً على سؤال بالنفي والإثبات عند التحويل إلى غير مباشر نرد هذه التعبيرات إلى الجملة الخبرية التي تمثلها مثال ذلك :-

- Mona said to Mai, "Did you answer this question?" She replied, "Yes."

- Mona asked Mai if she had answered that question. She replied that she had answered it / or she replied that she had not answered it. " في النفي "

3- بالنسبة إذا بدأ السؤال Shall وكانت تعبر عن عرض تحول كالتالي :-

-Omer said, "Shall I bring you some tea?" = Omer offered to bring me some tea.

- أما إذا كانت تعبر عن اقتراح تحول كالتالي:-

-Amr said, "Shall we meet at the theater?" = Amr suggested meeting at the theater.

4- أما بالنسبة لـ Will إذا كانت تعبر عن أمر أو طلب تحول كالتالي :-

- Ahmed said to me, "Will you help me?"

- Ahmed asked me to help him.

- Mohamed said, "Will you have lunch with me tomorrow?"

- Mohamed invited (asked) me to have lunch with him the following day.

لاحظ أيضاً ما يلي

- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ [would you mind + v.ing] تحول إلى :

→ مصدر + to + مفعول + asked + متحدث Speaker

→ مصدر + to + مفعول + wanted + متحدث Speaker

-Heba said to Salma, "would you mind studying English?"

-Heba asked (wanted) Salma to study English.

2- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ [المصدر + would you like to] تحول إلى

→ Speaker + suggested + v+ ing + متحدث

-Amal said, "Would you like to watch this film?"

- Amal suggested watching that film.

3- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ (اسم + would you like) تحول إلى

→ Speaker + offered + مفعول + اسم / v.ing + متحدث

-Eman said, "would you like tea?"

- Eman offered me tea.

4- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ What about تحول إلى

→ Speaker + suggested + اسم / v.ing + متحدث

- "What about tea?" Mustafa said

- Mustafa suggested tea.

- Sally said "What about going to the cinema tonight?"

- Sally suggested going to the cinema that night.

5- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ " Why don't you " تحول علي حسب المعني إلي :-

→ Speaker متحدث + suggested + v. ing

→ مصدر + advised + to + متحدث Speaker

-Mum said, "Why don't you study? "

- Mum advised me to study.

-Ali said, "Why don't you ask the teacher? " - Ali suggested asking the teacher.

6- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ [could | have] تحول إلي [asked... for] .

"Could I have a cup of coffee?" Aya said

- Aya asked me for a cup of tea .

7- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ [could you] للتعبير عن الطلب تحول إلي [مصدر + to + مفعول + asked]

-"Could you answer this question, please" Asmaa said to Mai.

- Asmaa asked Mai to answer that question.

8- أما إذا كانت [could you] مجرد سؤال عن قدرة وليست رجاء تبقي كما هي بدون تغير وتحول إلي asked if

-"Could you live a lone ?"Ahmed said.

- Ahmed asked me if I could live alone.

Commands and Requests الأمر و الطلب

- الجملة الأمرية : هي التي تبدأ بفعل في المصدر و تنتهي بالنقطة .

- ولتحويل الجملة الأمرية من مباشر إلي الغير مباشر اتبع ما يلي:

- نحول said أو said to حسب الجدول الآتي:

Direct	Indirect
1 Said / said to	Ordered / commanded من السيد لخدمة / من ضابط لجندي
2 Said / said to	Advised نصيحة من طبيب إلي مريض / من أب أبنه / من مدرس لتلميذه
3 Said / said to	Begged-prayed "please" - للرجاء مع مراعاة حذف كلمة.
4 Said / said to	Asked / told / requested - من صديق لصديقه
5 Said / said to	Warned - للتحذير من خطر (نهى)
6 Said / said to	Reminded " remember " - للتذكير مع مراعاة حذف كلمة
7 Said / said to	Wanted / wished - للرغبة .
8 Said / said to	Threatened - لتهديد .

- نحذف الأقواس ونربط بكلمة " to " في حالة الإثبات وفي حالة النفي نربط (not to) ونحذف النفي .

-Mr.Ahmed said to us "study physics carefully." - Mr. Ahmed advised us to study physics carefully.

-Heba said to Mr. Ahmed, "please explain chapter three again."

= Heba prayed Mr. Ahmed to explain chapter three again.

لاحظ ما يلي

1 - نحول Said في الأمر المثبت إلي suggested أو insisted حسب القاعدة الآتية

→ مصدر + should + المخاطب + insisted / suggested + متحدث Speaker

-Asmaa said, "Ask Mr. Khaled this question again. "

-Asmaa suggested that I should ask Mr. Khaled that question again."

2- في حالة النهي (الأمر النفي)

→ مصدر + shouldn't + المخاطب + suggested + that + متحدث Speaker

-Heba said to Abeer "Don't make so much noise."

- Heba suggested that Abeer shouldn't make so much noise.

لاحظ ما يلي جيداً

- let's , let him / them .

١- (let's) عندما تعبر عن اقتراح تحول إلى **suggested + v+ ing** + فاعل

————→ *Speaker* متحدث + *suggested that* + فاعل + *should* + مصدر

- Heba said, "Let's study English." - Heba suggested that they should study English.

- Heba suggested studying English.

2- أحيانا نستعمل (let's) ردا علي اقتراح مثبت وعند التحويل نستعمل :-

- **was against it.** أو **Opposed the idea,**

- "Let's go to Aswan "said Hend." Let's not "said Mai

-Asmaa suggested going to Aswan but Mai was against it.

3- أحيانا نستعمل *let him / them* للاقتراح أيضا .

-Ahmed said, "Let them go shopping" - Ahmed suggested their going shopping.

- Ahmed suggested that they should go shopping.

4- إذا جاءت **Let** بمعنى السماح (**allow**) تحول **said** إلى **asked**

"Let Ahmed come with us, mother, I'll take care of him "Heba said.

- Heba asked her mother to let Ahmed come with them and promised to take care of him.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer:

- 1) I complained that itrather late and that it was time for him to go to sleep.
a- is b -was c- will be d- is going to be
 - 2) I said hebe tired the next day.
a- will b- would c- is going to d- can
 - 3) My son explained that his bookreally exciting.
a- will be b- would c- is d- was
 - 4) He said he wouldn't be able to sleep until heit.
a- has finished b- finished c- had finished d- Have finished
 - 5) I asked him what.....
a- he was reading b- he is reading c- was he reading d- is he reading
 - 6) He said that heto be a writer..
a- was wanting b- wants c- wanted d- will want
 - 7) I will ask him if he.....
a- agrees b- agree c- would agree d- could agree
 - 8) She promised that she..... home the next morning.
a- shall be b- is going to be c- will be d- would be
 - 9) He asked me where
a- have you been b- you had been c- I had been d- you had been
 - 10) She admitted that her brother.....her withher homework that afternoon.
a- is helping b- was helping c- helps d- help
 - 11) He asked me if Ireading the book he'd lent you the week before.
a- had finished b- have finished c- finish d- will finish
 - 12) She said theythem there the following Saturday.
a- were meeting b- will meet c- are going to meet d- met
 - 13) I asked Leila what she..... to study at the university.
a- is going to hope b- hopes c- was hoping d- will hope
 - 14) I asked a shop assistant if Itry the shirt on.
a- will b- could c- can d- ought to
 - 15) The assistant said I could andme where the changing rooms were.
a- told b- tells c- tell d- will tell
 - 16) She complained that shefor more than an hour for her appointment.

- a- had waited b- waited c- has waited d- would wait*
- 17) They promised that theyus as soon as they arrived.
- a- is going to phone b- would phone c- will phone d- will be phoning*
- 18) He admitted that he had arrived late the night.....
- a- next b- then c- after d- before*
- 19) She explained that sheto come and see me the following week.
- a- hopes b- was hoping c- hope d- will hope*
- 20) He agreed he would not tell anyone what I.....
- a- say b- had said c- have said d- will say*
- 21) He asked me if Ithat his sister had been ill.
- a- knew b- know c- will know d- have known*
- 22) We wanted to know what theyof his idea.
- a-think b- thought c- is thinking d- would think*
- 23) Karim -----Nour if there was sugar in the cup.
- a – asked b – told c – said d – talked*
- 24) Samy asked Ali where ----- that precious stone.
- a – had she found b – she had found c – did she find d – she finds*
- 25) I told the professor I ----- the following lecture.
- a – didn't attend b – wouldn't attend c – won't attend d – hadn't attended*
- 26) 26-
- a – if I played b – did I play c – do I play d – that I play*
- 27) He said just now that he ----- a new car next month.
- a – would buy b – will buy c – has bought d – buys.*
- 28) She asked me where I ----- then .
- a – stay b – did stay c – was staying d – am staying*
- 29) The interviewer asked the professor ----- he had worked at any foreign universities.
- a – whether b – unless c – that d – whatever*
- 30) Can you kindly tell me where -----?
- a – is the manager b – the manager c – the manager is d – is*

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1.He admitted that he robs the house the night before.
- 2.He advised me looking for another job.
- 3.He apologized not to do the job well.
- 4.He asked me why didn't I lock the door the night before.
- 5.He denied to forge the cheque.
- 6.He denied to help the spy.
- 7.He explained that he loses his way in the desert a few weeks earlier.
- 8.He said metals are contacting when they are cooled.
- 9.He said that she is going to learn to drive.
10. He said," Where do you go to school? " by bus.
11. He says that he was taking his brother to the airport.
12. He says water evaporated if it is boiled.
13. He told that it was a busy day.
14. He wondered how long did I stay in Paris the previous year.
15. I asked him what he is doing.
16. John asked where did I buy my shirt from.
17. Nadia asks Nahla if she can phone her to tell her what she said.
18. Nadia wanted to know if I am doing something interesting at the weekend.
19. Nadia wanted to know if I would like to come shopping with him.
20. Nahla explained that she will have to ask her mother.
21. Nahla promised that she would phone her this evening.
22. She admitted that she didn't had any plans.
23. She asked me weather I had watched the DVD.
24. She promised that she will help me soon.
25. She said just now that he had watched TV.
26. She told me to have closed the window.
27. They complained that they are treated badly by the shop owner the previous day.

Test 8

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

1. A friend suggests that you join a book club together. You don't want to join a book club, but you like to join a sports club.
2. Reham eats food with too much salt in it.
3. Salem believes that fresh fruit and vegetables are good for health. Express your opinion.
4. Someone suggests watching a film but you have an exam.

2- Mention the place , the speakers and the language each of the following tw min-dialogues :

- 1 A: are you in your first year? B: yes, I am studying English, but it is not only my third week.
A: my parents would like me to apply here. Would you recommend it? B: yes, definitely.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

2. A: well, your application has been successful. B: that not great! When do I start?
A: at the beginning of next month. You will be working at our Cairo branch.
B: I am looking forward to starting.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

B- Vocabulary and structure

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- My uncle visited Aswan buy now he has decided to live there
a – temporarily b – permanently c – by chance d – fantastically
- 2- Someone ----- on our door last night, but I didn't open it.
a – broke b – knocked c – took d – booked
- 3- Doctors and nurses belong to medical -----
a – confession b – decision c – transition d – profession
- 4- All my friends come from very ----- families.
a – respectable b – evil c – devil d – unrespectable
- 5- My grandfather is ----- at the moment after along illness.
a – recuperating b – recuperate c – recuperates d – recuperated
- 6- I am reading the ----- of Shakespeare, he had a very interesting life.
a – geography b – autograph c – biology d – biography
- 7- He has worked in different places. Now, he would like a more ----- job.
a – permanent b – temporary c – enjoyable d – profitable
- 8- I ----- people who are honest and work hard.
a – hate b – respect c – respectable d – respectful
- 9- He ----- Dina that he was writing a letter.
a – said b – told c – asked d – talked
- 10- Samir ----- that the helicopter was flying high.
a – told b – said to c – asked d – said
- 11- Lila said that she -----TV then.
a – is watching b – watched c – was watching d – had watched
- 12- He said that he ----- his friend the following day.
a – will visit b – would visit c – is visiting d – visited
- 13- He said that he ----- her playing the piano.
a – had seen b – has seen c – will see d – can see
- 14- I asked her if ----- use the new camera.
a – I could b – could I c – can I d – are I
- 15- Farouk asked Osman why ----- late.
a – was he b – are you c – is he d – he was
- 16- The teacher said, " Where -----, Hazim?"
a – your book is b – your books were c – the books are d – is your book

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Treasure Island as written in 1883 and has been a bestsell.
2. He tells Ali that Ahmad would arrive at 4 o'clock.
3. He wanted his son to have a respect profession. .
4. The climate there was good to his health.
5. She told me that I have to study hard.
6. He asked me where you were born.

C- Reading

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions

Man's life has been subject to a lot of change during the last hundred years particularly in what is connected to his consuming habits. Sixty years ago, before the start of the consumer societies of today's world, people did not throw away so many of the things they used. They used and re-used bottles, jars, cardboard boxes, paper bags, etc. much more carefully than we do today. Now, more than fifty years later, we are returning to the same good idea which we now call "recycling".

We are again thinking about what we throw out. Why do we throw away so much food packaging, so many plastic supermarket bags, old newspapers, old books, bottles and cans ? What is all this rubbish doing to our environment, to the world we live in ? Can't we use some of it again? The answer is: Yes, we can. New industries - recycling industries are starting to re-use some of our rubbish. For example, the island of Taiwan now buys tonnes of waste paper from the USA and recycles it to make newspapers, and for use in offices and homes. Japan takes scrap metal from the USA and makes some parts of new cars with it Most European and American cities now have "recycling centres" for people's old bottles and newspapers.

All this recycling is not only good for the environment but it is good business, too. For instance, a recycled aluminum container is 20% cheaper to make than a new one. For both the environment and the economy, recycling makes very good sense.

A -Answer the following questions:

- 1- What" change "does the writer refer to in the first paragraph?
- 2- Mention two industries that make use of rubbish.
- 3- Why is recycling economically good?

B- choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d

- 4-Our grandparents were..... than we are today
a) less careful c) more economic b) more wasteful d) less wise
- 5- When we recycle rubbish, weour environment
a) Pollute b) protect c) destroy d) consume

6. Read the following passage then answer the questions

Egypt is a country with an area of about one million square kilometers. Most of the land is desert. The amount of rain each year is very small. Only 3% of Egypt - the land watered by the River Nile - can be used for farming. Over 90% of the Egyptians live and work in this small part of the country.

In the past Egypt grew its own food. But now, it has to import more than half the wheat it needs to feed its people. In 1989, the population of Egypt was already around 55 million. With 2 new babiesbornevery minute rid people living linger lives, the population is growing fast - one and a half million new people every year as half of all Egyptians are under 20 years of age, the population will continue to grow.

Recently an Egyptian newspaper, wrote a report on what life would be like in the year 3010 if the population continues to grow as fast as it is doing now In Cairo people would have to live in tents and travelling from one side of the city to another would take hours With classes of 100 pupils, schools would have to be open all day to teach everybody

To prevent such problems, the government wants people to have smaller families on television it show the ideal family -father, mother and two children. The average family now has a bigger number of children. Families will have to get smaller if the report in that newspaper is not to come true

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1-Why do most Egyptians live and work in a very small area?
- 2-What are the two elements that make population grow at a high rate?
- 3-Mention two problems that result from over - population?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

- 4In the past Egypt produced the wheat it needed.
a) Some of b) all c) none of d) a great deal of
- 5- If families are. ... classrooms will be over - crowded with pupils
a) big b) small c) old d) new

D- The Novel

7- a) Answer the following questions :

- 1- What does Sapt plan to do if the real King is dead?
- 2- Why do Michael's men have spades? What does it mean that they were going to "hide their evil work"?
- 3- What does Rassendyll mean that some of those evil men should join Josef?
- 4- Why does Sapt say to the servant at the secret door "All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King?"

B) Read following quotation and answer the questions:

"You're mad! The plan's too dangerous!"

- 1- Who says this to whom?
- 2- Where are they
- 3- What is the dangerous plan?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1- The Duke's men come to the hunting lodge to kill Sapt and Rassendyll.
- 2- Rassendyll finds the work of being a King easy.

E - Writing

8- Write an email to your friend Ahmed

Tell him About the book club you have joined at school -How you heard about it - When and where the club will meet - how many members there will be. What kind of books people will read. - Why you like the idea of the book club – invite her to join it.

Your email address is mohammed.34075@yahoo.com

Your friend's email is Ahmed 2011@yahoo.com

9- a) Translate into Arabic :

Some people prefer the healthy and simple life of the country. there , they avoid the smoke of factories , the speed of the city life and the crowded means of transport .They also enjoy the fresh country air and the beauty of the nature .

b) Translate into English :

- 1- كان لزاما علي مصر أن تدعو لمؤتمر عالمي يهدف إلى الاستمرار في عملية السلام و مكافحة الإرهاب .
- 2- تبذل الحكومة أقصى جهدها لإيجاد فرص عمل للشباب و بناء مساكن لهم .

Unit 9 – The Power of Nature

Main Vocabulary

absorb	يمتص	harmful	ضار	rainfall	سقوط الامطار
drought	الجفاف	lightning	البرق	sight	منظر / البصر
eclipse	كسوف / خسوف	northern	شمالي	southern	جنوبي
electric storm	عاصفة كهربية	occur	يحدث / يقع	ultraviolet	اشعة فوق بنفسجية
geyser	نبع ماء حار	phenomenon	ظاهرة	volcano	بركان

Vocabulary

absorb in	تم امتصاصه	floods	فيضانات	predictions	تنبؤات
area	منطقة	follow	يتبع	protective	واقى
as far as	بقدر ما / لغاية / حتي	force	إرغام	rays	اشعة
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي	forecast	يتنبأ بالطقس	recent years	السنوات الأخيرة
ball	كرة / حفلة راقصة	forecast	النشرة الجوية	rivers	أنهار
beneath	تحت	freeze	يجد / يتجمد	roughly	تقريباً
cause	يسبب / سبب	geothermal	حرارة باطن	safely	بأمان
clear night	ليلة صافية	giant	عملاق	sandstorm	عاصفة
clips	مشبك	go rise	يرتفع	skin	جلد
clouds	سحب	heat waves	موجة حارة	soak up	يمتص
common	عام / شائع / منتشر	ice age	العصر الجليدي	solar eclipse	كسوف الشمس
damage	تلف / خسارة / يتلف	infrared rays	اشعة تحت	storm chasers	متتبعو العواصف
definitely	بالتأكيد	inhale	يستنشق	strength	القوة
degree centigrade	درجة مئوية	landscape	منظر طبيعي	sunglasses	نظارة شمس
depend on	يعتمد على	look straight	ينظر مباشرة	surface	سطح
distance	مسافة	lunar eclipse	خسوف القمر	take in	يمتص
drown	يغرق	natural	طبيعي	temperature	درجة حرارة
earthquake	زلزال	nature	الطبيعة	thunder	الرعد
economy	اقتصاد	period	فترة	tide	المد و الجزر
erupt	ينفجر / يثور	permanently	بطريقة دائمة	tornado	زوبعة
experts	خبراء	planet	كوكب	violent	عنيف
explanation	تفسير / شرح	port	ميناء	waves	أمواج
float	يطفو	power	قوة	weather	الطقس
flood	فيضان / يغمر بالمياه	powerful	قوى	wind blow	تهب للرياح

Words & antonyms

accept	يقبل	reject	يرفض
afraid	خائف	unafraid / brave	غير خائف / شجاع
extreme	متطرف	mild / moderate	معتدل
failure	الفشل	success	النجاح
forbid	يمنع	allow	يسمح
incredible	لا يُصدق	believable	يمكن تصديقه
precise	دقيق	imprecise	غير دقيق
productive	منتج	unproductive	غير منتج
proud	متكبر	humble / modest	متواضع
puzzling	مُحير	clear	واضح
rare	نادر	common	شائع
specific	محدد	general	عام
strange	غريب	ordinary / familiar	عادي / مألف

Expressions

at the sight of	عند رؤية	in a northerly direction	في اتجاه الشمال
absorbed in the atmosphere	يتم امتصاصها في الغلاف الجوي	in a southerly direction	في اتجاه الجنوب
active volcano	بركان نشيط	in a westerly direction	في اتجاه الغرب
ask for trouble	يُعرض نفسه للمتعاب	in an easterly direction	في اتجاه الشرق
be out for	لديه النية لعمل شيء	life on earth	الحياة على الأرض
block out/off the light	يحجب الضوء	lift people off their feet	ترفع الناس من على الأرض (نتيجة الرياح الشديدة)
catch sight of	يلمح	look straight at	ينظر مباشرة إلى
cause / do damage	يسبب ضرر	lunar eclipse	خسوف القمر
cause addiction	يسبب الإدمان	natural aptitude	استعداد طبيعي
celestial body	جُرم سماوي	natural phenomenon	ظاهرة طبيعية
clap of thunder	قصف الرعد	open to the public	مفتوح للجمهور
come into sight	يظهر	planetary motion	حركة الكواكب
cost of living	تكلفة المعيشة	put their lives in danger	تضع حياتهم في خطر
damage sight	يدمر البصر	rough sea	بحر هائج
definitely not	بالتأكيد لا	scientific progress	التقدم العلمي
detrimental effect	أثر ضار	scientific revolution	ثورة علمية
disappear beneath the sea	يختفي تحت البحر	social phenomenon	ظاهرة اجتماعية
dormant volcano	بركان ساكن أو متقطع الثوران	social problems	مشكلات اجتماعية
elderly people	كبار السن	solar eclipse	كشوف الشمس
enormous damage	أضرار هائلة	source of relief	مصدر ارتياح
export to	يُصدر إلى	southern = in the south of	جنوب
extinct volcano	بركان خامد	stay on the surface	يظل على السطح
fall on the earth	يسقط على كوكب الأرض	storms hit	العواصف تضرب
family budget	ميزانية الأسرة	strong wind	رياح عاتية
flash of lightning	وميض البرق	swim against the tide	يسير عكس التيار
from time to time	أحياناً / من حين لآخر	take in	يمتص
get heat from	يحصل على حرارة من	take in liquid	يمتص السائل
get light from	يحصل على ضوء من	take the temperature	يقيس درجة الحرارة
get too near to	يقترّب أكثر من اللازم من	talented person	شخص موهوب
hard currency	العملة الصعبة	there's nothing wrong with	ليست هناك مشكلة في
harmful emissions	انبعاثات ضارة	violent storm	عاصفة عنيفة
have a temperature	حرارته مرتفعة	vitamin deficiency	نقص الفيتامينات
have priority over	له الأولوية على	warn of / about	يحذر من
have problems with	لديه مشاكل في	weapons of mass destruction	أسلحة الدمار الشامل
have problems with	عنده مشاكل	widespread phenomenon	ظاهرة منتشرة
heavy rain	مطر غزير	with high temperatures	بدرجات حرارة عالية
high waves	أمواج عالية	with lightning speed	بسرعة البرق
historical phenomenon	ظاهرة تاريخية	with low temperatures	بدرجات حرارة منخفضة
import from	يستورد من	withstand drought	يتحمل الجفاف

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adj.	
absorb	يمتص	absorption	امتصاص	absorbent	ماص
develop	يُطور / ينمي	development	تطور / تنمية	developed	متطور / متقدم
economize	يقصد	economy	الاقتصاد	economic	اقتصادي
				economical	موفر
enable	يُمكّن	ability	قدرة / استطاعة	able	قادر
forecast	يتنبأ بـ	forecast	تنبؤ		
harm	يضر	harm	ضرر	harmful	ضار
reduce	يقلل	reduction	تخفيض / تقليل	reduced	مُخفّض
see	يري	sight	البصر		
		volcano	بركان	volcanic	بركاني

Definitions

absorb	if something absorbs liquid, heat, etc., it takes in the liquid, heat, etc., through its surface	يمتص
eclipse (n)	when the sun or the moon seems to disappear, because one of them is passing between the other one and the Earth	خسوف / كسوف
harmful	causing harm	ضار
geyser	a hole in the earth from which hot water and steam can suddenly rise	عين مياة ساخنة
sight (n)	the ability to see	البصر
ultraviolet rays	light which can make people's skin become darker	الأشعة تحت الحمراء
cause (v)	to make something happen	يسبب
drought	a long period of dry weather when there is not enough water	الجفاف
lightning (n)	a bright flash of electrical light in the sky during a storm	البرق
northern	in or from the north part of a country or area	شمالي
occur	to happen, especially without being planned first	يحدث
phenomenon	something that happens or exists, especially something that is unusual or difficult to understand	ظاهرة
rainfall	the amount of rain that falls on an area in a particular period of time	سقوط الامطار
southern	in or from the south part of a country or area	جنوبي

Language Notes

- economic اقتصادي
- economical موفر
- Economic growth in Egypt is slow.
- A small car is more economical than a big one.
- Lighting الإضاءة
- Lightning البرق
- Street lighting will reduce crime.
- Our farm was struck by lightning.
- Sight البصر
- Sight (v) يتمكن من رؤية شيء من بعيد
- Sights المعالم الهامة التي تستحق الزيارة
- He lost his sight when he was 5 years old.
- After four days at sea, we sighted land.
- If you come to Aswan, I'll show you its sights.
- The reason why + جملة
- The reason for + n. / V+ ing
- The reason why I was late was that I missed the bus.
- The reason for his absence was that he was ill.
- cause + n. يسبب
- cause + to + inf يسبب
- cause of + n. سبب
- The fire caused a lot of damage.
- What caused you to change your mind?
- The cause of the fire is still unknown.
- Appear + Adj. يبدو
- Appear + Adv. يظهر
- The right colours can make a small room appear much bigger.
- A man appeared suddenly from behind a tree.
- wear (مفعول +) يلبس / يكون مرتديا ..
- He was wearing his best suit at the party.
- wear تستخدم لوصف عادة أو مظهر الشخص
- Put on (مفعول +) يقوم بارتداء
- dress (بدون مفعول) = get dressed (لبس)
- Policemen usually wear a uniform.
- We wear light clothes in summer.
- Put on your coat . It's cold.
- She always dresses fashionably.
- لاحظ انه في حالة وجود مفعول بعد dress يختلف المعنى: يساعد شخص على ارتداء ملابسه
- Can you dress the kids for me?
- be dressed in (يكون مرتديا) = be wearing (بعدها مفعول)
- He was dressed in a black suit. = - He was wearing a black suit.
- Go + Adj. = become + Adj. _____ - go dark/mad/blind/deaf/dumb....etc.
- If anything goes wrong, just call me.
- listen / see / watch / hear + inf. / V+ing
- Giant pieces of ice have been seen falling from the sky. - I watched him go, then went home.
- لاحظ استخدام الفعل المساعد do قبل فعل الجملة للتأكيد على حدوث الفعل ويستخدم في المضارع البسيط والماضي البسيط فقط:
- We do have a lot of information about the sun. - He did ask me for money.
- لاحظ استخدام on earth بعد بعض أدوات الاستفهام لتعبر عادة عن الدهشة أو الغضب:
- What on earth did you do that for? - How on earth can the moon block out the sun's light?

-تستخدم الكلمات northern / southern / eastern / western قبل اسم الدولة أو المنطقة:

- This city is located in northern Spain. = in the north of
- He lived for a few years in southern France. = in the south of
- تستخدم الكلمات westerly / southerly / northerly / easterly قبل كلمة direction أو لتدل على اتجاه الرياح :
- They walked in a southerly direction. - A westerly wind comes from the west.

- لاحظ شكل الصفات التالية في المقارنة و التفضيل:

- Windy / windier / windiest
- stormy / stormier / stormiest
- Sunny / sunnier / sunniest
- rainy / rainier / rainiest

-لاحظ بعض الكلمات المتشابهة و الهامة فى السؤال الرابع :

Light – right ضوء – يمين (صحيح)	Power – pour طاقة – يصب	Sun – son شمس – ابن
phenomenon – phenomena ظاهرة – ظواهر	Sea – see بحر – يرى	violent – violence عنيف – العنف
piece – peace قطعة – السلام	sight – site بصر – موقع	Warn – worn يحذر – يرتدى (تصريف ثالث)
Port – part ميناء – جزء	straight – street مستقيم – شارع	weather – whether طقس – اذا(لو)

- Lunar eclipse the eclipse of the moon (the Earth is between the moon and the sun) .
- Total eclipse the sun or the moon disappears completely.
- Partial eclipse the sun or the moon disappears in part.

- How + (adjective) يأتى بعدها الصفة
- How old is the tree?
- What + (noun) يأتى بعدها الاسم
- What age is the tree?

- any more (يأتى الفعل معها فى النفي) لم يعد
- He no longer smokes .
- no longer (يأتى الفعل معها فى الإثبات) لم يعد
- He doesn't smoke any more.

- soak in ينقع - To get these stains out of you shirt, you have to soak it in hot water
- soak up = absorb in يشرب - Mother put a cloth on the floor to soak up water.

- afraid of (N or (v + ing) خائف من شئ - He is afraid of snakes. - He is afraid of arriving late.
- afraid for (N) خائف على شخص - She is afraid for her children.
- afraid to +(inf) خائف أن بعدها مصدر - He is afraid to swim in the rough sea.
- afraid that + sentence خائف أن بعدها جملة كاملة
- People are afraid that the light from the sun might go out.

- Once ذات مرة - Once, people were hunters. Their food came from animals.
- Once بمجرد أن - Once I get the news, I'll phone you.
- Once مرة واحدة - She visits her grandparents once every six months.
- Harbour مرفأ (لرسو السفن) - The ship tried to reach the harbour in the storm.
- Port مدينه ميناء (مدينه تصل إليها السفن للشحن والتفريغ) - Alexandria is a big port in Egypt

- Wind الرياح - There was a strong wind yesterday.
- Rain المطر - There is no rain in the desert.
- Drought الجفاف - All of Africans die of drought.
- Draught تيار هواء بارد - There is a terrible draught coming from under the door .
- A storm عاصفة - There is a storm outside. It's raining heavily and there is thunder and lightening.
- a blizzard عاصفة ثلجية - A blizzard is a severe snowstorm.
- a hurricane إعصار - The hurricane caused destruction.
- Flood فيضان - The village was destroyed by the flood.

- Under اسفل بشكل مباشر - The pen is under the book.
- Below في مستوي ادنى - There are a few huts below the mountain.
- Beneath في الاسفل - She hid the money beneath the pile of clothes

- Right = correct - They are right to think positively.
- a / the right (n.) - The public has the right to know about this.

- Blow – blew – blown (v.) تهب الرياح
- Blow up ينفخ – يفجر – يغضب
- He blew up the balloon. -The terrorists blew up an office building in the city centre.
- My father blew up at me when I told him what had happened.
- Blow down تقتلع
- The wind blew the trees down.
- Blow out يطفئ
- Emma blew out the candle .
- Blow over = stop – end
- The storm has blown over .

- Sink – sank – sunk/sunken يغرق – يغوص - The titanic sank after hitting an iceberg.
- drown يغرق للانسان - The people drowned in a boat accident yesterday.
- Float يطفو - A plastic bag floated in the water.

Communication Skills

Asking for an explanation	Giving an explanation
Can you explain why...?	Let me explain.
Do you know how...?	I'll try and explain.
I'd like to know how...?	Here's what happens.
How on earth...?	What happens is that..
Could you tell me how/why...?	I'll explain that to you.

Exercises

Respond the following situations:

1. A friend asks why the sun disappears during the solar eclipse.
2. A friend asks you what the sun is.
3. A friend asks you what you think about the last football World Cup matches.
4. You tell your friend about the bad effects of electrical storms.
5. Your friend asks you about the benefits of volcanoes.
6. Someone says that reading books is a waste of time. Disagree, giving a reason.
7. You ask your friend why the solar eclipse happens.
8. Your brother asks you what the word "nature" means.
9. Your friend asks you why ultraviolet rays don't harm us.
10. Your friend says that the sun is a giant ball of hot gasses; it is 150 million km from the Earth
11. Your friend thinks that the sun rays aren't harmful to our sight.

Mention the place, the speakers and the language each of the following two min-dialogues :

1- A: How often should I water this plant?

B: This is a house plant. It should be watered every 2 weeks.

A: How much is it?

B: Twenty pounds.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

2 - A: Drop me off here, please. How much do you want?

B: It's seven pounds on the meter.

A: Here you are.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

3- A: What's wrong with this television?

B: I spilled a cup of tea on it and it went up in smoke. Then it stopped working.

A: I think it will need a lot of repair. Let me check it first.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

4- A: Do you remember what happened?

B: No, I just remember waking up in the road.

A: How do you feel now?

B: Not too bad. Will I have to stay here tonight?

A: We are not sure yet. We will have to check you have no broken bones.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

5- A: are you in your first year?

B: yes, I am studying English, but it is not only my third week.

A: my parents would like me to apply here. Would you recommend it?

B: yes, definitely.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

- 6- A: Could you tell us why you would like to study here?
 B: Your biology department has a very good reputation.
 A: And if we accept you, what do you hope to do when you graduate?
 A: Well. I would like to work for a food company.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Some people are afraid that the light from the sun might go out during an eclipse.
a- permanent b- permanently c- temporary d- temporarily
2. People right to think that the sun is very important.
a- have b- do c- had d- are
3. If we didn't get heat and light from the sun, there be no life on Earth.
a- will b- will have c- would have d- would
4. The sun is a giant ball of hot Which is 150 million kilometres from the Earth.
a- air b- gasses c- gas d- oxygen
5. How is the sun? The surface of the sun is about 6,000 degrees centigrade
a- hot b- heat c- much d- far
6. The sun gives us heat and light, but it also gives out x-rays and ultraviolet rays, which can be very harmful..... life.
a- to b- for c- with d- by
7. Most of these rays arein the atmosphere, so they aren't able to affect us.
a- absorbent b- indulged c- absorbed d- taken
8. I ought to warn you one very important thing.
a- about b- to c- for d- by
9. The sun is incredibly strong and you should never lookat it. If you look at the sun, you'll damage your sight.
a- straight b- straightly c- deeply d- straighten
10. He now has problems his eyes as he has looked at the sun.
a- in b- by c- with d- of
11. If he hadn't looked at the sun, he wouldn't have damaged his.....
a- site b- insight c- sight d- slightness
12. If you live in Europe or Africa, temperatures are high and there is little rain .
a- south b- southerly c- southern d- southerner
13. It is unusual for a weather to surprise us.
a- foretell b- foresee c- forecast d- prophecy
14. People have seen giant pieces of ice from the sky.
a- fall b- to fall c- fell d- falling
15. Some storms are veryand may cause terrible damage.
a- unusual b- usual c- usually d- unusually
16. Dunwich was once an important port, but in the 14th century, most of the town disappearedthe sea.
a- below b- under c- beneath d- behind
17. The storm in Britain killed more than 8,000 people in 1703.
a- worse b- bad c- worst d- best
18. The worst flood in history was in 1887 in China when the Yellow River and killed around a million people.
a- flooded b- raised c- rose d- increased
19. Unusual weather is becoming more....., with very high or low temperatures and very heavy rainfall all over the world.
a- usual b- normal c- ordinary d- common
20. In Europe in the eighteenth century, there was a Little Ice Age when rivers like the River Thames in England
a- freeze b- froze c- dried d- vaporized
21. Life on Earth depends on heat and light from the sun.
a- sun b- moon c- planets d- universe
22. If somethingliquid, heat, etc., it takes in the liquid, heat, etc., through its surface

- | <i>a- dries</i> | <i>b- vaporizes</i> | <i>c- solidifies</i> | <i>d- absorbs</i> |
|---|----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 23.is all the plants, creatures, substances and forces that exist in the universe, which aren't made by people. | | | |
| <i>a- Nature</i> | <i>b- Environment</i> | <i>c- Atmosphere</i> | <i>d- Surroundings</i> |
| 24.occurs when the sun or moon seems to disappear, because one of them is passing between the other and the Earth. | | | |
| <i>a- Solar eclipse</i> | <i>b- Lunar eclipse</i> | <i>c- Total eclipse</i> | <i>d- Eclipse</i> |
| 25.is a hole in the Earth from which hot water can rise. | | | |
| <i>a- Well</i> | <i>b- Spring</i> | <i>c- Geyser</i> | <i>d- Fountain</i> |
| 26. He is blind as he has lost his | | | |
| <i>a- hearing</i> | <i>b- sight</i> | <i>c- smell</i> | <i>d- sense</i> |
| 27. People's skin goes darker because of..... | | | |
| <i>a- infrared rays</i> | <i>b- ultraviolet rays</i> | <i>c- sun rays</i> | <i>d- beams</i> |
| 28.is a long period when there is no rain and people don't have enough water. | | | |
| <i>a- Hurricane</i> | <i>b- Rainfall</i> | <i>c- Drought</i> | <i>d- Starvation</i> |
| 29. A sudden flash of light in the sky during a storm is called | | | |
| <i>a- lightning</i> | <i>b- thunder</i> | <i>c- storm</i> | <i>d- tornado</i> |
| 30. The north part of a country or area is called..... | | | |
| <i>a- north</i> | <i>b- northern</i> | <i>c- northerly</i> | <i>d- northerner</i> |
| 31. Awind comes from the north. | | | |
| <i>a- north</i> | <i>b- northern</i> | <i>c- northerly</i> | <i>d- northerner</i> |
| 32. The south part of a country is called | | | |
| <i>a- south</i> | <i>b- southern</i> | <i>c- southerly</i> | <i>d- southerner</i> |
| 33. Awind comes from the south. | | | |
| <i>a- south</i> | <i>b- southern</i> | <i>c- southerly</i> | <i>d- southerner</i> |
| 34. Volcanoes, drought and rainfall are all | | | |
| <i>a- phenomenon</i> | <i>b- demonstrations</i> | <i>c- Phenomena</i> | <i>d- features</i> |
| 35. Theplace in the world is Port Martin in Antarctica. | | | |
| <i>a- windy</i> | <i>b- windier</i> | <i>c- windiest</i> | <i>d- winy</i> |
| 36. Thewind speed is 64 km an hour. | | | |
| <i>a- central</i> | <i>b- medium</i> | <i>c- average</i> | <i>d- normal</i> |
| 37. The wind is so strong that it can lift people off their | | | |
| <i>a- bodies</i> | <i>b- hands</i> | <i>c- feet</i> | <i>d- heads</i> |
| 38. The best thing about our holiday to Iceland was our visit to the see the | | | |
| <i>a- well</i> | <i>b- spring</i> | <i>c- geyser</i> | <i>d- streams</i> |
| 39. If it rains so hard that the soil cannot.water quickly enough, there are floods. | | | |
| <i>a- drink</i> | <i>b- soak</i> | <i>c- absorb</i> | <i>d- take</i> |
| 40. When there is an/a of the sun, everything goes dark and the birds stop singing.. | | | |
| <i>a- eclipse</i> | <i>b- disappearance</i> | <i>c- missing</i> | <i>d- loss</i> |
| 41. You cannot see but they can still damage your skin. | | | |
| <i>a- rays</i> | <i>b- sun rays</i> | <i>c- ultraviolet rays</i> | <i>d- sun beams</i> |
| 42. She does not need to wear glasses. There is nothing wrong withher. ... | | | |
| <i>a- hearing</i> | <i>b- sight</i> | <i>c- insight</i> | <i>d- sights</i> |
| 43. Scientists are not sure whatvolcanoes to erupt. | | | |
| <i>a- makes</i> | <i>b- lets</i> | <i>c- causes</i> | <i>d- encourages</i> |
| 44. An eclipse of the sun is a strange natural..... | | | |
| <i>a- disaster</i> | <i>b- dilemma</i> | <i>c- phenomenon</i> | <i>d- catastrophe</i> |
| 45. Storms can at any time and in any place.. | | | |
| <i>a- occur</i> | <i>b- take part</i> | <i>c- take the place of</i> | <i>d- incur</i> |
| 46. It has not rained here for five months. It is the longest..... anyone can remember. | | | |
| <i>a- draught</i> | <i>b- drought</i> | <i>c- draft</i> | <i>d- drift</i> |
| 47. When I was a child, I used to be afraid of storms. I covered my eyes so that I could not see 'the | | | |
| <i>a- light</i> | <i>b- thunder</i> | <i>c- lightning</i> | <i>d- lights</i> |
| 48. Alexandria is in the..... of Egypt.. | | | |
| <i>a- northerly</i> | <i>b- northerner</i> | <i>c- northern</i> | <i>d- north</i> |
| 49. Electrical storms are a common in our part of the country.. | | | |
| <i>a- occur</i> | <i>b- occurring</i> | <i>c- occurrence</i> | <i>d- incur</i> |

50. Those trees have grown tall in the last two years.
a- phenomenon b- phenomenal c- phenomena d- phenomenally
51. Where we live, the wind usually blows in a direction.
a- south b- southern c- southerner d- southerly
52. Very..... temperatures can make people ill.
a- big b- great c- gross d- high
53. Dunwich was destroyed by waves and storms.
a- high b- tall c- long d- deep
a- cruel b- violent c- hard d- stiff
54. Storms can cause..... damage..
a- serious b- strong c- high d- lot
55.rain and winds destroyed buildings all over the country.
a- Heavy b- Strong c- hard d- high
56. Denmark is in Europe.
a- north b- northern c- northerly d- northerner

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Alexandria is in the northern of Egypt.
2. Droughts and heavy rainfall are not a modern phenomena
3. Extremely weather conditions affect people badly.
4. His illness caused him missing the meeting.
5. If your site is poor, you should not drive a car.
6. It has not rained here for five months. It is the longest draught
7. On Wednesday, there will be a partial clips of the sun.
8. Some African countries are suffering from starvation and draught.
9. Storm eaters are people who find and follow storms.
10. Strange weather can occurrence all over the world.
11. Strong rain caused a lot of damage.
12. The atmosphere doesn't absorb most of the sun's harmful rays.
13. The boat was damaged by tall waves.
14. The city disappeared above the sea.
15. The distance between the sun and the Earth is 50 million kilometres.
16. The most windy place in the world is Port Martin in Antarctica.
17. The north part of a country or area is called northerly.
18. The play had excellent lightning effects.
19. The plural of phenomenon is phenomenons.
20. The river floated and killed thousands of people.
21. The sun is made of hot rock.
22. The temperature at the surface of the sun is 15 million degrees.
23. The wind comes from western direction.
24. The wind was so strong that it lifted people on their feet.
25. When there is heavy rain, the earth cannot disturb all the water.
26. Why on land did you leave the gate open?
27. You can look at the sun safely if you are wearing sunglasses

Translate into Arabic:

Some scientists have found that people are more likely to catch a cold when they are unhappy or under stress. This is because the immune system is less efficient when we are worried. Doctors have also found out that people with mild colds get better if the doctor is kind.

The worst storm in Britain killed more than 8,000 people in 1703. The worst flood in history was in 1887 in China when the Yellow River flooded and killed around a million people.

Lack of water is a thorny problem facing all countries. Thus, all states try hard to look for urgent solutions to save it. Some experts predict that wars will break out to control sources of water and rivers. It is better for all nations to cooperate not to fight for water.

Translate into English:

- تنشأ المكتبات العامة في كل مكان لتشجيع أفراد الأسرة علي القراءة.

- يقاس تقدم الأمم بمدى اهتمامها بقضايا البيئة علي مختلف أنواعها.

- الصراع بين الطبيعة و الانسان لن ينتهي و ان كان الانسان قد تغلب علي بعض الظواهر الطبيعية .

- لا يستطيع العلماء التنبؤ بالزلازل او البراكين .

- تمثل الظواهر الطبيعية عدوا لدودا للانسان لا يستطيع ترويضه.

- ان كسوف الشمس و خسوف القمر معجزة كونية تشهد بقدرة الخالق.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- If we didn't get heat and light from the sun, there..... no life on Earth.
a- would be b- will be c- is d- would have been
- 2- If you..... the temperature at its centre, you'd find it was 15 million degrees.
a- take c- took d- had taken d- 'd take
- 3- If you look at the sun, you.....your sight.
a- damage b- 'd damage c- 'll damage d- would have damage
- 4- OK if you look at the sun wearing sunglasses?
a- was it b- will it be c- would it be d- Is it
- 5- If heat the sun, he wouldn't have damaged his sight.
a- hadn't looked b- didn't look c- doesn't look d-wouldn't look
- 6- If it hadn't rained so heavily, wefloods.
a- wouldn't have b- won't have c- wouldn't have had d- hadn't had
- 7- I to the moon if I were asked.
a- go b- would go c- will go d- would have gone
- 8- If it is very hot tomorrow, we to the beach.
a- don't go b- wouldn't go c- won't go d- wouldn't have gone
- 9- People who live near volcanoes leave home if they.....
a- erupt b- erupted c- had erupted d- will erupt
- 10- If I were you, I..... to the weather forecast before deciding where to go tomorrow.
a- will listen b- would listen c- would have listened d- listen
- 11- If the storm had reached the city, houses and shops
a- will be destroyed b- would be destroyed c- would have destroyed d- would have been destroyed
- 12- What would happen if a huge storm the coast of Egypt?
a- hits b- hit c- would hit d- would have hit
- 13- If we didn't get heat and light from the sun, there would be no life on Earth,?
a- will they b- did we c- did there d- would there
- 14- If you took the temperature at the centre of the sun, you.... it was more like 15 million degrees.
a- 'd find b- will find c- would have found d- can find
- 15- If he hadn't looked at the sun, he wouldn't have damaged his Sight.
a- would damage b- would have damaged c- wouldn't damage d- wouldn't have damaged
- 16- If youat the sun, you will damage your sight.
a- look b- looked c- had looked d- are looking
- 17- If there are clouds in the sky tonight, youable to see the moon.
a- aren't b- wouldn't be c- wouldn't have been d- will not be
- 18- If itan eclipse, the sky would have gone dark .
a- were b- was c- had been d- is
- 19- If I discovered a new planet, Iit my mother's name.
a- would give b- will give c- give d- would have given

- 20- If there was an eclipse of the sun in my country, Idefinitely watch it.
a- will b- would c- can d- would have
- 21- If you watch the sky on a clear night, yousee stars and planets.
a- can b- would c- could d- might have
- 22- If the sun didn't give light and heat, thereany life on Earth.
a-won't be b-wouldn't have been c- wouldn't be d- didn't have
- 23- If you wear a hat, your face..... burnt.
a- won't get b- wouldn't get c- don't get d- can get
- 24- It better for your eyes if you wear sunglasses.
a- will be b- is c- would be d- can be
- 25- If you so long in the sun, you wouldn't have got burnt.
a- didn't spend b- don't spend c- haven't spent d- hadn't spent
- 26- If it..... warm and sunny tomorrow, I'll go swimming
a- is b- was c- be d- will be
- 27- If the storm reaches our area, trees will be blown down and houses.....
a-will damage b- will be damaged c- damaged d- would be damaged
- 28- If the volcano, I'd be very surprised/we would leave quickly.
a- erupts b- erupt c- erupted d- was erupted
- 29- If the flood had been here, houses would have been damaged.
*a- would have damaged b- would have been damaged
c- had been damaged d- will be damaged*
- 30- (*Unless – If – Without – But for*) I had gone to England, I would have met my pen friend.
- 31- (*If – Unless – In case of – Without*) we didn't get heat and light from the sun, there would be no life on Earth.
- 32- (*Would it be – Could it be – Is it – Was it*) OK if you look at the sun wearing sunglasses?
- 33- (*Unless – Without – If – In case of*) there was an eclipse of the sun in my country, I would definitely watch it.
- 34- (*If – Unless – Should – Had*) you hadn't spent so long in the sun, you wouldn't have got burnt.
- 35- I would go to the moon if I (*am asked – were asked – have been asked – had been asked*).
- 36- If he hadn't looked at the sun, he (*won't have – will have – wouldn't have – would have*) damaged his sight.
- 37- If I (*had discovered – discovered – discover – have discovered*) a planet, I would give it my aunt's name.
- 38- If I were you, I (*shall – would – can – may*) listen to the weather forecast before deciding where to go tomorrow.
- 39- If it (*is – were – had been – was*) very hot tomorrow, we will not go to the beach.
- 40- If it had been an eclipse, the sky (*would have gone – will go – might go – should go*) dark.
- 41- If it hadn't rained so heavily, we (*would have – have – have had – wouldn't have had*) floods.
- 42- If it's warm and sunny tomorrow, I (*go – might go – would have gone – will go*) swimming.
- 43- If the storm (*reach – reached – had reached – reaches*) our area, trees will be blown down and houses will be damaged.
- 44- If the storm had reached the city, houses and shops (*would have destroyed – would be destroyed – would have been destroyed – will be destroyed*).
- 45- If you look at the sun, you (*would – will – would have – might have*) damage your sight.
- 46- It is better for your eyes (*without – in case of – were – if*) you wear glasses.
- 47- What (*will happen – would happen – might have happened – happened*) if the volcano erupted?
- 48- What would have happened if there (*was – were – have been – had been*) a flood here?

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Had he been there, he would meet her.
2. Had he seen the signal, he wouldn't make that accident.
3. If he were a lawyer, he helps me.
4. If his father hadn't help him, his business will fail.
5. If I haven't taken those photos, I wouldn't have remembered our holiday.
6. If I realize it was such a long way, I would have taken a taxi.
7. If I went to England, I would have met my pen friend.
8. If it has been an eclipse, the sky would have gone dark.
9. If it would have continued raining, the town would have flooded.

10. If she were honest, she will do her job well.
11. If the film hadn't been funny, I wouldn't laugh.
12. If the volcano erupted yesterday, most people would have left their homes.
13. If there hadn't been a doctor on the train yesterday, the man would die.
14. If there is an eclipse of the sun in my country, I would definitely watch it.
15. If water is heated. it will evaporate.
16. If you didn't like this shirt, I'll bring you another.
17. If you heat ice, it would turn to water.
18. If you look at the sun, you would damage your sight.
19. If you walked all the way, it will take about three hours.
20. I'll call you if I needed any help.
21. In case of I find your passport, I'll telephone you at once.
22. In case of the flood had been here, houses would have been damaged.
23. Unless I had had a quiet room, I won't be able to do any work.
24. Unless she had been absent from school last week, she will understand the lesson.
25. Were he to arrives early, he would see us.

Test 9

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

1. A friend asks you why the moon disappears during the lunar eclipse.
2. A friend suggests that you go on a picnic together. Suggest something else.
3. Someone asks you where your friend Ali is. You are almost certain he is on holiday.
4. You are visiting a place with a volcano nearby. you are a little worried.

2- Mention the place , the speakers and the language each of the following two min-dialogues :

1- A: At last we are here. What time does our flight leave, dad?

B: At midday. We have still got lost of time.

A: Are you sure we have everything we need? B: Yes. I am sure .please stop worrvina. Ali!

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

2- A: So, for your homework, I want you all to make a list of all the plants growing in your neighbourhood.

B: Shall we just write the names of the plants? A: No, write the names and a short description

B: When is the homework for?

A: Next Thursday, please.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

B- Vocabulary and structure

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.----- him today, she would know what happened.

a – If she meets

b – Has she met

c – Were she to meet

d – Will she meet

2. Should he -----early , he will catch the bus.

a – comes

b – come

c – came

d – had come

3. If you -----all the way , it would take about three hours.

a – walk

b – walks

c – had walked

d- walked

4. I would go to the beach if it ----- summer.

a – is

b – were

c – has

d – will be

5.----- having enough money, I can buy a car.

a – Without

b – for

c – In case of

d – should

6. I wouldn't have succeeded ----- his help.

a – without

b – In case

c- because

d- in case of

7. Had I had good memory , I ----- his name.

a – would remember

b – will remember

c – remembered

d – would have remembered .

8. If the Arctic glaciers -----, the sea level will rise.

a – freeze

b – melt

c raise

d-smelt

9. An/ A ----- occurs when the light of the sun or the moon disappears.

a – eclipse

b – sandstorm

c- earthquake

d- volcano

10. ----- occurs when the moon is between the sun and the earth.
a – lunar eclipse b – solar eclipse c – moon eclipse d – sun eclipse
11. Lunar eclipse occurs when the earth is between the -----
a – sun and moon b – sun and earth
c – moon and earth d – earth and sky
12. We are afraid ----- he will lose his job.
a – of b – off c- that d- at
13. He looks for a ----- place not temporary.
a – temporary b – easy c- permanent d- difficult
14. We get ----- from the sun.
a – heat and right b – heat and night
c – heat and might d – heat and light
15. ----- is a long period of dry weather without enough water.
a – drought b – draught c – flood d – flight
16. 16 – When ----- occur everything goes dark.
a – floods b – eclipses c – rain d – earthquakes

4. Correct the underlined mistakes in the following sentences:

- 1.If I went to England, I would have met my pen friend.
- 2.If the film hadn't been funny, I wouldn't laugh.
- 3.If you look at the sun, you would damage your sight.
- 4.Italy is in south Europe.
- 5.Life on Earth depends on the heat and light from the sky.
- 6.The sun is made of hot rock.

C- Reading

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions

The men who first tried to fly faced many difficulties, and one of the greatest difficulties was how to find a suitable engine. Steam engines were the first to be tried in aero planes, but they were too heavy to be of any real use. One such machine, made in 1884, was driven by a steam engine. It is said to have risen for a moment off the ground. Another rose, but fell and was damaged.

When the petrol engine was invented, real success was obtained because it was very light for the power it developed.

Orville Wright, and his brother Wilbur, two Americans, had made a lot of experiments and had taken great trouble to study the art of flying in gliders before they tried to fly their planes. A glider is like an aero plane without an engine.

On December 17, 1903, Orville Wright flew safely in a heavier-than-air machine for twelve seconds. Orville came down safely after the first short flight, and on the same day the experiment was repeated three times. The longest of these flights covered a distance of 852 feet and lasted fifty-nine seconds. The two brothers continued their experiments after their first success.

Other people followed the Wright brothers in their footsteps. Louis Bleriot, a Frenchman, flew across the English Channel from Calais to Dover in 1909. In 1919 Sir John Alcock and Sir Arthur Brown made the first flight across the Atlantic Ocean and in the same year an aeroplane flew from England to Australia. The era of air travel had arrived..

Answer the following questions:

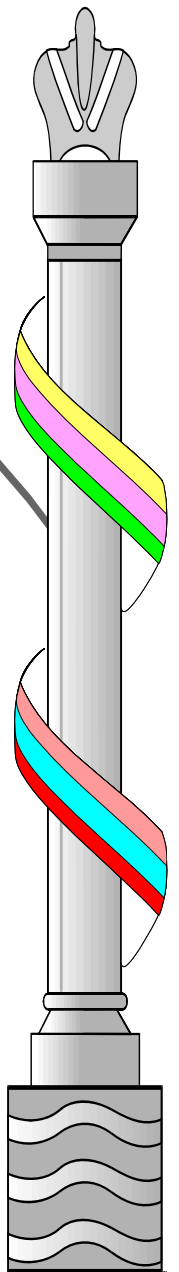
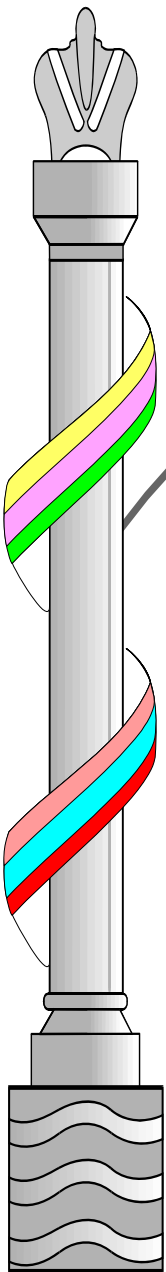
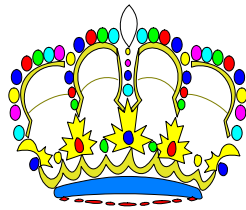
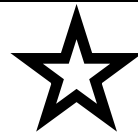
- 1-What was the biggest problem that faced the men who tried to fly?
- 2-Why was the steam engine not suitable for use in aeroplanes?
- 3-In what way is a glider different from an aeroplane?

B- Choose the right answer:

- 4-The underlined word "it" in the second paragraph refers to.....
a) the steam engine c) the glider
b) the aeroplane d) the petrol engine
- 5-The underlined word era means the
a) number b) year c) ocean d) age

6. Read the following passage then answer the questions

Walking along the colourful street market, I realized it would be impossible to leave this place empty-and Dozens of Brightly-dressed traders were selling various goods. There were imported fruits and vegetables, handmade clothes, beautifully Grafted jewellery and much more. Cafes offered freshly ground coffee and were playing loud music. After I had finished my shopping for the day, I had to drag myself away-carrying lots of heavy bags but feeling quite pleased with myself. Should you ever find yourself in Amsterdam, make sure you visit this fantastic European market. The combination of a lively atmosphere, delicious food and traditional goods makes this an experience



Secondary Three

UNITS (10 - 18)



Contents

No	Title	Page
1	Unit 10	4 - 17
Unit 10	Vocabulary	4 - 5
	Language Notes	6 - 8
	Communication Skills	8
	Exercises on Vocabulary	8- 12
	Grammar	12 - 13
	Exercises on Grammar	13 - 15
	Test 10	15 - 17
2	Unit 11	18 - 34
Unit 11	Vocabulary	18 - 20
	Language Notes	20 - 22
	Communication Skills	22
	Exercises on Vocabulary	22 - 26
	Grammar	26 - 29
	Exercises on Grammar	29 - 32
	Test 11	32 - 34
3	Unit 12	35 - 52
Unit 12	Vocabulary	55 - 36
	Language Notes	37 - 38
	Communication Skills	38
	Exercises on Vocabulary	39 - 42
	Grammar	43 - 47
	Exercises on Grammar	47 - 50
	Test 12	50 - 52
4	Unit 13	53 - 54
Unit 13	Vocabulary	61 - 62
	Language Notes	55
	Communication Skills	56
	Exercises on Vocabulary	56 - 60
	Grammar	60 - 63
	Exercises on Grammar	63 - 65
	Test 13	65 - 67
5	Unit 14	68 - 83
Unit 14	Vocabulary	68 - 69
	Language Notes	69 - 70
	Communication Skills	70
	Exercises on Vocabulary	71 - 74
	Grammar	74 - 78
	Exercises on Grammar	78 - 81
	Test 14	81 - 83

6	Unit 15	84 – 98
Unit 15	Vocabulary	84 – 85
	Language Notes	85 – 86
	Exercises on Vocabulary	86 – 91
	Grammar	91 - 93
	Exercises on Grammar	93 - 96
	Test 15	96 - 98
7	Unit 16	113 – 125
Unit 16	Vocabulary	99 – 100
	Language Notes	101 – 102
	Communication Skills	102
	Exercises on Vocabulary	103 – 106
	Grammar	106
	Exercises on Grammar	106– 108
	Test 16	108 - 110
8	Unit 17	111 – 122
Unit 17	Vocabulary	111 – 112
	Language Notes	112 – 113
	Communication Skills	113
	Exercises on Vocabulary	113 – 116
	Grammar	117
	Exercises on Grammar	117 – 120
	Test 17	120- 122
9	Unit 18	123 - 135
Unit 18	Vocabulary	123 – 124
	Language Notes	124 – 126
	Exercises on Vocabulary	126 – 129
	Grammar	129 – 131
	Exercises on Grammar	131 – 133
	Test 18	133 - 135

Unit 10 - Science and Scientists

achieve	يُحقِّق / ينجِز	dry	جاف / يجفف	penicillin	البنسلين
aids	مرض الايدز	environmental	بيئي	physicist	عالم فيزياء
alternatives	بدائل	epidemic	وباء	pot	إناء فخار أو بلاستيك
Alzheimer's disease	مرض الزهايمر	existing diseases	الأمراض الموجودة	process (n)	عملية
ambitions	طموحات	extra weight	وزن زائد	psychologist	عالم نفس
amount	كمية / مقدار	fame	الشهرة	rainbow	قوس قزح
anthropologist	عالم في علم الإنسان	feed the population	يطعم السكان	record details	يسجل التفاصيل
antibiotic	مضاد حيوي	food scientist	عالم أغذية	regularly	بانتظام
appreciate	يُقدِّر	gain	يكتسب / يزداد	release	يُطلق / إطلاق
archaeologist	عالم آثار	gain weight	يزداد في الوزن	research scientist	عالم أبحاث
battery	بطارية	generations	أجيال	result	نتيجة
biochemist	عالم كيمياء حيوية	genetic	وراثي	safe energy	طاقة آمنة
biologist	عالم أحياء	geneticist	عالم وراثة	scientific discovery	اكتشاف علمي
blood circulation	الدورة الدموية	geographer	عالم جغرافيا	series of events	سلسلة أحداث
breakthrough	تقدم مفاجئ / انجاز	geologist	عالم جيولوجيا	serious illness	مرض خطير
cancer	السرطان	gradual	تدريجي	space scientist	عالم فضاء
chemical energy	طاقة كيميائية	gradually	بالتدريج	specialise	يتخصص
chemist	عالم كيمياء /	happen	تحدث بشكل طبيعي	specialist	متخصص / أخصائي
combat pollution	يكافح التلوث	hospitable	كريم الضيافة	tap	حنفية
combine	يمزج / يخلط	invisible	غير مرئي	terminal diseases	أمراض مميتة
continental drift	الحركة البطيئة للقارات	medical laboratory	معمل طبي	earth's crust	قشرة الأرض
cure	علاج / يعالج	mention	يذكر	solar system	النظام الشمسي
diabetes	مرض السكري	nuclear scientist	عالم نووي	theoretically	نظرياً
diabetic	مصاب بالسكر	nutritional value	قيمة غذائية	theory	نظرية
disease-free	خالية من الأمراض	oceanographer	عالم محيطات	theory of relativity	نظرية النسبية
dissect	يُشرِّح	overcome	يتغلب علي	venom	سم
dissection	تشریح	overpopulation	الانفجار السكاني	zoologist	عالم في علم الحيوان

Words & antonyms

accurate	دقيق	inaccurate	غير دقيق
advance	يتقدم	retreat	يقهقر / يتراجع
bitter	مرير	sweet	حلو
curable	يمكن علاجه	incurable	لا يمكن علاجه
doubtful	متشكك	certain	متأكد
exact	دقيق	inexact	غير دقيق
gradually	بالتدريج	suddenly	فجأة
grateful	شاكر / ممتن	ungrateful	غير ممتن / جاحد
humid	رطب	arid	جاف
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم
succeed	ينجح	fail	يفشل
tasty	لذيذ الطعم	tasteless	بلا طعم
theoretical	نظري	actual	فعلي / واقعي
visible	مرئي	invisible	غير مرئي

Expressions

an article about	مقالة عن	get together	يتقابل
an explanation for	تفسير لـ	invisible to	غير مرئي لـ
at regular times	في أوقات منتظمة	keep up with	يساير / يجاري / يواكب
be careful about	حريص بشأن	life on other planets	الحياة علي الكواكب الأخرى
be passed down through	تنتقل من خلال	make their own food	تصنع طعامها بنفسها
be released into the air	تنتقل في الهواء	remove something from	يزيل شيء من
become interested in	يصبح مهتما بـ	research the causes of	يبحث في أسباب ...
change..from...into...	يتغير من..إلى..	result from	ينتج من
compare results with	يقارن النتائج مع	specialize in	يتخصص في
find a cure for	يجد علاجاً لـ	test the theory with experiments	يختبر النظرية عن طريق التجارب
an article about	مقالة عن	get together	يتقابل

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adj.	
achieve	يحقق	achievement	تحقيق / انجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
cure	يعالج	cure	علاج	curable	يمكن علاجه
diagnose	يشخص	diagnosis	تشخيص	curative	علاجي
dry	يجفف	dryness	الجفاف	diagnostic	تشخيصي
experiment	يجري تجربة	experiment	تجربة	dried	جاف
prove	يثبت / يبرهن	proof	إثبات / برهان / دليل	experimental	تجريبي
regret	يندم / يتأسف	regret	الندم / الأسف	proven	مُبرهن
release	يطلق	release	انطلاق	regrettable	يؤسف له
specialise	يتخصص	specialisation	تخصص	released	منطلق
sterilise	يعقم	specialist	متخصص (للشخص)	specialised	متخصص
water	يروي	sterilisation	التعقيم	sterilised	معقم
		water	ماء	watery	مائي / مشبع بالماء

Definitions

achieve	to succeed in doing something good or getting the result you want	يحقق / ينجز
amount	how much of something there is	كمية / مقدار
cancer	a serious disease in which cells in someone's body grow in a way that is not normal	سرطان
cure (n)	medicine or treatment that can make an injury or illness better	علاج
diabetes	a disease in which there is too much sugar in your blood	مرض السكر
gain (v)	to increase in something	يزداد / يكتسب
gradually	something that happens slowly, over a long time	تدريجياً
invisible	impossible to see	غير مرئي
process (n)	a series of events or changes that happen naturally	عملية
regularly	often, at regular times, for example, every day, week or month	بانتظام
release (v)	let go; stop holding something	يُطلق / إطلاق
result	something that happens or exists because of something else	نتيجة
specialise	to limit most of your study, business, etc., to a particular subject or activity	يتخصص
theory	an explanation for something that has not yet been proved to be true	نظرية

Language Notes

- Rise / rose / risen (يستيقظ / ينهض / يزداد) = (go up, increase) لا يليها مفعول

- Smoke rose from the chimney.
- Oil prices are rising all the time.
- The sun rises at around 6 a.m.

- rise (n.) (زيادة في الأجور / ارتفاع) (increase / increase in wages)

- There was a sudden rise in temperature yesterday.
- He got a 10% rise last year.

- Raise / raised / raised (T) يليها مفعول

- Raise your hand if you know the answer.
- The government does its best to raise the standard of living.
- The concert raised a lot of money for cancer research. يجمع
- Raise your voice ارفع صوتك
- Raise hopes/ fears/ suspicions ... يثير الخوف/الشك
- Raise a subject / question / point يطرح للمناقشة موضوع أو يثير تساؤل

- Arise / arose / arisen (بدون مفعول) = begin to happen ينشأ / يحدث

- A lot of problems usually arise at work.

- Arouse/aroused (يثير (للمشاعر والأحاسيس) / يوقظ (يليه مفعول)

- Her behavior aroused the suspicions of the police. يثير شكوك

- factor (عامل / جمعها عوامل) - The weather could be a crucial factor in tomorrow's game.

- factory مصنع - There is a car factory in our town.

لاحظ أن الصفات تأتي عادة قبل الأسماء ولكن تأتي بعد الكلمات الآتية:

- Something / everything / anything / nothing / somebody etc.

- Have you read anything interesting lately?
- Let's go somewhere quiet.

- Like = similar to/ in the same way as

- He eats like a horse.
- He is like a son to me.

لاحظ استخدام like مع الأفعال الآتية: seem / sound / look / feel / taste

- The garden looks like a jungle.
- At last he felt like a real soldier.
- It seems like a good idea.

- Like = for example - Things like glass, paper, and plastic can all be recycled.

- Regrettable (شيء / يؤسف له) - His behaviour at the party was very regrettable.

- Regretful شاعر بالندم - He was regretful when he had to leave his old house.

- tasty = delicious لذيذ الطعم - The meal was very tasty.

- tasteful يُثم عن الذوق الرفيع - She bought tasteful furniture.

- testy = irritable عصبي / سريع الغضب - He is a testy person.

- As + job ك... - He works as a doctor.

- Such as = for example - Things such as glass, paper, and plastic can all be recycled.

- As = because - He didn't come to school as he was ill.

- As = while / when - I saw Esraa as I was getting off the bus.

- As = though / although - Hard as he studied, he failed the test.

- As for + someone / something بالنسبة لـ - I am good at English. As for my brother, he likes maths.

- As of / as from = starting from (بداية من وقت معين) - As from today, you are in charge of the office.

- series (سلسلة / أحداث / كتب / أفلام / اجتماعات) (جمع ومفرد) (sing. / pl.)

- I'm keen on watching the editor series on TV.

- Serial مسلسل - A lot of exciting serials are shown in Ramadan.

- Serious جاد / خطير - I'm not joking. I'm serious.

- The government is trying to solve the serious problem of unemployment.

Amount of (n.) كمية من - The project will take a huge amount of time and money.

A number of (n.) عدد من - They received a number of complaints.

Amount to + sth ما يوازي - He gave what amounted to an apology.

- cure (v) يعالج مريض
 - cure (v) يعالج مرض
 - cure (v) (of) يعالج مريض من مرض ونضع حرف الجر
 - cure (n) (for) علاج ونستخدم حرف الجر
 - heal (cuts – wounds – burns – broken bones) يلتئم (بدون أو بمفعول) ويكون المفعول إحدى هذه الكلمات
 - His wound took along time to heal. - This ointment heals cuts.

- see يرى - I can't see without my glasses. - It was too dark to see anything.
 - see + object + (v + ing) يرى - Ahmed has seen the plants growing.
 - see = understand يفهم - Do you see how it works?
 - see = think يفكر - Let me see for a while.

- Feed يطعم - She can't feed her baby.
 - feed on يتغذى على - Lions feed on meat.
 - feed some thing into يضع فى - They fed the wet fibers into the paper- making machine.
 - feed up with يمل من - I'm fed up with such songs.

- Achieve (v.) ينجز - I have achieved my ambition.
 - achievable (adj.) يمكن تحقيقه - Dreams should be achievable .
 - Achievement (n.) انجاز - He is very modest about his achievements.

- achiever (adj.) ناجح - He is from a family of high achievers.
Specialise in (v.) يتخصص في - She works for a company specializing in law.
Specialist متخصص - He is a specialist in childhood diseases.
Specialisation تخصص - Specialization is the trend of all scholars.
Specially (adv.) خصوصا - I made this specially for you.

- theory نظرية - I don,t believe in Darwin's theory .
 - theorist مؤمن بنظرية - He is a political theorist.
 - in theory نظريا - The theory has never been proved yet.
 - theoretically نظريا - It is theoretically possible.
 - theoretical نظري - His theoretical thinking can't be practical without hardwork.

- Visible مرئي -The fire was visible from five km away.
 - Invisible (adj.) غير مرئي -The house was invisible from the road.
 - Visibility رؤية - وضوح -It was foggy and the visibility was down to 50 metres.
 - Vision وجهة نظر - ابصار - تخطيط -He has poor vision in his left eye.
 - release (v.) يطلق سراح - يبعث- يعلن عن معلومات
 - He was released on bail كفالة. -The government hasn't released the dead woman's name.

- Soil تربة زراعية - We can't grow plants here. It is a salty soil.
 - land اليابسة- ارض - Many farmers were forced to leave their land.
 - earth الارض (كوكب)- تراب - The spaceship returned to earth.
 - Ground ارض (ملعب) ارضية علمية او معرفية - I sat down on the ground.
 - dust تراب ناعم - غبار - He drove off in a cloud of dust.

- Result (n.) نتيجة - Unemployment is the result of the new economic policy.
 - result from (v.) ينجم عن - There was a food shortage resulting from the lack of rainfall.
 - Result in (v.) - يؤدي الي - Smoking result in cancer.

- diabetes مرض السكر - People who have diabetes must be very careful about what they eat.
 - Diabetic (adj.) مريض بالسكر - She has been diabetic since she was a child.

- pricey = expensive غالي الثمن - The clothes are beautiful but very pricey.
 - priceless = of very great value لا يُقدَّر بثمن
 - A priceless collection of paintings was stolen from the museum.

language functions :Regrets

wishes	regrets
-- I wish + فاعل + could/ would + مصدر	- If only I could + مصدر -----
- I wish I had+ p.p -----	- I wish I could + مصدر -----
- I wish it didn't -----	- I am sorry that -----
- He wishes he -----	- I am sorry for -----
- I dream of + v + ing -----	- I am disappointed that -----
- My goal is to + مصدر -----	- I regret + v + ing -----

Exercises

Respond the following situations:

1. A friend asks what subject you would like to be better at.
2. A friend is looking worried. You want to know why. What do you ask?
3. Someone asks if you had a good holiday. You enjoyed your holiday, but the weather wasn't very good. This was a disappointment.
4. Someone asks you about a school trip you went on. You learnt a lot, but you did not take as many photos as you had planned to.
5. You did not study last year. Express regret.
6. You hope to be a doctor. Express wish.
7. You said something made people angry. Show regret .
8. You travelled to Cairo by bus she did not like that. Express regret.

- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1-A: Could you give me a single ticket to Luxor please? B : Here you are , it is 60 pounds.
 A: Which platform? B: No. 5

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

2- A: Where to ? B :To the airport, Terminal 2. A : Ok , I will hurry to get you on time.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

3-A:- Can I help you, sir? B:- Yes, please. I'd like to have these pants cleaned and pressed.
 A:- O.K. We can have them ready for you tomorrow. B:- Fine.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

4- A:- Thank you for finding me a seat. B:- You're welcome, sir.
 A:- When will the play start? B:- In a few minutes.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Medical crews two people from the collapsed house.

- a) removed b) retreated c) reduced d) retained

2. One..... of the cold weather has been a sharp increase in the electricity bills.
 a) *cause* b) *result* c) *reason* d) *purpose*
3. Freudian has had a great influence on psychology.
 a) *plan* b) *basis* c) *fact* d) *theory*
4. show that many plants tolerate a wide range of light condition.
 a) *Operations* b) *Experiences* c) *Experiments* d) *Fairs*
5. Micro-organisms are without a microscope.
 a) *visual* b) *invisible* c) *visible* d) *seen*
6. There was a improvement in her school work.
 a) *gradual* b) *graded* c) *gradually* d) *graduated*
7. My doctor didn't know what was wrong with me, so he sent me to see a.....
 a) *special* b) *chemist* c) *specialized* d) *specialist*
8. anyone can travel to the moon.
 a) *Practically* b) *Functionally* c) *Theoretically* d) *Mechanically*
9. There is nothing to with a nice cold drink when you get home after work.
 a) *contain* b) *compare* c) *insult* d) *consult*
10. The number of.. crimes has increased dramatically in the last year.
 a) *safe* b) *favourable* c) *serious* d) *sincere*
11. I'm eating less than usual because I don't want to too much weight.
 a) *gain* b) *win* c) *achieve* d) *earn*
12. At school, students learn many subjects, but when they get to university, they usually.....
 a) *specialize* b) *socialize* c) *industrialize* d) *computerize*
13. People who have must be very careful about what they eat.
 a) *diabetic* b) *wealthy* c) *diabetes* d) *smallpox*
14. Britain has the highest rate of economic growth in Europe this year.
 a) *relieved* b) *deceived* c) *received* d) *achieved*
15. Plants oxygen and take in carbon dioxide.
 a) *realise* b) *release* c) *sneeze* d) *computerize*
16. He is doing some for an article about the president's life.
 a) *result* b) *discovery* c) *invention* d) *research*
17. Germs are without a microscope. However they may cause infection.
 a) *visible* b) *seen* c) *invisible* d) *vision*
18. His greatest..... was becoming the captain of the national team when he was 16.
 a) *attention* b) *achievement* c) *location* d) *contradiction*
19. All the medical team are after a for the lady's case.
 a) *cure* b) *statement* c) *state* d) *condition*
20. Rain forests shouldn't be They are the home of wild animals and plants.
 a) *planted* b) *moved* c) *recovered* d) *removed*
21. I found playing the guitar very difficult at first, but in the last two weeks I have.... improved.
 a) *graduation* b) *gradual* c) *gradually* d) *graded*
22. Oxygen from the water is..... into the atmosphere.
 a) *relieved* b) *released* c) *delivered* d) *deceived*
23. Scientists test their..... by doing experiments.
 a) *process* b) *experiences* c) *effects* d) *theories*
24. When the earth moves, it causes earthquakes. This is a completely natural.....
 a) *process* b) *experiment* c) *operation* d) *experience*
25. A huge of water came down the river and flooded the city.
 a) *quality* b) *amount* c) *number* d) *sum*
26. We visit our grandparents We see them every Monday.
 a) *gradually* b) *generally* c) *locally* d) *regularly*
27. Vegetables and fruit grow well in sandy.....
 a) *ground* b) *floor* c) *soil* d) *earth*
28. In order to a theory, the scientist had to make a lot of experiments.
 a) *imply* b) *conduct* c) *prove* d) *provide*
29. Evidence has been found to..... his innocence.
 a) *improve* b) *prove* c) *provide* d) *move*
30. They are entitled to that the will is valid.

- a) *check* b) *kick* c) *shake* d) *guess*
31. industry is one of the factors that leads to pollution.
a) *Chemist* b) *Chemical* c) *Chemistry* d) *Chemically*
32. It was lovely being able to swim and thenoff in the sun.
a) *clean* b) *grind* c) *drain* d) *dry*
33. We should have enough food to the increasing population.
a) *eat* b) *swallow* c) *feed* d) *taste*
34. Reference books may not be.....from public libraries.
a) *stored* b) *removed* c) *reloaded* d) *remained*
35. They'll have to your knowledge of computers.
a) *test* b) *taste* c) *tempt* d) *try*
36. You must the plants or they will fade.
a) *grow* b) *cultivate* c) *water* d) *sow*
37. How much do you? - 75 kilograms.
a) *run* b) *pay* c) *plant* d) *weigh*
38. Astronomers have made significantabout our galaxy.
a) *discoveries* b) *researches* c) *promises* d) *suggestions*
39. Poor people can't afford the most basic..... treatment.
a) *medicine* b) *medical* c) *medicinal* d) *medico*
40. This house is the same as it was 20 years ago.
a) *exactness* b) *exact* c) *exactly* d) *exacting*
41. Reda wants to be a famous surgeon. So he is doing his best to achieve his
a) *ambition* b) *ambitious* c) *petition* d) *cause*
42. sure that he has done the right thing.
a) *Do* b) *Make* c) *Take* d) *Get*
43. He wants to specialize civil engineering. His goal is to be a famous engineer.
a) *at* b) *on* c) *in* d) *of*
44. She is interested making internet friends.
a) *at* b) *on* c) *off* d) *in*
45. Mother was worried..... my brother as he was late.
a) *about* b) *by* c) *with* d) *off*
46. The bad weather was the cause..... the plane delay.
a) *for* b) *about* c) *of* d) *on*
47. I can see the advantages of this for you but will I benefitit?
a) *of* b) *from* c) *about* d) *in*
48. Students learn computer to keep up.....modem technology.
a) *by* b) *off* c) *with* d) *in*
49. My uncle is a clever He is trained to prepare drugs and medicines.
a) *vet* b) *chemist* c) *botanist* d) *surgeon*
50. The damage caused by chemical industry should be analysed and treated.
a) *astronomical* b) *biological* c) *environmental* d) *medical*
51. The only way to my English was by living in London for a while.
a) *improve* b) *provide* c) *prove* d) *improvise*
52. The teachers say Ali is able to..... better on condition that he should concentrate.
a) *have* b) *improve* c) *do* d) *make*
53. Our neighbour works a journalist for one of the most famous newspapers.
a) *like* b) *as* c) *so* d) *such*
54. He decided his journey to Kuwait because of his son's illness.
a) *postpone* b) *postponing* c) *to postponing* d) *to postpone*
55. When he became grown enough, he was able to his own food.
a) *make* b) *perform* c) *do* d) *help*
56. My car is the..... as yours. It is difficult to differentiate between them.
a) *similar* b) *alike* c) *same* d) *like*
57. Are you capable of..... decisions on your own?
a) *doing* b) *giving* c) *causing* d) *making*
58. She suffers from a rare of the central nervous system.
a) *disease* b) *trait* c) *characteristic* d) *benefit*

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. Achieve is to fail to do something you wanted to do
2. A huge number of water came down the river and flooded the city.
3. A result is something that happens and leads to something else.
4. A theory is an explanation for something which has been proved to be true.
5. Ageing is the natural recess of getting old.
6. As most people, he thought that plants get their food from soil.
7. Diabetes is a disease in which there is too much water in the blood.
8. Do you come here regularity? –No, I've only been here once before.
9. During this operation, oxygen and sugar are produced.
10. Gradually means quickly, over a short time.
11. He paid regular numbers of money to a charity.
12. He planted a small tree in a put.
13. He proved the old wallpaper and filled the holes in the walls.
14. He would like to be able to playing the piano.
15. His height was the like as it had been five years earlier.
16. How much do you weight?
17. I am eating less; I don't want to achieve too much weight.
18. I saw Ali play football yesterday.
19. John has earned a lot of weight recently.
20. Plants can change the energy from the sun into chemistry energy.
21. Scientists test their results by doing experiments.
22. The child hid behind the tree and thought he was visible but we saw his head.
23. The company holds burglar meetings with employees.
24. The scientist decided to test the theory with experiences.
25. These trees grow well in a sandy cell.
26. To Specialise is to work on many different subjects.
27. Using a telescope, Galileo discovered stars that were indivisible to the naked eye.
28. We visit our grandparents gradually, we see them every Friday.
29. When the earth moves, it causes earthquakes, this is a natural amount.
30. You will never win very much if you do not work hard.

Translate into Arabic:

Everyone has seen plants growing, but have you ever thought where they get their food? In 1652, a European scientist called Van Helmot asked this question. Like most people, he thought that plants must get their food from soil. However, Van Helmot decided to test the theory with experiments.

Fortunately, plants and trees take in Carbon dioxide and give out oxygen. In fact , each year the plants of the world extract about 150 billion tons of this poisonous gas from the air so, if the balance of nature is changed we could poison ourselves.

Food for all is a slogan like "Reading for all" the first aims at feeding bodies, but the second aims at feeding souls. A hungry world is not a safe and peaceful one. So, the Government must do its best to provide food for all.

The first case of the H1N1 'swine flu' virus was reported in June, and surgical masks became the latest fashion trend. Doctors and scientists are racing with time to find an effective cure for this virus

Translate into English:

- يحول النبات طاقة الشمس الي طاقة كيميائية.

- أثناء عملية البناء الضوئي ينتج كل من الأكسجين والسكر .

- البكتيريا والجراثيم كائنات دقيقة وغير مرئية .

- الأشجار بالنسبة للبيئة مثل الرنتين بالنسبة للإنسان .

- تتحول الطاقة الشمسية الى طاقة كيميائية أثناء عملية البناء الضوئي .

- لقد وهب الله مصر كثير من الموارد الطبيعية التي لو احسن استغلالها لاصبحنا من أغنى الدول

Grammar

I wish / If only

I wish / If only

- يأتي بعدهما الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أمنية في المضارع

- I wish I had a flat.

- Omer wishes he were a millionaire.

- لاحظ أنه يفضل استخدام **were** مع كل الضمانر

- I have to get up early.

- I wish I didn't have to get up early.

- There is a lot of smoke here.

- If only there wasn't (weren't) a lot of smoke here.

- I wish I saw him now.

- If only I saw him now.

- يأتي بعدهما الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن تمنى حدوث شيء لحظة الكلام:

- I wish I was lying on the beach right now!

If only I was lying on the beach right now!

- يأتي بعدها **could + inf** مع كل الضمانر في حالة تمنى القدرة على عمل شيء أو أن يكون شيء ما حقيقيا في المضارع:

- I wish I could sing.

- Ali wishes he could speak chinese.

I wish / If only

- يأتي بعدهما ماضي تام للتعبير عن التمني في الماضي

- I failed the test. - I wish I hadn't failed the test. = - I wish I had passed the test.

- I feel sick. I ate so much cake yesterday.

- I feel sick. If only I hadn't eaten so much cake yesterday.

- I wish I had seen him yesterday.

- If only I had seen him yesterday.

- في حالة وجود فعل آخر مع **I wish / If only** في الماضي :

- If only she hadn't told the police, everything would have been all right.

- I wish he hadn't wasted all his money. He would have bought a new house.

- في حالة وجود فعل مضاف له **(ing)** بعد **regret** نستخدم الماضي التام بعد **I wish**

- I regret not studying hard. = - I wish I had studied hard.

I wish / If only

- في حالة التعبير عن المستقبل نستخدم **could + inf** مع **I / We** ويمكن استخدام **would** مع **she / he / it / you / they**

- I wish I could see my friends tomorrow.

- I wish he would visit me next week.

- I wish I could meet him tomorrow.

- If only I could meet him tomorrow.

wish to + inf. = want to

- يريد - يتمنى

- I wish to see the manager, please.

- If you wish to reserve a table, please telephone after 5 o'clock.

wish ... + n. (wish someone something)

- I wish you a speedy recovery.

- I wish her good luck.

- I wish them a happy life.

hope

- يأتي بعد **(hope)** إما مضارع بسيط أو مستقبل

- I hope he passes the test.

= - I hope he will pass the test.

hope

- ويأتي بعدها (المصدر + to)

- I hope to win the first prize.

لاحظ الآتي

1- لا يأتي فعل مضارع بعد I wish / If only ولا مستقبل على الإطلاق بعدهم

- I wish I (live – have lived – will live – lived) near you.

2 - تستخدم were مع كل الضمانر بعدها للاستحالة اذا كانت الأمنية في المضارع

- I wish I were in London now .

- I wish the car were cheap.

- لاحظ المعنى بالعكس والزمن الماضي

- I wish I could be a doctor . = I hope I will be a doctor.

- I wish it were fine today. = It 's a pity it is not fine = I am afraid It is a pity it is hot

- I wish I knew his address . = It 's a pity I don't know his address.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- 1) I didn't attend the party last night. I wish Ibeen there.
a) had b) have c) can d) could
- 2) My dearest hope is to be a doctor. I wish Ibe a doctor.
a) can b) could c) will d) had
- 3) Rasha regretted buying such an old car. She wishes a new one.
a) bought b) would buy c) buys d) had bought
- 4) Ahmed won the third prize. He wishes he.....the first one .
a) had won b) wins c) would win d) has won
- 5) I didn't watch last night's film. I wish Iit .
a) watch b) could watch c) had watched d) watched
- 6) I don't earn much money. I wish Imuch money now.
a) earn b) had earned c) earned d) earns
- 7) I can't afford to buy my wife a diamond ring but I wish I..... .
a) will b) have c) had d) could
- 8) I'm not ready for the match. If only I.....ready for it.
a) can b) were c) could d) had
- 9) It's very hot today. I wish itcold.
a) is b) would c) could d) were
- 10) I expect he will arrive soon. I wish hedo that.
a) would b) could c) can d) may
- 11) I quarrelled with my neighbours last night. I wishdone so.
a) had b) hadn't c) haven't d) wouldn't
- 12) I wish you.....waken me early yesterday.
a) would b) could c) had d) has
- 13) I'd like to give up smoking but I can't. If onlygive it up.
a) will b) could c) can d) would
- 14) Iyou will be better soon.
a) hope b) look forward to c) look d) wish
- 15) He regretted not attending yesterday's conference. He wished he there.
a) would be b) could be c) was d) had been
- 16) I haven't got any friends. I wishhave some.
a) will b) had c) can d) could
- 17) I really regret playing football in the street. If only done that
a) had b) hadn't c) can't d) couldn't
- 18) I can't concentrate. I wish they.....turn that music down.
a) can b) will c) could d) would
- 19) It's a pity she didn't go to the wedding party. She wished she there
a) had gone b) could go c) will go d) went
- 20) She blamed herself for not saving enough money in the past. She wished .she saved a lot.
a) has b) would c) had d) could
- 21) I wish Imeet you tomorrow.
a) will b) can c) could d) would

- 22) The weather is cold today. I wish itwarm.
a) were b) had c) has d) is
- 23) I dream of being a pilot. This means I wish I.....be a pilot.
a) would b) could c) can d) may
- 24) I regretted not seeing her off at the airport. I wish Idone so.
a) were b) was c) had d) have
- 25) I'm sorry I can't speak German. If only Ispeak German.
a) will b) could c) have d) had
- 26) I missed the last train to Alex. I wishit .
a) had caught b) would catch c) could catch d) caught
- 27) My goal is to be a successful businessman. I wish I.....be a successful one .
a) will b) can c) had d) could
- 28) This bag is very heavy. I wish itvery light.
a) will b) were c) is d) would
- 29) I wish I.....at the wedding, but I was in New York .
a) would b) could c) were d) had been
- 30) I wish Ithe match fast week.
a) had watched b) watch c) could watch d) watched
- 31) I wish youthe new film on TV last night.
a) had seen b) saw c) have seen d) would see
- 32) If only we.....London next year.
a) will visit b) are visiting c) could visit d) had visited
- 33) I wish Itravel abroad next year.
a) will b) can c) may d) could
- 34) If only hewith us now.
a) am b) were c) had been d) will be
- 35) He wishes hehis PHD next month.
a) would get b) will get c) gets d) had got
- 36) If only I.....my exams last year.
a) passed b) could pass c) would pass d) had passed
- 37) I wish our team.....the match yesterday.
a) hadn't lost b) wasn't losing c) wouldn't lose d) couldn't lose
- 38) I wish he.....his car last week.
a) wouldn't sell b) hadn't sold c) didn't sell d) couldn't sell
- 39) If only I.....short.
a) didn't b) couldn't c) weren't d) wouldn't
- 40) I wish I what I was going to do when I leave school.
a- know b- knew c- have known d- will know
- 41) I wish I.....more revision this year.
a- had done b- did c- would do d- could do
- 42) I just wish I.....harder this year.
a- had worked b- worked c- would work d- could work
- 43) I wish I my time in the holidays.
a- hadn't wasted b- haven't wasted c- can not waste d- wouldn't waste
- 44) I wish there something I was really interested in.
a- is b- has been c- were d- could be
- 45) They spent all their money in the holidays and they are sorry now. They wish they all their money in the holidays
a- hadn't spent b- didn't spend c- wouldn't spend d- couldn't spend
- 46) I don't know where my friends are. I wish I...where my friends were.
a- know b- knew c- had known d- would know
- 47) He'd like to be better at sport .He wishes he better at sport.
a- is b- has been c- were d- could be
- 48) She wishes she to phone her parents to say she was going to be late , but she forgot.
a- had remembered b- has remembered c- remembered d- could remember
- 49) I'm sorry about the things I said yesterday. My friend was really upset. I wish I those things yesterday.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>a- didn't say</i> | <i>b- hadn't said</i> | <i>c- haven't said</i> | <i>d- couldn't say</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
- 50) Ali wishes he so many things to do before he goes to bed.
- | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>a- didn't get</i> | <i>b- hadn't get</i> | <i>c- hasn't got</i> | <i>d- wouldn't get</i> |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
- 51) Ali wishes itso late because he has still got things to do before he goes to bed.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>a- isn't</i> | <i>b- hasn't been</i> | <i>c- wasn't</i> | <i>d- couldn't be</i> |
|-----------------|-----------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
- 52) I wish the school holidays longer.
- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| <i>a- are</i> | <i>b- will be</i> | <i>c- are going to be</i> | <i>d- were</i> |
|---------------|-------------------|---------------------------|----------------|
- 53) If only I where I put my mobile phone.
- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>a- haven't forgotten</i> | <i>b- hadn't forgotten</i> | <i>c- didn't forgot</i> | <i>d- can't forget</i> |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
- 54) Leila wishes she read faster.
- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>a- will</i> | <i>b- can</i> | <i>c- could</i> | <i>d- would</i> |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
- 55) I'm really tired this morning. I wish I more last night.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>a- slept</i> | <i>b- had slept</i> | <i>c- could sleep</i> | <i>d- would sleep</i> |
|-----------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
- 56) Ali wishes he to your party, but he's not feeling well.
- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>a- can come</i> | <i>b- had come</i> | <i>c- could come</i> | <i>d- has come</i> |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
- 57) I wish I her my dictionary. She's taken it home with her.
- | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>a- didn't lent</i> | <i>b- hadn't lent</i> | <i>c- wouldn't lend</i> | <i>d- couldn't lend</i> |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
- 58) My dad wishes he a bigger car, but he doesn't.
- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| <i>a-has</i> | <i>b- had</i> | <i>c- had had</i> | <i>d- has had</i> |
|--------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|
- 59) My brother wishes he medicine at university, but he didn't.
- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>a- going to study</i> | <i>b- studied</i> | <i>c- had studied</i> | <i>d- has studied</i> |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
- 60) They wish they speak French.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| <i>a- could</i> | <i>b- can</i> | <i>c- will</i> | <i>d- may</i> |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- Ali wishes he can come to your party, but he's not feeling well.
- Ali wishes he may see his friends at the party tomorrow.
- He wishes he can play the piano when he grows up.
- I hope I had time to watch TV tonight.
- I wish Ali could visit Cairo next week;
- I wish I am in Alexandria now.
- I wish I am old enough to vote. I am still 15.
- I wish I didn't lent her my dictionary. She's taken it home with her.
- I wish I don't listen to him. He only wasted my time.
- I wish I had yesterday off. I'd have gone swimming.
- I wish I have time to watch TV, but I am so busy.
- I wish I may travel to London next year.
- I wish I went to the movie with you last night.
- I wish shops here deliver. You have to go and get everything by yourself.
- I wish the school holidays are longer.
- If only I apply for that job a year ago.
- If only I can go with you tonight, but my parents won't let me.
- If only I haven't forgotten where I put my mobile phone.
- If only I stay in my last job. My current job is so boring.
- I'm really tired this morning. I wish I slept more last night.
- Leila wishes she can read faster.
- My brother wishes he studied medicine at university, but he didn't.
- My dad wishes he has a bigger car, but he doesn't.
- She wishes she have more time, but she is too busy.
- She wishes she listened to the teacher's advice. She could have succeeded.
- The boss wishes speaking to you right now.
- They wish they can speak French.

Test 10

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

- A packet of chocolate is on a high shelf which you cannot reach.
- You did badly at the English exam as you didn't revise well.
- You meet a French tourist but you can't speak French.
- You rode the bike so fast that you had an accident.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1 A: Your ticket, please. B: Here you are. A: Seat R8.
B: Thank you. When does the film start? A: At 9.00

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

2. A : Can I help you, sir? B: Yes, please. I'd like to have this suit cleaned and pressed.
A: O.K. We can have them ready for you tomorrow. B: Fine.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

B- Vocabulary and structure

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The of the experiment surprised everyone.
a- cause b- income c- result d- reasons
- You will never very much if you do not work hard.
a- achieve d- get c- do d- have
- At school, students learn many subjects, but when they get to university, they usually
a- specialist Specialise c- specially d- special
- Scientists often do experiments to prove a particular
a- opinion b- point of view c- theory d- view
- I found playing the guitar very difficult at first, but in the last two weeks I've improved.
a- gradual b- gradually c- graded d- suddenly
- People who have must be very careful about what they eat.
a- diabetes b- headache c- smallpox d- backache
- She has been since she was a child.
a- diabetes b- diabetic c- diabolical d- diabolically
- His greatest was becoming the captain of the national team when he was 16.
a- achievement b- achieve c- achiever d- achievable
- I wish I what I was going to do when I leave school.
a- know b- knew c- have known d- will know
- I wish I more revision this year.
a- had done b- did c- would do d- could do
- I just wish I harder this year.
a- had worked b- worked c- would work d- could work
- I wish I my time in the holidays.
a- hadn't wasted b- haven't wasted c- can not waste d- wouldn't waste
- I wish there something I was really interested in.
a- is b- has been c- were d- could be
- They spent all their money in the holidays and they are sorry now. They wish they all their money in the holidays
a- hadn't spent b- didn't spend c- wouldn't spend d- couldn't spend
- I don't know where my friends are. I wish I where my friends were.
a- know b- knew c- had known d- would know
- He'd like to be better at sport .He wishes he better at sport.
a- is b- has been c- were d- could be

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- He wishes he worked harder next year.
- I hope I had been there yesterday.
- Scientists make experiments at labs.
- Space scientists try to make nuclear power safer and cleaner.
- Visible is impossible to be seen.
- We wish we had got up earlier; we will have caught the train.

C- Reading

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions

Il Polio is the name of Italy's most famous horse race. It has taken place in the main square of the city of Siena on 2nd July and 16th August every year for hundreds of years. Siena has 17 districts,

each with its own flag. The people who live in these districts used to be enemies who fought each other, and though there are no longer fights, each district is still very proud of its riders and hopes they will win the race. On the morning of the race, the horses and the riders can be seen walking through the city. People wear bright clothes and hold their district's flag. The horses have to run round the square three times and the race lasts around 90 seconds. The winner is not always the rider: a horse can win the race even if the rider falls off.

A - Answer the following questions:

- 1 Where does Il Polio take place?
- 2 How long does the race last?
- 3 What do the people of Siena have in their hands when they watch the race?

B - choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

- 4 How many times a year does the race take place?
a once b twice c three times d seventeen times
- 5 What does the word each refer to in Siena has 17 districts, each with its own flag?
a each rider b each district c each horse d each race

6. Read the following passage then answer the questions

Scientists are very important to our future. What kinds of problems can they help us solve? Here are just a few of these. Scientists can help farmers to produce good quality food for the world's growing population. They can also develop new crops which do not suffer from diseases. Scientists and engineers can work with car companies to produce cars and other vehicles which use fuel more efficiently. At the same time, research scientists are looking for new types of energy to replace oil and petrol. Other scientists, too, are doing research into new treatments for serious illnesses. But perhaps the most important work scientists are doing is to find ways of reducing global warming.

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1 What is the main subject of this text?
- 2 In what two ways are scientists helping farmers?
- 3 How are scientists helping the medical profession?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

- 4 Scientists are helping car companies by producing ...
a- cheaper cars. b- faster cars. c- more efficient cars. d- the problems
- 5 What does these refer to in Here are just a few of these?
a- the scientists b- kinds of food c- the farmers d- safer cars.

D- The Prisoner of Zenda

7- Answer the following questions :

1. Sapt brings news of the real King. What is it?
2. Why does Rassendyll want to go to Zenda? What does Sapt mean when he says "You 'll probably stay there forever if you do"?
3. Why does Sapt have Rassendyll followed everywhere? What does he mean by "If you disappear, the game's over"?
4. Who writes a letter to Rassendyll and what does it say? Who does he suspect really wrote it?

B) Read following quotation and answer the questions:

"It would be very useful for Michael if you disappeared. And if you disappear, the game's over."

1. Who says this to whom?
2. Why does the speaker say this?
3. What game would be over if the person disappeared? Explain.

C) Complete the following sentences :

1. Rassendyll is sad to say goodbye to Duke Michael and his men.
2. The letter tells the King to come to the summer house with a friend.

E - Writing

8- Write a paragraph about 100 words about

A famous Egyptian scientist

Translate into Arabic:

Do you know how dangerous stress can be? It affects us both physically and mentally. So, reducing stress is something that we should all try to do through some form of exercise.

Translate into English:

1- تدعو الديانات السماوية كلها إلى الحب والسلام والتسامح ونبذ العنف.

2- البحث العلمي هو الوسيلة الوحيدة للتقدم ومسايرة ركب الحضارة.

Call for	يدعو لـ	Heavenly religions	اديان سماوية
Civilisation	حضارة	Progress	تقدم
Cope up with	يساير	Tolerance	التسامح
Discard	ينبذ	Violence	العنف

Unit 11
Dumas : The Count of Monte Cristo

accuracy	دقة	enthusiastic	متحمس	nationality	جنسية
accurate	دقيق	envious	حسود	nephew	ابن الأخ / الأخت
accuse of	يتهم	father-in-law	والد الزوج أو الزوجة	niece	بنت الأخ / الأخت
acquit	يبرئ	fiancé	خطيب	novelist	روائي
advance	يُقدم	fiancée	خطيبة	obedient	مطيع
adventure stories	قصص المغامرات	finance (n / v)	تمويل / موارد مالية	object = oppose	يعترض
approve / accept	يوافق / يقبل	financial crisis	أزمة مالية	orphan	يتيم
assistant	مساعد	financial problems	مشكلات مالية	playwright	كاتب مسرحي
bearable	يمكن احتماله	gestures	إيماءات	poems	قصائد
bride	عروس	gloomy	حزين	poet	شاعر
bridegroom	عريس	guest	ضيف	poetry	الشعر
captain	قبطان	happy	سعيد	politician	شخص سياسي
cautious	حذر	hazards	مخاطر / أخطار	preventive measures	إجراءات وقائية
channel	قناة	historical	مرتبط بالتاريخ	recognize	يتعرف علي
contemporary	معاصر	historical novel	رواية تاريخية	revenge	الانتقام / ينتقم
convict	يُدين / مُدان	historical story	قصة تاريخية	Sane X insane	عاقل X مجنون
count	كونت	host	مضيف	soil pollution	تلوث التربة
countess	كونتيسة	immediate success	نجاح فوري	step father	زوج الأم
criticize	ينقد	imminent danger	خطر وشيك	step mother	زوجة الأب
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	imprisonment	الحبس / السجن	take revenge	يثأر / ينتقم
delay	يؤخر	interrupt	يقاطع (الحديث)	technical problem	مشكلة فنية
desertification	التصحّر	lecturer	محاضر	treason = betrayal	الخيانة
diamond	ماس	loyalty	ولاء / إخلاص	truth	الحقيقة
divorce	طلاق	marine life	الحياة البحرية	unbearable	لا يطاق
dowry	مهر	mathematician	عالم رياضيات	unemployed	عاطل
ecology	علم دراسة البيئة	mother-in-law	والدة الزوج أو الزوجة	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
employ	يوظف	multimedia	الوسائط المتعددة	victim	ضحية
employed	عامل	musketeer	فارس	widow	أرملة
encounter	يواجه	nation	أمة / دولة	widower	أرمل

Words & antonyms

accuse	يتهم	acquit	يبرئ
bearable	يمكن احتماله	unbearable	لا يمكن احتماله / لا يطاق
delay	يؤخر	advance	يُقدم
employed (adj.)	عامل	unemployed	عاطل
happy	سعيد	gloomy	حزين
marry	يتزوج	divorce	يطلق
obedient	مطيع	disobedient	غير مطيع
object	يعترض	approve/accept	يوافق / يقبل
reward	يكافأ	punish	يعاقب
single	أعزب	married	متزوج
treason	الخيانة	loyalty	ولاء / إخلاص
visible	مرئي	invisible	غير مرئي

Expressions

access to	الحق في دخول أو استخدام أو الحصول على شيء	listen to music	يستمتع للموسيقى
at lunchtime	في وقت الغداء	look with envy at	ينظر بحسد إلى
be carved out of	يكون منحوتا من	make up songs	يؤلف أغاني
be influenced by	يتأثر بـ	occupy a volume of	يشغل حجما قدره
be made up of	يتكون من	pass from ... to	ينتقل من...إلى..
cheer up	يبتهج	sing babies to sleep	يغني للأطفال لكي يناموا
come up to the surface	يصعد إلى السطح	take responsibility for	يتحمل المسؤولية عن
distinct from	متميز عن	the main benefits of	الفوائد الرئيسية لـ
evolve into	يتطور إلى	throughout the world	في أنحاء العالم
get through their work	ينجزون عملهم	train for the race	يتدرب من أجل السباق
give out	يوزع	use music for a purpose	يستخدم الموسيقى لغرض
in relation to	بالنسبة إلى	vary from place to place	يختلف من مكان إلى مكان
in the same way	بنفس الطريقة	walk past	يمر من أمام..
it is our responsibility to	إنها مسئوليتنا أن	with this in mind	واضعا ذلك في الاعتبار
last for	يستمر لمدة	write down music	يُدون الموسيقى

Important Vocabulary

accuse unjustly	يتهم ظلما	get the credit	ينال التقدير والمديح
be easy prey for	يكون فريسة سهلة لـ	give a lecture	يُلقي محاضرة
be widely recognized	معترف به على نطاق واسع	high treason	الخيانة العظمى
civilian victims	ضحايا مدنيين	historical turning point	نقطة تحول تاريخية
comparatively cheap	رخيص نسبيا	innocent victims	ضحايا أبرياء
desire for revenge	رغبة في الانتقام	international finance	تمويل دولي
disaster victims	ضحايا الكارثة	intimate friendship	صداقة حميمة
disturb the balance of nature	يُحَثِّخلل في توازن الطبيعة	on the ground that	على أساس أن
financial assistance	مساعدة مالية	reliable witness	شاهد موثوق فيه
financial reward	مكافأة مالية	severe punishment	عقاب صارم
friendly countries	الدول الصديقة	the spirit of friendship	روح الصداقة

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adj.	
accuse	يتهم	accusation	المتهم	accusatory	متضمن اتهام
bury	يدفن	burial	دفن	buried	مدفون
envy	يحسد	envy	الحسد	envious	يُحسد عليه
escape	يهرب	escape	هروب	enviable	حسود
fatten	يسبب السمنة	fatness	السمنة	escaped	هارب
finance	يمول	fat	سمين	fat	سمين
marry	يتزوج	finance	التمويل / مورد مالي	financial	مالي
object	يعترض	marriage	الزواج	married	متزوج
recognize	يتعرف على	objection	اعتراض	marital	زواجي
sadden	يُحزن	Recognition	تعرف / اعتراف / تقدير	objectionable	محل اعتراض
		sadness	حزن	recognizable	يمكن التعرف عليه
				sad	حزين

Definitions

accuse	to say that someone has done something wrong or illegal	يتهم
assistant	someone who helps someone else to do their work by doing the less important jobs	مساعد
envious	wishing that you had something that someone else has, or that you could do something they do	حسود

fiancée	the woman you have said officially that you are going to marry	خطيبة
finances (n)	the money that a person, company, etc., has	تمويل / موارد مالية
historical	events, people, etc. that happened or existed in the past; based on events in the past; relating to the past	تاريخي
imprisonment	the fact of being put or kept in prison	حبس
lecturer	someone who teaches a group of people about a subject, especially at a university or college	محاضر
object (v)	to say that you do not like or approve of something	يعارض
playwright	someone who writes plays	كاتب مسرحي
recognise	to know someone or something because you have seen them before	يتعرف علي
revenge	something you do in order to punish someone who has harmed you	انتقام
treason	the crime of doing something that could cause great harm to your country or government, especially by helping its enemies	خيانة
victim	someone who has been hurt or killed by someone or something	ضحية

Language Notes

- Be friendly with + someone صديق لـ - Are you friendly with Ahmed? = Are you his friend?
- Be friendly to/towards + someone يكون ودودا تجاه - Our neighbours have always been very friendly to us.
- لاحظ استخدام ضمائر الملكية (mine /his / hers/ yours / ours / theirs) بعد a friend of :
- Mustafa is a friend of mine.

- مقاطع تضاف لنهاية الكلمات لتكوين الاسم

- ant		- ment	
account	accountant	agree	agreement
assist	assistant	argue	argument
attend	attendant	imprison	imprisonment
complain	complainant	invest	investment
contest	contestant	move	movement
serve	servant	punish	punishment

- Retire يتقاعد - Employees in most countries retire at the age of 60.
- Resign يستقيل - He resigned from the company in order to take a more challenging job.
- Alone بمفرده - She decided to travel alone.
- Lonely لديه شعور بالوحدة لكونه بعيدا عن الآخرين - I feel lonely because the kids have left home.
- Only فقط / دون غيره - He was the only person to Pay the bill.
- Custom عادة عامة - In Egypt, the custom is to wear a galabeya.
- Habit عادة شخصية - I used to smoke just out of habit.
- Mention يذكر شيء (شفاهة / كتابة) باختصار - I mentioned the idea to John and he seemed to like it.
- Inform يخبر / يبلغ (عادة بطريقة رسمية) - We regret to inform you that your application has been rejected.

- تستخدم SO (بمعنى و كذلك) في الجمل المثبتة لتجنب التكرار وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعدها الفعل المساعد حسب زمن الجملة ثم الفاعل:
- So + فاعل + فعل مساعد = - Ali plays tennis. Ahmed plays tennis. = - Ali plays tennis and so does Ahmed.
- She knew the answer. They knew the answer. = - She knew the answer and so did they.
- وفي حالة الجمل المنفية تستخدم neither (بمعنى ولا) بنفس الطريقة:
- Neither + فاعل + فعل مساعد = - I didn't know the truth. She didn't know the truth. = - I didn't know the truth and neither did she.
- He couldn't climb the mountain. They couldn't climb it. = - He couldn't climb the mountain and neither could they.

- Be careful with + n. - Be careful with the glasses.
- Be careful about (of) + what / how / when - Be careful of / about what you say to him.
- Be careful to+inf. - Be careful to look both ways when you cross the road.
- Assist in / with (v.) يساعد - The soldiers arrived to assist in the rescue .
- Assistance (n.) مساعدة - Can I be of any assistance? = can I help you?
- Assistant (n.) مساعد (Sales assistant – shop assistant)

- Finance (n.) مال - يمول - المالية - Who is financing the project?
- Financial (adj.) مالي - You must know how to manage your finances.
- Financial adviser (n.) مستشار مالي - The world has suffered from the financial crisis.
- The company needs a financial adviser.

- History التاريخ - Sara is studying history at the university.
- Historical (adj.) تاريخي متعلق بدراسة التاريخ (فيلم - قصة - مسرحية) - EL-Nasser Salah El- Din is a historical film .
- Historian مؤرخ - El-Jabarty was a great historian .
- Historic (adj.) هام تاريخيا (حدث - مبني - لحظة) - It was a historic event when Egypt restored Sinai.
- Historically (adv.) تاريخيا - This decision is historically important.

- Envy (n.) (v.) الحسد - يحسد - Envy is a bad social behaviour .
- Envious of (adj.) حاسد - She was envious of her sister's beauty.
- Enviously (adv.) بحسد / حاسدا - She looked enviously at the little girl .
- Envious (adj.) محسود - She is envious for her job.

- | | | | | |
|----------------------------|------|---|------------|-------|
| - Fiancé (مقبل علي الزواج) | خطيب | → | - fiancée | خطيبة |
| - bridegroom عريس | | → | - bride | عروسة |
| - husband زوج | | → | - wife | زوجة |
| - Divorced مطلق | | → | - divorcee | مطلقة |
| - widower أرمل | | → | - widow | أرملة |

- Accuse of (v.) يتهم بـ - He was accused of the robbery .
- The accused (n.) المتهمين - The accused were arrested soon after the murder.
- Accusingly (adv.) متهما - Why are you looking accusingly at me?
- Accusation (n.) اتهام - He made a number of accusations against his boss.

- Hero (n.) بطل فيلم - بطل شجاع - heroine (n.) بطلة - heroic (adj.) بطولي
- Champion بطل رياضي - Championship بطولة

- Lecture (n.) محاضرة - My dad gave me a lecture on smoking last night..
- lecture on /in = give a lecture in /on - For ten years, he lectured in law.
- Lecturer (n.) محاضر - She is a famous lecturer in psychology.

- Object (n.) شيء - هدف - مفعول - There are too many objects in my bed room.
- object to (v.) يعترض علي - We objected to his demands.
- Objection (n.) اعتراض - I have no objection if you want to stay one more day.
- objective (n.) = goal هدف - غرض - His main objective is to make a lot of money.
- Objective (adj.) موضوعي - I try to be objective when I criticize someone work.

- Recognise (v.) يتعرف علي - يكرم - يحترم - I recognised her from her picture.
- Recognition (n.) اعتراف - تكريم - He was recognised by the president for his work.
- Recognisable (adj.) يمكن التعرف عليه - There is recognition that she is the best person for the job.
- After the earthquake, the village was not recognisable.

- Revenge (n.) انتقام - He was killed in revenge for the murder.
- Avenge (v.) ينتقم - He's made life difficult for me but I will (avenge) get/take revenge.

- Prison (n.) سجن - The criminal was sent to prison.
- Imprison (v.) يسجن - He was imprisoned for theft.
- Imprisonment (n.) حبس - He had suffered from imprisonment.
- Prisoner (n.) سجين - The prisoner lost his strength and became weak.

- a number of + اسم جمع وفعل جمع عدد من - A number of members are against the new law.
 - the number of + اسم جمع وفعل مفرد عدد من - The number of blood donors is not enough.

- Oppose يعارض - يقاوم - We would oppose changing the law.
 - protest يحتج - يعترض (رسميا) - They intend to protest against the decision.

- award يمنح - منحه - جائزة (مقابل عمل شئ بإجادة)
 - She was awarded her PHD in 1985. He won the academy award this year.

- reward يكافئ - مكافأة (مقابل سلوك حسن أو عمل جيد) أو تقديم خدمة للمجتمع
 - He used to give us pens as a reward when we were good.

- present = gift هدية بدون مقابل - My uncle gave me a present on my birthday Party.
 - a ward جناح - عنبر في مستشفى - Take this patient to a ward No. Four.
 - prize جائزة تمنح لشخص نجح في عمل شئ - She got the first prize in the race.

- manage to + المصدر يتمكن من - He managed to answer the test.
 - succeed in + (v + ing) ينجح في - He succeeded in answering the test.
 - successful = a success ناجح - His business was successful. - His business was a success.
 - Success النجاح - Hard work leads to success.

- marry بدون مفعول يتزوج - She married last year.
 - marry + مفعول يتزوج - She married her cousin.
 - be (get) married to + مفعول يتزوج - متزوج من - She is married to her cousin.
 - be (get) married with متزوج ومعه أطفال - She got married with two children.

- Bring up = raise (v.) يربي انسان - He was brought up/raised by his mother.
 -breed (v.) bred يربي ماشية - يتكاثر - Cattle breed quickly.

- Employ (v.) يوظف صاحب عمل - employer (n.)
 - Employment (n.) عمل - employee (n.) موظف - Unemployment (n.) بطالة

Language Functions

Offering Help	Replies to Offers
- If you like, I could + inf. for you.	- Thanks very much
- Is there anything I can do to help?	- That's very kind of you.
- Let me + inf.	- I'd really appreciate that. Thanks.
- Shall I + inf. for you?	- That's great.
- Would you like me to+ inf.?	- Would you mind?

Exercises

Respond the following situations:

1. An old lady can't cross the road alone. You are willing to help her. What do you say?
2. You ask your dad if he would mind helping you do your homework.
3. You offer to help an old man cross the street.
4. Your friend asks you to lend him some money.
5. Your friend doesn't want to go to the station alone. You offer to go with him.
6. Your friend needs to carry some things to the car. You offer to help him.
7. Your friend offered to help you mend your bike.
8. Your friend offers to phone your parents and tell them you are going to be late. You appreciate that.

- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1- A: Could you help me carry the shopping into the house, please, Aisha?

B: Ok. mum. Where shall I put it? A: Just put the bags on the kitchen floor for the moment.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

2- A: Is there anything I can do to help, Mr Mohammed?

B: Could you give these books back to the class after break?

A: Yes, of course. Is that the homework we did last week?

B: Yes, that is right. Your homework was very good.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

3- A: Next time I'll send you off.

B: Why?

A: For your deliberate fouls.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

4- A: What's wrong with your dog?

B: It doesn't eat well and it rarely moves.

A: Well, let me examine it.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1) Our neighbours are from hill. They are always.....of us.

a) afraid b) fond c) proud d) envious

2) He was accused of.....as he took part in a plot against his country.

a) treason b) leisure c) pressure d) treasure

3) I couldn't.....him because he grew old and changed a lot.

a) remind b) realize c) recognize d) socialize

4) This is my.....Hala. We got engaged a few weeks ago.

a) fiancé b) fiancée c) niece d) companion

5) My father.....me of disturbing my brother while he was studying.

a) deprived b) charged c) approved d) accused

6) I really.....ever making friends with these evil people.

a) neglect b) submit c) regret d) select

7) The children are often the innocent.....of a divorce.

a) victims b) sacrifices c) survivors d) results

8) How could you be soto someone who never did you any harm?

a) tolerant b) kind c) grateful d) cruel

9) Thieves had taken a radio and a walkman but nothing of great.....

a) vote b) fate c) value d) valuable

10) The crew of the tanker were.....just minutes before it sank in heavy seas.

a) reserved b) rescued c) preserved d) floated

11) People operating illegal businesses can be.....by imprisonment or a fine.

a) rewarded b) celebrated c) praised d) punished

12) A new drug has been developed which might help save the lives of cancer and AIDS.....

a) victims b) purposes c) sacrifices d) survivors

13) He is veryof my new jacket. He hates seeing me wearing it.

a) fond b) proud c) envious d) shy

14) Shopshould be helpful and tolerant to attract more customers.

a) buyers b) assistants c) tenants d) servants

15) His uncle is a famous professor. He gives.....at Cairo University.

a) lectures b) opinions c) speeches d) talks

16) We've had some difficulties raisingfor the project.

a) financial b) financing c) financially d) finance

17) She was so tired that she fellsitting in her chair.

- a) *sleeping* b) *sleep* c) *sleepy* d) *asleep*
- 18) He has been sentenced to ten years'..... .
a) *prison* b) *imprison* c) *imprisonment* d) *impression*
- 19) He is one of the world's most famousHe has written ten plays.
a) *poets* b) *playwrights* c) *novelist* d) *artists*
- 20) My brother is a.....in English literature at the university in Cairo.
a) *lecturer* b) *tutor* c) *teacher* d) *clerk*
- 21) The new book was.....with the author's name on the cover.
a) *polished* b) *established* c) *published* d) *spread*
- 22) The company is going to.....50 other workers.
a) *reply* b) *employ* c) *imply* d) *supply*
- 23) Two of the plays of the famous playwright were..... in Cairo.
a) *farmed* b) *reformed* c) *formed* d) *performed*
- 24) Charles Dickens is one of the greatest EnglishHe wrote a lot of novels during his life.
a) *poets* b) *novelists* c) *playwrights* d) *journalists*
- 25) In Egypt, young men must join theafter finishing their education.
a) *army* b) *battle* c) *prison* d) *police*
- 26) He wants to takeon the judge who sent him to prison.
a) *reliance* b) *business* c) *dependence* d) *revenge*
- 27) Eventually, her efforts wereand she got a better job.
a) *rejected* b) *refused* c) *rewarded* d) *accused*
- 28) It was impossible for the robbers to get to the.....as it was well- hidden.
a) *pleasure* b) *treasure* c) *collision* d) *treason*
- 29) At last I found the photographat the bottom of a drawer.
a) *sunk* b) *buried* c) *drowned* d) *floated*
- 30) Don't you think that Hanaa hasbeenvery strangely recently?
a) *behaving* b) *fighting* c) *quarrelling* d) *insulting*
- 31) The job gave her an opportunity to gain.....experience .
a) *value* b) *valuation* c) *valuables* d) *valuable*
- 32) Only the very.....could afford to travel abroad.
a) *poor* b) *modest* c) *wealthy* d) *misers*
- 33) Some parents.....to following a routine in bringing up young children.
a) *subject* b) *take* c) *object* d) *use*
- 34) She claims that her employers.....her of theft.
a) *accused* b) *deduced* c) *induced* d) *accustomed*
- 35) The minister denied the that he had behaved dishonestly.
a) *calculation* b) *accusation* c) *recommendation* d) *imagination*
- 36) The reporters felt they were innocentof a political decision.
a) *sacrifices* b) *vaccines* c) *victims* d) *factors*
- 37) At the age of 83, he finally.....from public life.
a) *recalled* b) *restored* c) *recruited* d) *retired*
- 38) Ithat I will not be with you on such an important occasion.
a) *regard* b) *regret* c) *recommend* d) *reflect*
- 39) He always believed that the company wouldhim for his efforts.
a) *reward* b) *punish* c) *dismiss* d) *torture*
- 40) Their researches are being.....in a well-known medical journal.
a) *spread* b) *folded* c) *revealed* d) *published*
- 41) Stress at home affects how youat work.
a) *make* b) *carry* c) *perform* d) *conceal*
- 42) The politicians could not reach an.....on what to do next.
a) *explanation* b) *agreement* c) *accusation* d) *imagination*
- 43) She has anslimness despite having had three children.
a) *enviable* b) *advisable* c) *undesirable* d) *adaptable*
- 44) I'm reading a.....novel.
a) *historian* b) *historic* c) *historical* d) *history*
- 45) Merchants should be.....in dealing with customers.
a) *greedy* b) *vulgar* c) *devil* d) *honest*

- 46) Decent people are those who take the of others into consideration.
a) feeling b) mood c) souls d) annoyance
- 47)is used in expensive jewellery and for cutting hard objects.
a) Copper b) Steel c) Sulphur d) Diamond
- 48)is a criminal act that deserves a death sentence.
a) Treason b) Treasury c) Trade d) Treasure
- 49) The local authority has refused to our new scheme.
a) manufacture b) finance c) bring d) raise
- 50) Of all parties supported the war against nuclear weapons.
a) Artists b) Maids c) Politicians d) Sailors
- 51) More people are now in service industries than in manufacturing.
a) employed b) sent c) driven d) dismissed
- 52) The.....in the north of the country is extremely serious.
a) position b) situation c) location d) site
- 53) When he was young he led achildhood.
a) single b) alone c) only d) lonely
- 54) My brother works.....a new company outside Cairo.
a) on b) by c) for d) from
- 55) After he was arrested, he was sent to prison.....life.
a) for b) of c) to d) from
- 56) He accused me..... not behaving gently towards him.
a) from b) to c) for d) of
- 57) They are arguing the best team in Africa.
a) with b) about c) by d) from
- 58) They were envious him because he was happy and successful.
a) to b) of c) for d) from
- 59) Omar escaped prison and found Ola's hidden treasure.
a) of b) to c) from d) for
- 60) Ahmed was brought by IDS grandfather when his father died.
a) up b) down c) in d) out

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. His last novel was established two years before his death.
2. They were sent to prison with life.
3. She started to learning cooking a week ago.
4. After his parents' death he was bred up by his uncle.
5. He is going to re-word the people who have helped him.
6. He caused her of stealing his money.
7. Dr Rady is a professor in French literary at Ain Shams University.
8. My work is a bored.
9. I couldn't realize him because he was in disguise.
10. The shooting was in avenge for art attack by the opponents.
11. The criminal is arrested for his wedding pay.
12. Alexandre Dumas was interested in writing adventurous stories.
13. The books were publicised with no names on the cover
14. I object at marrying that girl . She's morally bad.
15. Don't be envy of your best friends .
16. Faria is an old religion man .
17. Good people should be punished .
18. I got engaged to Mona . She is my fiancé
19. Some of Edmond's accusation were his best friends .
20. After having the buried treasure, he became a healthy man.
21. He looked at the old man with no sign of recognise
22. Some people are survivors of their courage. They may be wounded.
23. She is so clever that she is in the envious situation of being able to choose her university .
24. Edmond escaped from prison and found Faria's visible treasure .
25. He has done harm to his country. He is charitable.
26. Do you regard telling him the secret?
27. Edmond could escape on prison.

28. He began his avenge on people who were envious of him
29. Edmond was the ship's pilot, so he spent most of his time at sea.
30. Lock the child at home , he's ill .
31. Alexandre's novels were immediate successes and made him a poor man.
32. The young man was accused of treasure as a spy for the enemy.
33. Poor people suffer from political problems .
34. Edmond rescued valentine from her kind family .
35. Edmond calls himself the lord of Monte Cristo
36. The children were severely rewarded for telling lies.

Translate into Arabic:

After Edmond has been in prison for a number of years, Mercedes marries another man. In prison, Edmond meets an old man called Faria, who teaches him about history and science. He also tells Edmond that he can have the valuable treasure he has hidden on the island of Monte Cristo.

Only the individual himself can develop his given potentials. But, like any other living being, he needs an atmosphere of warmth to give him a feeling of inner security to express himself.

Lack of food and water represents the most serious risk that threatens man existence on the earth. This is due to the increasing population of the world and excessive use of natural resources. Thus, a lot of experts expect that people will suffer from famines and droughts in the near future.

Translate into English:

- كان الكسندر دوماس احد اشهر الروائيين الفرنسيين.

- إن مستقبل الحياة علي الأرض يتوقف علي نجاح الجهود التي نبذلها للتخلص من التلوث البيئي.

- يجب اخلاء العالم من اسلحة الدمار الشامل .

- يجب ان نتسلح بالعلم و الايمان حتي نحقق طموحاتنا .

Be armed with	يتسلح بـ	Lack of food	نقص الغذاء
Droughts	جفاف	Mass destruction weapons	اسلحة دمار شامل
Excessive	جائر – زائد	Remove	يزيل
Existence	وجود	Reward	يثيب
Famines	مجااعات	Risk	خطر
Faith	ايمان	Threaten	يهدد

Grammar

The Past Perfect Tense

Form

Subj. الفاعل + had + P.P.

- I had studied English before I travelled to New York.

Negation

Subject + hadn't + p.p. +

-They hadn't watched the match before they went shopping.

Yes / No Q.

Had + Subj. الفاعل + P.P. ?

-Had Soha tidied her room by the time she went to school?

-Yes ,she had.

-No ,she hadn't.

'Wh-' Q.

Q.W. اداة استفهام + had+ subject+ P.P.....?

-What had happened before you phoned the police?

Passive

Obj المفعول + had+ been + p.p.

- English had been studied by me before I travelled to New York.

الاستخدامات Uses

- يعبر الماضي التام عن حدث وقع قبل حدث اخر في الماضي:

- I had cleaned my room before I went to the club.
- I borrowed some money because I had lost my wallet.

- يعبر الماضي التام عن حدث وقع قبل وقت معين في الماضي:

- Mustafa had done all his homework before midnight.
- I had taken the exam before July.

في حالة الافعال التي لا تستخدم في الازمنة المستمرة يستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عن ان حدث ما كان قد بدأ في الحدوث عندما وقع حدث اخر:

- We had had that car for ten years before it broke down.
- By the time Alex finished his studies, he had been in London for over eight years.
- They felt bad about selling the house because they had owned it for more than forty years.

- و يستخدم الماضي التام مع الافعال (live, work, teach, study) بنفس الطريقة السابقة:

- We had worked in this company for two years when we saw the general manager.

- كما يستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عما قاله الشخص او اعتقده:

- He told me that they had already paid the bill.
- He said that he believed that Ali had moved to Luxor.
- I thought that we had already decided on a name for the baby.

ملاحظات عامة علي الماضي التام

➔ ماضي بسيط + , + ماضي تام After/ Immediately after / As soon as / Once / The moment / When

- After she had done the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home.
- = The moment she had done the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home.
- He told me as soon as he had heard the news.
- = He told me immediately after he had heard the news.

➔ ماضي بسيط + , + ماضي بسيط After / Immediately after / Immediately on/ Just on + n. / v.ing + ,

- After doing the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home.
- = Just on doing the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home.
- He told me Immediately on hearing the news.
- = He told me immediately after hearing the news.

➔ ماضي بسيط + , + Having + p.p.

- Having done the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home.
- Having heard the news, he told me.

➔ ماضي تام + , + ماضي بسيط - Before/by the time / When + , +

- Before she stopped a taxi to take her home, she had done the shopping.
- = He had heard the news by the time he told me.

➔ ماضي بسيط / ماضي تام - Before + n. / v.ing + , +

- Before stopping a taxi to take her home, she had done the shopping.
- Before stopping a taxi to take her home, she did the shopping.

➔ ماضي بسيط + , + ماضي تام After / As soon as / Once / The moment / When / Before / By the time +

- After she did the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home.
- He told me as soon as he heard the news.
- Before she stopped a taxi to take her home, she did the shopping.

→ ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط + When

→ ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام + When

= ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام + The moment

= ماضي بسيط + اسم n. / v.ing + On

→ ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط + When

- When I arrived at the station, the train had left.

- When I had arrived at the station, the train left.

- The moment I had arrived at the station, the train left.

- On my arrival at the station, the train left.

- When I arrived, the train left.

→ ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط + After / As soon as / Once / The moment / When / Before / By the time

-After she opened the door, she saw that someone had destroyed every thing in the flat.

- When I arrived at the station, I found that the train had left.

→ ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط + After / As soon as / Once / The moment / When / Before / By the time

-By the time we reached the office, the manager had left so we didn't meet him.

→ ماضي تام + till/until + ماضي بسيط (منفي غالبا)

- I didn't go to school till/until I had had my breakfast.

-They didn't start the game until I had arrived.

→ (v.ing) / (اسم n.) + till/until + ماضي بسيط (منفي غالبا)

- I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. -They didn't start the game until my arrival.

- لاحظ انه مع الروابط الزمنية السابقة يأتي الحدث الذي وقع أولا (ماضي تام) والحدث الذي وقع بعده يكون (ماضي بسيط)

-First I switched on the light, and then he entered the room.

= After I had switched on the light, he entered the room.

= Before he entered the room, I had switched on the light.

= He didn't enter the room until/ till I had switched on the light.

لاحظ ايضا استخدام الماضي التام و الماضي البسيط بالطرق التالية:

→ ماضي بسيط + (that / ,) + ماضي تام + It was only when

= ماضي بسيط + (that/ ,) + ماضي تام + It wasn't until

- It was only when I had switched on the light that he entered the room.

=It wasn't until I had switched on the light that he entered the room.

- يأتي الماضي التام والماضي البسيط مع التعبيرات الآتية ومعناها (لم يكدحتى.....)

- Subj. + had + no sooner+ P.P. + Than+ ماضي بسيط.

- She had no sooner left than her friends arrived.

- Subj. + had + hardly + P.P. + when+ ماضي بسيط.

- She had hardly left when her friends arrived.

- Subj. + had + hardly + P.P. + when + ماضي بسيط.

-She had scarcely left when her friends arrived.

- لاحظ عندما تأتي هذه الروابط في اول الجملة:

- No sooner + had + Subj. + P.P. + Than+ ماضي بسيط.

- No sooner had she left than her friends arrived.

- Hardly + had + Subj. + P.P. + when+ ماضي بسيط.

- Hardly had she left when her friends arrived.

- Scarcely + had + Subj. + P.P. + when+ ماضي بسيط.

- Scarcely had she left when her friends arrived.

→ ماضي تام / ماضي تام مستمر / ماضي مستمر / ماضي بسيط + because / since / as + ماضي بسيط

- I didn't meet my sister because / since / as she had travelled to Paris.

- He didn't hear the mobile ringing because / since / as he was asleep.

- I was very tired because / since / as I had been working all day.

- She couldn't help her mother because / since / as she was doing homework.

- My sister had travelled to Paris, so I didn't meet her.
- He was asleep. That's why he didn't hear the mobile ringing.
- I had been working all day; as a result I was very tired.
- She was doing homework; consequently she couldn't help her mother.

The past perfect continuous tense

Form Subj. الفاعل + had + been + v.ing.

- He had been cleaning the room for two hours when I arrived home.

Negation Subject + hadn't + been + v.ing.....

-They hadn't been waiting for a long time before the train arrived.

Yes / No Q. Had + Subj. الفاعل + been + v.ing..... ?

- He was tired. Had he been working since dawn?

-Yes, he had.

-No, he hadn't.

'Wh-' Q. Q.W. أداة استفهام + had+ subject+been + v.ing.....?

- What had he been doing when the accident happened?

عند بناء جملة الماضي التام المستمر للمجهول تتحول الي جملة ماضي تام :

Passive Obj المفعول + had+ been + p.p.

يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر ليعبر عن حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي قبل وقوع حدث آخر ويستخدم عادة مع :

since / for/ all / all / from ...to....

ويأتي عادة مع أفعال يمكن أن تستغرق فترة طويلة مثل

(wait / do / study / live / work / stay / play / watch / sleep / paint / read / write / talk / run / walk / travel, ...etc)

-There were floods because it had been raining for three days.

- He was covered in paint. He had been painting the room since we left.

- Our game of tennis was interrupted. We had been playing for an hour when it started to rain.

هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموما ومنها الماضي التام المستمر وهي أفعال الشعور و الحواس و الملكية و المعرفة.

- We were good friends. We had known each other for 10 years.

كما لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر مع الأفعال التي لا تستغرق عادة فترة طويلة في حدوثها مثل وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم الماضي التام:

(break down / stop / close / open/ end / finish)

- She was late for the meeting because her car had broken down.

إذا ذكرنا مرات حدوث الفعل لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر بل نستخدم الماضي التام:

- When I met Ahmed, he had finished typing 3 reports.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.By the time she finished writing her report, she.....six cups of tea.

- a) had drunk b) has drunk c) drank d) had been drinking

2.She was tired because she.....late to bed the night before .

- a) has been b) had been c) was d) were

3.The little children's clothes were dirty because theyin the park all day

- a) played b) playing c) have played d) had been playing

4.Karim fell asleep during the match because he.....to bed late yesterday.

- a) went b) has gone c) had gone d) is going

5.By the time Alexandre was 20, his mother.....all her money.

- a) spent b) has spent c) had spent d) spends

6.They.....all night when they reached the seaside .

- a) had travelled b) travelled c) are travelling d) had been travelling

7.After his father had died, shesend her son to school.

- a) doesn't b) didn't c) hasn't d) hadn't

8. Before Dumas.....his novels, he had written plays.
a) wrote b) write c) had written d) writes
9. Aymanfor work for over a year before he got a job.
a) had looked b) looked c) had been looking d) looks
10. When we got up that morning, there was sand all over the streets. Therea sand storm .
a) was b) were c) had been d) has been
11. When he died in 1870, his son.....his finances for a few years.
a) looked after b) had been looking after c) looks after d) was looking after
12. Sara found lots of fresh bread on the table because her mother all morning .
a) had been baking b) was backing c) baking d) had backed
13. Ali ate a sandwich during the game because he.....enough time to eat before it started.
a) hadn't had b) doesn't have c) hasn't had d) didn't have
14. Hefor only three weeks, so it is not surprising that he failed his driving test.
a) drove b) had driven c) had driven d) had been driving
15. Dumas checked what his assistants.....
a) wrote b) written c) have written d) had written
16. After.....her flat, Mona visited her aunt.
a) clean b) cleaning c) had cleaned d) has cleaned
17. I answered the questionsI had read them carefully .
a) till b) as soon as c) until d) before
18. We won't start till Amr.....
a) had come b) came c) comes d) was coming
19. I.....all my lessons before I did the test .
a) had revised b) revised c) revise d) have revised
20. I decided to water the tree after I.....it
a) plant b) planted c) planting d) had planted
21. Havinghome, I heard an explosion.
a) leaving b) had left c) left d) leave
22. It wasn't.....Ola had passed her exam that she travelled abroad.
a) before b) after c) until d) when
23. I couldn't recognize my friend.....I hadn't seen him for so long.
a) till b) because c) no sooner d) hardly
24. Hany was over the moon.....he had passed his final exams.
a) when b) till c) after d) then
25. Waleed couldn't buy a camera.....the shop had shut.
a) because b) till c) no sooner d) hardly
26. I.....to the doctor's yesterday evening because I had been feeling ill for nearly a week .
a) go b) went c) have gone d) had gone
27. Hassan borrowed money from Aly.....he had left his money at home
a) because b) after c) till d) before
28. When he arrived at school, Ahmed's hair was wet, it.....
a) rained b) was raining c) has rained d) had been raining
29. Abdu asked which team was red because hethese teams before.
a) didn't see b) hadn't seen c) didn't see d) hasn't seen
30. Hamid's brother.....he was at the match because Hamid had phoned him before he went.
a) knows b) knew c) had known d) has known
31. When I.....there I discovered that all the guests had already left.
a) arrive b) arrived c) had arrived d) was arriving
32.Omar gone home before you arrived at the party?
a) Has b) Was c) Had d) Did
33. I didn't know who she was until I.....her.
a) met b) had met c) meeting d) have met
34. After.....the tickets, he went out to do some courses.
a) booking b) have booked c) booked d) had booked
35. As soon as they had reached their destination; they.....to empty their luggage.
a) begin b) had begun c) began d) have begun
36. Did you feel hungry after you.....your meal?

- a) *had had* b) *have had* c) *have* d) *having*
37.had we furnished the house when we moved into it.
- a) *No sooner* b) *After* c) *Before* d) *Hardly*
38. The room was empty because everyone.....out.
- a) *gone* b) *had gone* c) *go* d) *have gone*
39. He had tried to call me for ten minutes before I.....his phone.
- a) *answered* b) *answering* c) *has answered* d) *answering*
40. The children.....all the furniture before their mother finished cooking.
- a) *dusted* b) *have dusted* c) *had dusted* d) *dusting*
41. He had got a driving test beforea car.
- a) *had bought* b) *bought* c) *buy* d) *buying*
42. Scarcely had the thief seen the policeman when he.....
- a) *escaped* b) *escaping* c) *had escaped* d) *escape*
43. It was notI had read the book that! made my notes.
- a) *after* b) *before* c) *until* d) *already*
44.returned home, I had a bath.
- a) *Before* b) *Having* c) *As soon as* d) *By the time*
45. It was only when I.....studying, that I went to bed.
- a) *had finished* b) *was finishing* c) *have finished* d) *has finished*
46. As soon as he.....my e-mail, he sent a reply to it.
- a) *receive* b) *had received* c) *receiving* d) *has received*

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. After had read the instructions, I was able to use the machine.
2. After his father had died, the mother doesn't send her son to school.
3. After planting the tree, I had watered it.
4. Aly went out after locked his bike.
5. As soon as he received the phone call, he has gone to the airport.
6. As soon as I see him, I told him the good news.
7. Before he went back to America, he has been living with us.
8. Before he Writes the count of Monte Cristo, he had become famous as a playwright.
9. Before he wrote his novels, he has written plays.
10. By the time Ahmed was 20, his father has spent all his money.
11. By the time the students wrote a report on the experiment, they have done it .
12. Dalia sounded unhappy when I phoned her. Perhaps she has been watching a bad film.
13. Does he learn how to read before he was five?
14. Dumas checked what his assistants have written.
15. Hardly have I left the house when it started to rain.
16. Hassan sounded very angry when I spoke to him this morning. Perhaps he loses his job.
17. Having eating all the salads, the waiter brought the meal.
18. Having taking the photos, he developed them.
19. He didn't know the truth until he reads the newspaper.
20. He finds works as a secretary to someone who had been a friend of his father's.
21. He found work as a secretary to someone who has been a friend of his father's in the army.
22. He had been finishing reading his book so he was looking for a new one.
23. He has been working on that programme for a year before he realized that nothing could destroy it.
24. He looked very tired. He works so hard all weekend.
25. He started writing in his mid twenties. By then, he travels all over the world.
26. He was a successful writer when people realized that his books had written by other people.
27. His father probably died young because he has spent time in prison.
28. I am watching a good film last night.
29. I gave the book to a friend when I have read it .
30. I have been trying to reach him several times by phone before he came to visit me .
31. I have locked the doors before I went to bed.
32. I was terribly afraid because I have never flown before.
33. I won't park my car until I had found a place.
34. It was only after she had put the children to bed that she watched TV.
35. Leila looked very happy when I saw her at the weekend. Perhaps she has won a prize.
36. My headache disappeared after I have taken an aspirin.

37. My mobile didn't work until I have charged it.
38. No sooner had my brother joined the army when he had his hair cut.
39. No sooner he had left the building than it collapsed.
40. Omar had been looking for his keys for over an hour when he realized that he left them in the car
41. Our team has scored three goals by the time we got to the match.
42. Samira doesn't go to the Cinema because she had already seen the film
43. She seemed to be very happy. Perhaps she is receiving some good news.
44. She was singing for years before she finally became a star.
45. She went shopping after finished the housework.
46. The child was so exhausted because he has been playing all day.
47. The man Dumas works for in Paris had known his father.
48. The player didn't go on a diet before the team doctor had ordered him to do so.
49. The professor didn't start speaking when everyone had been quiet.
50. The thief escaped after he has been caught.
51. They discovered that Dumas has been employing other people to write for him.
52. They had sailed for a month before they reached a port .
53. They wish they can speak French.
54. We don't hand the forms in until we had completed them.
55. When he dies in 1870, his son had been looking after his finances for a few years.
56. When hearing about my sister's exam result, I congratulated her.
57. When I met Aly yesterday, I remembered that we have met before.
58. When I saw him, he hasn't finished his work yet.
59. When the doctor arrived, the patient has died, so he was frustrated .

Test 11

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

1. One of your friends rendered you a service.
2. Someone offers to help you with your bags.
3. You appreciate a friend who helped you a lot.
4. You offer to help your mum with the house work.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1 A: Can I help you? B: yes, I would like to make a suit. A : Ok. Let me take your measurements.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

2. A : Have you repaired my computer?
B : Sorry, we haven't finished repairing it. You can collect it tomorrow.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

B- Vocabulary and structure

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- Famous artists sometimes hadto help them.

a- workers	b- clerks	c- assistants	d- stuntmen
------------	-----------	---------------	-------------
- 2- Shakespeare is one of the world's most famous... ..

a- poets	b- playwrights	c- novelists	d- writers
----------	----------------	--------------	------------
- 3- My uncle works, as a mathsat the university in Alexandria.

a- teacher	b- tutor	c- lecturer	d- coach
------------	----------	-------------	----------
- 4- I really to people using mobile phones in the library.

a- object	b- refuse	c- disagree	d- agree
-----------	-----------	-------------	----------
- 5- After five years , the criminal wanted to live as an honest man.

a- prison	b- imprisonment	c- imprison	d- prisoner
-----------	-----------------	-------------	-------------
- 6- I'm very interested in the past. That's why I like novels.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| <i>a- history</i> | <i>b- historical</i> | <i>c- historian</i> | <i>d- historic</i> |
|-------------------|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
- 7- Accountants help people with their.
- | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| <i>a- financial</i> | <i>b- financiers</i> | <i>c- finances</i> | <i>d- beneficial</i> |
|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
- 8- The adjective is historical. The noun is
- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| <i>a- history</i> | <i>b- historian</i> | <i>c- historic</i> | <i>d- histories</i> |
|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
- 9- The noun is finance. The adjective is
- | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>a- financier</i> | <i>b- financial</i> | <i>c- financially</i> | <i>d- finicality</i> |
|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
- 10- By the time he was 12, my brother, three languages. He spoke, Arabic , English and French.
- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>a- learnt</i> | <i>b- has learnt</i> | <i>c- was learning</i> | <i>d- had learnt</i> |
|------------------|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
- 11- When I went to my friend's flat, shefor school.
- | | | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>a- already left</i> | <i>b- has already left</i> | <i>c- had already left</i> | <i>d- was leaving</i> |
|------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
- 12- Last year, I spent a month in France. I of going there since I was a child.
- | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| <i>a- have dreamed</i> | <i>b- had dreamed</i> | <i>c- dreamt</i> | <i>d- was dreaming</i> |
|------------------------|-----------------------|------------------|------------------------|
- 13- Leila and her husband into their own flat last weekend. Before that, they had lived with Leila's parents.
- | | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| <i>a- had moved</i> | <i>b- moved</i> | <i>c- has moved</i> | <i>d- was moving</i> |
|---------------------|-----------------|---------------------|----------------------|
- 14- My father retired last week. He ... for the same company all his life.
- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>a- worked</i> | <i>b- has worked</i> | <i>c- had worked</i> | <i>d- was working</i> |
|------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
- 15- Karim fell asleep during the football match because he to bed late the night before.
- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------|
| <i>a- had gone</i> | <i>b- went</i> | <i>c- gone</i> | <i>d- has gone</i> |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------|
- 16- Ali ate a sandwich during the game because he enough time to eat before it started.
- | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| <i>a- didn't have</i> | <i>b- hasn't had</i> | <i>c- hadn't had</i> | <i>d- had no</i> |
|-----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------------------|

4-Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. Edmond objected with his friend's accusations.
2. Last year, I spent a month in France. I dreamt of going there since I was a child.
3. My father retired last week. He worked for the same company all his life.
4. My uncle works as a maths lecture at the university.
5. Paul had been looking for work for over a year before he gets a job.
6. Treason is the crime of being loyal to your country.

C- Reading

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions

Psychologists have been coming up with lots of theories about motivation. They have been busy answering questions on what it is, where it comes from and why some people suffer from a lack of it while others have too much of it .

The most obvious place one needs re be motivated is the workplace. Most of us are motivated to succeed at work Professor Cooper found that a large percentage of successful people had lost a parent, been left by a parent or suffered other tragic loss before the age of eighteen. Cooper claimed that the reason for seeking success is not to achieve power over others, but to gain control over what is happening in their lives.

Here are some tips to help boost your motivation Firstly, eat well and exercise. A fat stomach is not going to make you very energetic Secondly; it is useful to define your goals by writing them down. Thirdly, hang around positive people. If the people you spend your free time with are constantly complaining about life, maybe it's better you looked for new companions. Sleep well and take breaks and holidays. By putting these ideas into practice, you will enjoy higher levels of motivation and a better quality of life

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1 Do people according to psychologists have similar levels of motivation for success? Explain.
2. According to the text, where do people most likely want to achieve success?
- 3-Why do people who suffered in their childhood seek success?

B. Choose the correct answer from a. b, c or d.

5. According to research by Professor Cooper, a huge number of successful people.....

a) had good parents	b) had suffered the loss of a loved one in childhood
c) were orphans	d) wanted to have power over other people .
6. What helps people determine what they would like to achieve?

a) eating well and exercising	b) spending time with positive people
c) sleeping well.	d) making a note of it

On June 16, 1963, Valentina Tereshkova became the first woman in space. She had been chosen from more than 400 others who applied. During her three-day flight, her rocket orbited the Earth 48 times. Valentina did tests on' herself to find out how the experience affected women's minds and bodies. She reported that she felt ill for most of the time she was in space. Valentina Tereshkova was born in 1'937 in the west of Russia. Her father worked as a tractor driver and her mother worked in a factory. She left school at the age of 16 and went to work in a factory. In her spare time, she enjoyed parachuting. After ValentinaTereshkova's space flight, it was 19 years before: another Russian woman was sent into space. Today, Valentina is still a hero in Russia.

- 1- How many women wanted to travel in space when Valentina applied for the job?
- 2- What does the experience mean in how the experience affected women's minds and bodies?
- 3- What was Valentina's hobby as a young woman?

4- How old was Valentina when she went into space?
a.16 b.19 c.26 d.48

5- How did Valentina feel while she was in space?
a. comfortable b. happy c. tired d. not well

1. Rassendyll tells the Princess that when he was younger, he thought he didn't need to worry about society. Why does he say this? How does the Princess react? Why is it a mistake for him to say this?
2. The day after the ball, the Princess receives two letters. What are they and who are they from?
3. What does Rassendyll do when he hears of these letters? Who does he go to?
4. What does Rassendyll tell Marshal Strakencz to do?

"But you always knew that you would become King. How could you think that was someone else's job?"

1. Who says this to whom? 2. Where are they?
3. This was said in reaction to the other person's words. What did the other person say before this?

1. Duke Michael invites the Princess to visit him in Zenda and she accepts.
2. Strakencz is ordered to immediately become the head of Strelsau.

"How we can help our neighbours"

Some of Edmond's friends are envious of him and they write a letter accusing him of treason. Edmond is arrested on his wedding day and is sent to prison for life.

- عانى أبوه من السجن و مات و دوامس فى سن الرابعة من عمره.

- يجب أن نستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة في جميع مجالات الحياة وخاصة الإنتاج.

Unit 12

Festivals and Folk Music

agriculture	الزراعة	fan	مُعجب	particular style	أسلوب معين
astronaut	رائد فضاء	feel bored	يشعر بالملل	plough	محراث
benefits	فوائد	festival	مهرجان	position	وضع / مكان / مكانة / منزلة / وظيفة / مركز
can't stand	لا يطيق	fireworks	ألعاب نارية	potter	صانع الفخار
celebrate	يحتفل	floating gardens	حدائق طافية	procession	موكب
child's development	نمو الطفل	folk (adj / n)	شعبي / موسيقي واغاني	professional	محترف
clap	يصفق	folk music	الموسيقي الشعبية	region	منطقة
clay pots	أواني فخارية	growers	الزراع	regional	إقليمي
collect	يجمع	growing crops	زراعة المحاصيل	relatives	أقارب
commemorate	يحيي ذكرى	gym	صالة الألعاب	relax	يسترخي / يستجم
common instrument	آلة موسيقية شائعة	harvest	الحصاد / يحصد	responsibility	مسئولية
distinction	تميز / اختلاف	health conditions	الظروف الصحية	royal	ملكي
distinctive	مُمَيِّز وواضح	increasingly	بصورة متزايدة	salt water	مياه مالحة
distinctively	بشكل مميز	individual	فرد / فردي	sculptures	تماثيل منحوتة
distinguish	يُميز	keep fit	يحافظ علي اللياقة	sound like	يبدو مثل
distinguished	متميز / بارز	landmark	منمّم هام / حدث أو اكتشاف	special purpose	غرض خاص
driving license	رخصة القيادة	line of people	طابور من الناس	sports centre	مركز رياضي
driving test	اختبار القيادة	local community	مجتمع محلي	submarine	غواصة
drum	طبلّة	local materials	مواد محلية	the Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل
drummer	طبال	loom	نول (لصناعة النسيج)	the oud	العود
drumstick	عصا النقر على الطبلّة	mark (v/n)	يحتفل بـ/ يكون بداية	traditional	تقليدي
efficiently	بكفاءة	mental	عقلي	traditional music	موسيقي تقليدية
enormous model	نموذج هائل	modern process	عملية حديثة	Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر
entertainment	الترفيه / التسلية	nutrients	مواد مغذية	variety	تنوع / مجموعة
evaporate	يتبخر	objects	أشياء	vary	يتنوع / يختلف
event	حدث (هام)	oral tradition	تقليد شفهي	weaving	النسج
evolution	التطور	palace	قصر	well	بئر
evolve	يتطور	papyrus	ورق البردي	well-known	معروف / مشهور

Expressions

access to	الحق في دخول / استخدام / الحصول على شيء	listen to music	يستمتع للموسيقي
at lunchtime	في وقت الغداء	look with envy at	ينظر بحسد إلي
be carved out of	يكون منحوتاً من	make up songs	يؤلف أغاني
be influenced by	يتأثر بـ	occupy a volume of	يشغل حجماً قدره
be made up of	يتكون من	pass from ... to	ينتقل من...إلى..
cheer up	يبتهج	sing babies to sleep	يغني للأطفال لكي يناموا
come up to the surface	يصعد الي السطح	take responsibility for	يتحمل المسؤولية عن
distinct from	متميز عن	the main benefits of	الفوائد الرئيسية لـ
evolve into	يتطور إلي	throughout the world	في أنحاء العالم
get through their work	ينجزون عملهم	train for the race	يتدرب من أجل السباق
give out	يوزع	use music for a purpose	يستخدم الموسيقي لغرض
in relation to	بالنسبة إلي	vary from place to place	يختلف من مكان إلي مكان
in the same way	بنفس الطريقة	walk past	يمر من أمام..
it is our responsibility to	إنها مسئوليتنا أن	with this in mind	واضعا ذلك في الاعتبار
last for	يستمر لمدة	write down music	يُدون الموسيقي

Words & antonyms

distinctive	مُمَيِّز	common	عادي / شائع
distribute	يوزع	collect	يجمع
evaporate	يتبخر	condense	يتكاثف
generous	كريم	miserly	بخيل
hope for	يأمل في	despair of	ييأس من
last (v)	يستمر	stop / end	يتوقف
lifeless	ميت / بلا حياة	alive	حي
loyal	مخلص / وفي	disloyal	غير مخلص
mental	عقلي	physical	بدني / جسمي
promote	يُرفِّق	demote	ينزل من درجته
respect (n)	احترام	contempt	احتقار
scarce	نادر	plentiful	وفير

Derivatives

verb		Noun		adjective	
celebrate	يحتفل	celebration	احتفال	celebrated	مشهور
continue	يستمر	continuity	استمرار	continuous	مستمر
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفي
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyment	متعة	enjoyable	ممتع
evolve	يتطور	evolution	التطور	evolutionary	تطوري
explode	ينفجر	explosion	انفجار	explosive	متفجر
hope	يأمل	hope	الأمل	Hopeful	مبشور / مفرح بالأمل
practise	يمارس / يُطبق عمليا	practice	ممارسة / مزاولة	hopeless	مبشور / مفرح بالأمل
prefer	يفضل	preference	تفضيل	practical	عملي
use	يستخدم	use	استخدام	preferable	مفضل
vary	يتنوع	Variety	تنوع / مجموعة متنوعة	used	مستخدم / مستعمل
				various	متنوع / مختلف

Definitions

celebrate	to do something special because it is a special occasion, or because something good has happened	يحتفل
distinctive	showing a person or thing to be different from others	مميز
drum (n)	a round musical instrument which you play by hitting it with your hand or a stick	طبل
event	something that happens, especially something important, interesting or unusual	حدث
evolve	to develop or make something develop gradually	يتطور / يطور
fireworks	small objects that explode or bum with a coloured light, used for celebrating special events	العاب نارية
folk	traditional and typical of the ordinary people who live in a particular area	العامية
landmark	something that helps you recognise where you are, such as a famous building	معلم بارز
mark (v)	to show that something is happening, especially an important event or change	يعلم / يحدد
position (n)	the place where someone or something is in relation to other things	مكان / مكانة
procession	a line of people or vehicles moving slowly as part of a ceremony	موكب
responsibility	if a thing is your responsibility, it is your duty to make sure that it is done	مسئولية
vary	if things of the same type vary, they are all different from each other	يختلف / يتنوع

Language Notes

- قبل أسماء الفصول يمكن استخدام أو عدم استخدام the:

-It never snows here in (the) winter.

- Snow (الثلج (قطرات الماء المتجمدة التي تسقط من السماء) - The snow began to fall outside.
- Ice (الثلج أو الجليد (الماء عندما يتجمد ويصبح ثلجا) - Would you like ice in your juice?

- except (for) فيما عدا / باستثناء - Everyone went to the show except for Marwa .
- ملاحظات علي استخدام except / except for:
- 1- نستخدم except فقط قبل حروف الجر وأدوات الربط:
- It's the same everywhere except in Scotland. - He's good-looking except when he smiles.
- 2- يستخدم الاسم أو ضمير المفعول بعد except / except for:
- Everybody understands except me. - We are all ready except for her.
- 3- لاحظ أن except that يأتي بعدها جملة:
- I know nothing about him except that he lives in Cairo.

- Accept + n يقبل (رشوة / a bribe / اعتذار / an apology / accept (an invitation / an apology
- He accepted my invitation to the party.
- Expect to + inf. يتوقع - She expects to find a good job soon.
- Expect will - I expect that she will pass the test.

- Landmark (n.) معلم بارز- حدث بارز - Karnak temple is a landmark of Luxor.
- Mark (v.) يميز - يحتفل- يضع علامة - His death marks the end of an era of injustice. الظلم
- Mark (n.) علامة-درجة- مستوي - She always gets good marks in English.

- Differ (from) يختلف - People differ from one another.
- Differ about / on / over يختلف بشأن -The boys differed about who will play first.
- differentiate between ... and ... يميز الفرق / يبين الاختلاف
- You have to differentiate between fact and opinion.
- differentiate ... from ... يميز الفرق / يبين الاختلاف -His rough voice differentiates him from all his friends.

- Musician عازف/موسيقيار - Ammar Ei-Shereay is a talented musician.
- Composer ملحن / مؤلف موسيقي - Beethoven was a great composer.

- تُستخدم even للدلالة علي شيء غير متوقع:

- Most clubs suffer from financial problems, even Alahly and Zamalek.
- He want win the medal, even in his top form.

- تُستخدم even مع الصفات في حالة المقارنة:

- This will make our job even more difficult.

- Queue (بغرض الحصول علي شيء) طابور من الناس - There was a queue of people waiting for the bus.
- Queue up يقف في طابور - Students queued up to book tickets .
- line طابور/ صف من الناس أو الأشياء (ويمكن أيضا أن تستخدم بنفس معنى queue)
- The man looked sadly at the long line in front of the bakery.
- I can see a line of trees on either side of the canal.
- Row صف من الناس أو الأشياء (متجاور غالبا) - The soldiers were ordered to stand in a row.
- Have something (nothing / a lot) to do with له أو ليس له علاقة بـ
- My studies have nothing to do with engineering.
- It + be / has something (nothing) to do with له أو ليس له علاقة بـ
- Her job is/has nothing to do with carpentry.

- Celebrate (v.) يحتفل - Do you celebrate birthdays in your village?
- celebrated for(adj.) مشهور - He is celebrated (famous) for his intelligence.
- Celebrity (n.) شخص مشهور - A lot of celebrities always visit the Pyramids.
- Celebratory (adj.) احتفالي - They are in a celebratory mood.
- Celebration احتفال - Our success called for a great celebration.

- responsibility (n.) = charge مسئولية - He was responsible for the accident.
- Responsible for (adj.) مسئول عن - He is young and single without any responsibilities.
- Folk (n.) ناس- شعب- موسيقى شعبية - We always spend weekends with our folks (parents)
- Folk (adj.) شعبي - Abu Zeid Al helali was a folk hero. - Cultures have their own traditional folk music.
- Folklore (n.) الفولكلور (الفن) الشعبي - She studies the Upper Egyptian folklore.
- Folksy (adj.) ودود - ابن بلد - She is a folksy girl . You can trust her.
- Event حدث هام - The meeting with the Queen is a historical event.
- incident حدث غريب - سيء - Some incidents occur on this remote island.
- accident حادثة - He had an accident on the way home.
- Evolve (v.) = develop يطور - The calculator evolved into the computer instruments.
- Distinct (adj.) مختلف- واضح - The word has three distinct meanings.
- Distinction (n.) فرق- اختلاف - There is a distinction between written and spoken language.
- Make a distinction يميز - Abu Treka makes a distinction with the national team.
- Distinctive (adj.) متميز - He has a distinctive style of writing.
- distinctively (adv.) متميزا - She writes poetry distinctively.
- Procession (n.) موكب - We walked in the funeral procession for three hours.
- Process (n.) عملية - Buying a house is a long and complicated process.
- Proceed (v.) يستمر - His lawyer decided not to proceed with his case.
- position (n.) منصب - I know that he is in an important position.
- position (v.) يضع - She is in a very difficult position.
- Vary (v.) يتنوع - يختلف - varied (adj.) متنوع - variable (adj.) متنوع
- Variety (n.) تشكيلة - Variously (adv.) بطريقة متنوعة - various (adj.) متنوع
- local محلي - Folk music usually develops in local communities.
- national قومي - Our national team won the match.
- international دولي - Egypt has many international relations.

- enjoy - يستمتع :- فاعلها عاقل و مفعولها غير عاقل
 - We enjoyed the film.
- amuse - يسلى :- فاعلها عاقل أو غير عاقل و مفعولها عاقل
 - The film amused us. He amused us with his funny jokes.
- entertain - يستضيف :- بتقديم الطعام أو الشراب
 He always entertains his guests at a famous restaurant.

language functions
 Express liking & disliking

Liking	Disliking
I'm a big fan of + n. / G.	I don't like + n. / G.....
I love / adore + n. / G.	I don't think much of + n. / G.....
I'm crazy / mad مولهع about + n. / G.	I'm not very keen on + n. / G.....
I'm fond of + n. / G.	He dislikes + n. / G.....
I quite like + n. / G.	I hate/detest /can't stand /can't bear + n. / G...
I love + n. / G.	I loathe /despise + n. / G.....

Exercises

Respond the following situation

9. A friend asks you what sort of music you enjoy.
10. A friend asks you whether there is any sort of music you don't like.
11. You want to find out if your friend plays a musical instrument.
12. You would like to find out what music your friend likes. What do you say?

Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1- A: Could you tell us why you would like to study here?
 B: Your biology department has a very good reputation.
 A: And if we accept you, what do you hope to do when you graduate?
 A: Well, I would like to work for a food company.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

- 2- A: are you in your first year? B: yes, I am studying English, but it is not only my third week.
 A: my parents would like me to apply here. Would you recommend it? B: yes, definitely.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

- 3- A: Look there, that is an African elephant. B: It's the largest land animal today.
 A: I see, and what does it feed on? B: Leaves, branches and other vegetation.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

- 4- A: Can you tell our viewers how you have achieved all this success?
 B: Through hard work and sleepless nights.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. He will have overall.....for sales and marketing.
 a) responsibility b) response c) responsible d) responsive
2. Efficient teachers are able to.....new ways of teaching.
 a) revolve b) evoke c) evolve d) evade
3. Good visuals and diagrams are the magazine's most.....features.
 a) distilled b) distinctly c) distinction d) distinctive
4. Sham El-Nassim.....the beginning of spring.
 a) remarks b) marks c) makes d) markets
5. The samples.....in quality but are generally acceptable.
 a) value b) vote c) vary d) vow
6. The team istheir third successive win.
 a) consoling b) contributing c) corresponding d) celebrating
7. Large numbers ofare often let off on happy occasions.
 a) fireworks b) firewood c) firetraps d) firesides
8. The festival will open with aled by the mayor.
 a) process b) procession c) funeral d) protest
9. Travel and modern technology enable us to listen to music from other.....
 a) traditions b) areas c) cultures d) customs
10.his father, he doesn't listen to music at all.
 a) Likely b) Alike c) Unlucky d) Unlike
11. Poor, no doubt, increased food prices.
 a) harvests b) nourishment c) feeding d) harmony
12. On the Eid we visit our.....and friends.
 a) enemies b) relatives c) opponents d) rivals
13. He's having a party inof his 84th birthday.

- a) defence b) achievement c) celebration d) contribution
14. Chinese New Year depends on the.....of the moon.
a) position b) location c) situation d) place
15. The Sphinx is one of the most famousof Cairo.
a) landlords b) landslides c) fireworks d) landmarks
16. The Olympic Games is a sportsheld every four years.
a) funeral b) festival c) club d) feast
17. If you hit them hard,make a very loud noise.
a) violins b) ouds c) drums d) rababah
18. Small rural.....rely on agriculture as the main source of their income.
a) communities b) towns c) cities d) ports
19. The jazz band providewhile people ate and drank under the stars.
a) entitlement b) improvement c) employment d) entertainment
20. The opening and closingat the last Olympic Games were more than wonderful.
a) weddings b) funerals c) ceremonies d) feasts
21. Don't let other peopleyour personal opinions.
a) effect b) influence c) rise d) arise
22. The man's body was.....with blows from a blunt weapon.
a) remarked b) noticed c) watched d) marked
23. My birthday partyuntil late at night.
a) lasted b) lost c) missed d) celebrated
24. Winter wheat is planted in the autumn andin early summer.
a) added b) scattered c) spread d) harvested
25. What is your.....kind of music?
a) favourites b) favour c) favourite d) favourably
26. Mothers use folk music tobabies to sleep.
a) sing b) feed c) eat d) learn
27. We are responsible forthe traditional music of our country.
a) preventing b) protecting c) wasting d) destroying
28. Suzzy is clever atmusical instruments.
a) flying b) doing c) playing d) breaking
29. It isto drive dangerously, especially in towns or cities.
a) interesting b) acceptable c) exciting d) irresponsible
30. Theof the internet has taken place over the last 20 years.
a) attachment b) evolution c) replacement d) discovery
31. Every culture has its own traditionmusic.
a) folk b) rap c) jazz d) rock
32. Snoware shown during the Sapporo Snow Festival in Japan.
a) statues b) structures c) sculptures d) slides
33. Our local university offers aof language courses.
a) various b) variety c) varied d) variable
34. You can buy this shirt incolours and styles.
a) vary b) variety c) variable d) various
35. I don't understand thebetween who and which.
a) distinct b) distinctive c) distinction d) distinguished
36. He is a modern musician who composes in the.....of Bach.
a) style b) method c) route d) street
37. Ais a musical instrument that you hold under your chin and play by pulling a long object called a bow across its strings.
a) piano b) violin c) drum d) guitar
38. He travelled to France for theof making business contacts.
a) reason b) consequence c) result d) purpose
39. The team's performance wasby the rain.
a) increased b) effect c) affected d) continued
40. My grandfather is very old and he can't walk without a.....
a) stick b) slip c) push d) chair
41. The investigation uncovered a chain ofthat could have been prevented.
a) serials b) events c) episodes d) incidents

42. She was still waving as the trainfrom view.
a) *displeased* b) *came* c) *disappointed* d) *disappeared*
43. It's veryto see daughters who dress like their mothers.
a) *public* b) *general* c) *common* d) *private*
44. Members of thecommunity gathered together to discuss the district problems.
a) *local* b) *universal* c) *international* d) *global*
45. The sole.....of conducting a business is to make money.
a) *result* b) *purpose* c) *duty* d) *reason*
46. I'm not in a.....to say who my sources are.
a) *preposition* b) *depression* c) *disposition* d) *position*
47.can be very dangerous, so they shouldn't be given to young children.
a) *Firetraps* b) *Firesides* c) *Fireworks* d) *Firewood*
48. Aof about twenty thousand people moved slowly towards the king's palace.
a) *process* b) *procession* c) *possession* d) *contest*
49. We haven't seen each other for a long time. How about gettingevery evening?
a) *through* b) *over* c) *across* d) *together*
50. You should payattention to spelling to avoid mistakes.
a) *particular* b) *popular* c) *common* d) *general*
51. When he loses his temper, he isn'tfor his actions.
a) *changeable* b) *charge* c) *responsible* d) *response*
52. It'sfor a bride to wear a white dress on her wedding day.
a) *tradition* b) *traditionally* c) *traditional* d) *custom*
53. Teaching methods.....greatly from a society to another.
a) *differentiate* b) *vary* c) *change* d) *suffer*
54. The simsimyya is the musical.....of the Suez area.
a) *equipment* b) *instruction* c) *machine* d) *instrument*
55. You have to.....on yourself in finding the job.
a) *depend* b) *insist* c) *live* d) *move*
56. Where did the accident take? On Oraby Street.
a) *to* b) *after* c) *place* d) *down*
57. He is so clever that he can makea story in no time.
a) *for* b) *up* c) *off* d) *out*
58. Folk songs may help people get.....their day's work.
a) *up* b) *over* c) *by* d) *through*
59. Folk music passed downfamilies, friends or neighbours to children.
a) *from* b) *of* c) *about* d) *with*

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. A ceremony was held to remark the occasion.
2. A good harvest means money for the next year.
3. Are you clever at making for good stories?
4. Being individual, folk music was not quoted by music from other areas.
5. Bring in mind that there'll be a big meal later .
6. Countries hold festivals to celebrate important historic accidents.
7. Different areas of Egypt use different musical equipment.
8. Farmers expect that there will be a great hatred this year.
9. Folk music is like other kinds of music.
10. His style of writing has evoked gradually over the past twenty years.
11. HistoriC events should always be commemorated.
12. How is this place different of the other?
13. I couldn't pick out any landslide in the dark and got lost.
14. I usually visit my relationships on feast days.
15. It is your responsible to run the factory during the manager's illness.
16. Large numbers of firetraps are often let off in a fireworks display.
17. Let's have a party to contribute your birthday.
18. Mass media have made it impossible for anyone to listen to music.
19. Musical tools are different in different areas.
20. On religious occasions, a lot of money is given up to the poor.
21. People clapped and cheered as the process passed by.
22. People usually celebrate Sham El-Nessim in the dry air.

23. Revolve is to develop or make something develop gradually.
24. Salary scales vary from one country to another.
25. Samer is a big fan of Al Ahly football team.
26. Soha's marriage wedding festival was fantastic.
27. The boys are playing in the park.
28. The flute is a musical instrument.
29. The method of Sayed Darwish was adopted by many musicians.
30. The Oud is rare in the folk music of Cairo. Most people like it.
31. The soldier's wear is clearly different from others. It's distinctive.
32. The Sphinx is a famous landmark.
33. The Sphinx is a landmark in Giza.
34. They traveled to London for a certain purpose.
35. This shirt can be bought in variety sizes.
36. We should benefit from the accidents of the past.
37. What is your current financial composition?
38. Yesterday a relative of mine met his end and I attended his
39. Young children shouldn't use fire brigades. They are dangerous.
40. Young people are fond of listening to loud music.

Translate into Arabic:

Most modern music is written as entertainment. Most folk music, however, has a special purpose. Folk songs, for example, were made up to describe important historical events, to help people get through their day's work, or to sing babies to sleep.

The 20th century will be remembered for its scientific revolution. Our age is the age of the atom, space and revolutionary medical achievements. Therefore, conferences are organised to apply and make use of these achievements.

No one of us whether rich or poor can do without modern inventions. They not only enabled us to save money, time and efforts but also facilitate our lives, so we owe much to the great inventors for these marvelous inventions.

Translate into English:

- تعكس الموسيقى الشعبية ثقافة و فكر المجتمع.

- الموسيقى لغة عالمية و غذاء للروح و وسيلة للتواصل بين الشعوب.

- إن الجهود التي تبذل من أجل تحسين الصحة لا يمكن أن تتم بنجاح إلا بتعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

- لا بد أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لجذب المزيد و المزيد من السياح حتى يمكننا أن نزيد دخلنا القومي.

- الديمقراطية هي حرية الرأي و الفكر و ليس الفوضى التي تقضي علي المجتمع .

- وقف الجميع عندما عزف النشيد الوطني المصري.

efforts	جهود	marvelous	رائع
enable	يمكن	Mess	فوضى
facilitate	يسهل	National anthem	نشيد وطني
freedom	حرية	Opinion	رأي
inventors	مخترعين	owe	يدين

Grammar

Prepositions after nouns / verbs / and adjectives

1-verb+ to+ inf.

agree to	يوافق	fail to	يفشل	pretend to	يتظاهر
arrange to	يرتب	hope to	يأمل	promise to	يعد
attempt to	يحاول	learn to	يتعلم	refuse to	يرفض
choose to	يختار	Long to	يشتهق إلى	seem to	يبدو
dare to	يجرؤ	manage to	يتمكن	swear to	يحلف/ يقسم
decide to	يقرر	mean to	يعني	tend to	يميل إلى
demand to	يطالب بـ	offer to	يعرض	threaten to	يهدد
deserve to	يستحق	plan to	يخطط	want to	يريد
expect to	يتوقع	prepare to	يستعد	wish to	يتمني

2-verb+ gerund (v.ing)

Admit	يتمتع	enjoy	يتمتع	postpone	يؤجل
appreciate	يقدر	fancy	يتوهم - يتخيل	practise	يمارس
avoid	يتجنب	finish	ينهي	prevent	يمنع
burst out	ينفجر	give up	يتوقف عن / يقطع	put off	يؤجل
can't help	لا يستطيع أن يتوقف	go on	يستمر	quit	يلغي
can't stand	لا يطيق	imagine	يتخيل	resist	يقاوم
complete	يكمل	include	يشمل	risk	يخطر
consider	يفكر في	involve	يتضمن	spend	يقضي
delay	يؤجل	keep (on)	يستمر في	suggest	يقترح
deny	ينكر	mind	يمانع	understand	يفهم
dislike	يكره	miss	يفتقد	waste	يضيع/ يبذر

3- Expression + gerund (v.ing)

Be accustomed to	معتاد علي	How about	ما رأيك في
be busy	مشغول	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
Be going to	سوف	It's a waste of money	مضيعة للمال
Be interested in	مهتم	It's a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت
be opposed to	معارض لـ	It's no good = It's no use	لا فائدة من
be used to	معتاد	It's worth	يستحق
Be worth	يستحق	lead to	يؤدي إلى
can't stand	لا يطيق/ يكره	look forward to	ينتظر إلى
can't help	لا يسعني إلا أن	owing to	بسبب
Don't mind	لا يمانع / لا يبالي	own up to	يعترف بـ
due to	بسبب	take to	يعتاد علي
Feel like	يود/ يريد	thanks to	بفضل
get round to	يجد الوقت لـ	There is no point in	لا فائدة من
get used to	يعتاد علي	What about	ما رأيك في
Have difficulty (in)	يجد صعوبة في	Would you mind	هل تمانع

4-Verb + object + preposition

accuse of	يتهم بـ	lead (something) against	يقود ضد
blame for	يلوم على	prefer (something) to	يفضل على
blame (something) on	يلوم على	protect (someone) from	يحمي من
charge (someone) with	يتهم بـ	provide (someone) with	يزود بـ
congratulate (someone) on	يهنئ على	remind (someone) of	يذكر بـ
criticize (someone) for	ينتقد على	remind (someone) to	يذكر بـ
do (something) for	يفعل شئ من أجل	set up (something) for	يقيم من أجل
hold (something) against	يعقد ضد	thank (someone) for	يشكر على

- I congratulated Ahmed on his success.

- The police blamed the explosion on terrorists.

- ولكن لاحظ : في حالة المبنى للمجهول يبقى حرف الجر بعد الفعل :

- We thanked them for their help.

= They were thanked for their help.

الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها to + inf. أو فعل مضاف له ing بدون اختلاف في المعنى:

hate	يكره	like	يحب
love	يحب	prefer	يفضل

- ولكن لاحظ أنه إذا استخدمنا would قبل الأفعال السابقة فإنه يأتي بعدها to + inf.

-I'd like to finish my work early today.

-I'd prefer to drink coffee.

- الأفعال الآتية يمكن أن يأتي بعدها to + inf. أو فعل مضاف له ing مع وجود اختلاف في المعنى:

1 - Remember

-Remember to + infinitive	يتذكر أن يفعل شيء ثم يفعله	- He remembered to close the gate.
-Remember + gerund	يقوم بعمل شيء ثم يتذكر أنه فعله	- He remembered seeing the man. = He saw the man and later remembered.

2 - Forget

- Forget to + infinitive	ينسى أن يفعل شيئاً (لم يفعله)	- Nadia forgot to meet the customer. = She didn't meet the customer.
- Forget + gerund	يفعل شيئاً ثم ينسى أنه فعله	- Nadia forgot meeting the customer. = She met the customer but then forgot.

3- Regret

-Regret to + inf.	يشعر بالأسف لأن يقول أو يخبر شخص شيئاً ما	- He regretted to say that I didn't succeed. = He was sorry that it was necessary to say it.
-Regret + gerund	يشعر بالندم على شيء حدث	- He regretted saying that I didn't succeed. = He was sorry that he had said it.

4 - Try

-Try to + infinitive	يحاول عمل شيء (وغالباً لا ينجح)	- He tried to fix the door.
-Try + gerund	(يقوم بعمل شيء ليري نتيجته / يجرب عمل شيء)	- She tried using petrol to remove the spots.

5- Stop

-Stop to + infinitive	يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئاً	- He stopped to read his newspaper. = He stopped what he was doing to read the paper.
-Stop + gerund	يتوقف عن عمل شيء	- He stopped reading his newspaper. = He had read what he wanted to read.

- الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها ING في حالة عدم وجود مفعول ، و يأتي بعدها to + inf. في حالة وجود مفعول:

advise	ينصح	recommend	يوصي بـ
allow	يسمح	permit	يسمح
forbid	يمنع	encourage	يشجع

- We don't allow smoking here. = we don't allow anyone to smoke here

- Would rather + inf. = Would prefer + to + inf. _____
- I'd rather stay at home.
- I'd prefer to stay at home.
- Would rather + inf.than + inf. يفضل
- We'd rather go to the park than watch TV.
- Would rather + inf. +n. than + n. يفضل
- I'd rather have coffee than tea.
- rather + adj. / adv. = fairly / to some degree إلى حد ما
- It's rather hot today, isn't it?
- Prefer + to + inf. / V+ing. يفضل
- He prefers to play tennis. - He prefers playing tennis.
- would prefer to + inf. يفضل
- I'd prefer not to discuss this issue.
- Prefer + V+ing. + to + V+ing
- He prefers watching football to playing it.

الأفعال و الظروف الآتية يأتي بعدها inf. فقط بدون to:

had better	ينبغي	would rather	يفضل
let	يسمح	make	يرغم

- She would rather stay at home.

- Let me have a look at that letter.

في حالة وجود فعل بعد الصفات التالية نستخدم :to + inf.

happy / sad / glad / willing مستعد / unwilling / eager متلهف / pleased / lucky / relieved / amazed / astonished مندهش

- He is eager to know his result.

في حالة وجود فعل بعد know / show نستخدم :how to + inf.

- I don't know how to use this mobile.

في حالة وجود فعل بعد what / how / where نستخدم :to + inf.

- He got lost; he didn't know where to go.

ينفي الفعل المضاف له ING باستخدام not:

- Thank you for not coming late.

- I apologize for not posting your letter.

5- Verb + object + to +inf.

advise	- Mum always <u>advises</u> us <u>to</u> pray on time.	ينصح
allow	- I <u>allowed</u> him <u>to</u> use my mobile.	يسمح
ask	- The manager <u>asked</u> me <u>to</u> discuss the problem with my friends.	يطلب
beg	- He <u>begged</u> the thief <u>to</u> give him the money.	يتوسل
challenge	- I <u>challenge</u> anyone who claims <u>to</u> be the leader.	يتحدى
choose	- They <u>chose</u> him <u>to</u> lead the search group.	يختار
command	- The officer <u>commanded</u> his soldiers <u>to</u> cease fire.	يأمر
encourage	- Mum always <u>encourages</u> me <u>to</u> depend on myself.	يشجع
expect	- What do you <u>expect</u> me <u>to</u> do?	يتوقع
force	- The bad weather <u>forced</u> people <u>to</u> stay at home all day.	يجبر
help	- He can <u>help</u> me(<u>to</u>)understand this lesson.	يساعد
hire	- I <u>hired</u> a plumber <u>to</u> fix the pipe.	يؤجر شخصا
instruct	- The policeman <u>instructed</u> drivers <u>not to</u> drive too fast.	يأمر
invite	- They <u>invited</u> us <u>to</u> have lunch with them.	يدعو
motivate	- We should <u>motivate</u> everyone <u>to</u> learn new skills.	يحفز
order	- The leader <u>ordered</u> the soldiers <u>to</u> attack.	يأمر
permit	- The security will not <u>permit</u> anybody <u>to</u> enter .	يسمح
persuade	- I <u>persuaded</u> her <u>to</u> start a new website.	يقنع

promise	- She <u>promised</u> us <u>to</u> do her best.	يعد
remind	- I <u>reminded</u> him <u>to</u> do the shopping.	يذكر
require	- You are <u>required</u> <u>to</u> wear a school uniform.	يتطلب
teach	- My sister <u>taught</u> us <u>to</u> read carefully.	يعلم
tell	- She <u>told</u> him <u>to</u> leave the office.	يأمر
urge	- He <u>urges</u> me <u>to</u> join the club.	يحث
want	- He <u>wants</u> you <u>to</u> sign this contract.	يريد
would like	- I <u>d like</u> you <u>to</u> get some coffee for me.	يود / يريد

- في حالة وجود that وبعدها فاعل بعد التعبيرات والأفعال الآتية نستخدم should + inf. أو inf.

suggest / insist / recommend / It is essential / It is important / It is necessary (that)..

- I suggested (that) he come with me. = - I suggested that he should come with me.
- It is essential that every child should have the same educational opportunities.
- It is necessary that she should talk to me when she gets here.

6- Verb + Preposition

accuse of	يتهم بـ	hear from	يتلقى أخبارا من
Apologise to someone for	يعتذر عن شيء	help in/with	يساعد في
apply for (a job)	يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة	hope for	يأمل في
apply to	يتقدم بطلب لشخص أو شركة	know about	يعرف عن
believe in	يؤمن بـ	object to	يعترض على
belong to	يخص	prevent from	يمنع من
blame .. for	يلوم على	prevent from	يمنع من
charge with	يتهم بـ	protect ..from / against	يحمي من
complain about	يشكو من	read about	يقرأ عن
complain to	يشكو لشخص	recover from	يشفي من
concentrate on	يركز على	rely on = depend on	يعتمد على
congratulate on	بهنيء بـ	result from	ينتج من
consist of	يتكون من	result in	يؤدي الي
deal with	يتناول / يتعامل مع	search for	يبحث عن
die of	يموت بسبب	succeed in	ينجح في
differ from	يختلف عن	suffer from	يعاني من
do without	يستغني عن	talk about	يتحدث عن
dream about/of	يحلم بـ	tell someone about	يخبر شخص عن
find out about	يعرف عن	think about / of	يفكر في
hear about / of	يسمع عن	warn about	يحذر من

- في حالة وجود فعل بعد know / show/learn نستخدم :how to + inf.

- I don't know how to use the computer.

- في حالة وجود فعل بعد what / how / where نستخدم :to + inf.

- I don't know where to put these books.
- I have no idea where to look for my lost bag.

7- Noun + Preposition

addiction to	إدمان	dedication to	تفاني	increase in	reason for
advantage of		delay in		interest in	regret for
anxiety about	قلق	devotion to	إخلاص/تكريس	knowledge of	report on
belief in	اعتقاد	disadvantage of		love of	سمعة
cause of		experience in		memory of	responsibility for
credit for	شرف / فخر	fear of		preference for	تفضيل
decline in	انخفاض	fondness for	ولع بـ	process of	عملية
decrease in		habit of		reaction to	رد فعل

8- Adjective + Preposition

accustomed to	معتاد	content with	قانع	fond of	مغرم	opposed to	معارض
addicted to	مدمن	dedicated to	متفاني	frightened of	خائف	remembered for	
anxious about	قلق	devoted to	مكرس	guilty of	مذنب	responsible for	
bored of		disappointed with		happy about		scared of	خائف
capable of		discouraged by		interested in		terrified of	مرعوب
committed to	ملتزم	excited about		involved in	متورط	tired of	
concerned about	قلق	famous for		known for		worried about	

- لاحظ ما يلي :

It + be + Adj. + to + inf.

- It is difficult (for him) to study Physics.

- It was easy for me to do the job.

- في حالة وجود فعل بعد الصفات التالية نستخدم :to + inf.

happy/ sad/ glad/ willing مستعد/ unwilling/ eager متلهف/ pleased/ lucky/ relieved/ amazed/ astonished مندهش

الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على أننا شاهدنا أو سمعنا الحدث بالكامل ويأتي بعدها الفعل مضافا له ing ليدل على أننا سمعنا شاهدنا جزء من الحدث:

hear	يسمع	notice	يلاحظ
see	يرى	watch	يشاهد

- I heard Peter sing a song. = I heard the whole song.

- I heard Peter singing a song. = I heard part of the song.

- لاحظ استخدام to + inf. بعد الكلمات the first / the second .. / the last / the next

- Gagarin was the first to fly in a spaceship.

- Mona was the last to watch the film.

- يُستخدم المصدر بدون to بعد الأفعال الناقصة:

can / could / may / might / must / mustn't / needn't / shall / Should / will / would

-They needn't do the job today.

-She can speak 3 languages.

- فعل help يأتي بعده المصدر مع to أو بدون to:

- He helped me do the job.

He helped me to do the job.

- الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها ING في حالة عدم وجود مفعول ، و يأتي بعدها to + inf. في حالة وجود مفعول:

advise	ينصح	forbid	يمنع	permit	يسمح
allow	يسمح	recommend	يوصي بـ	encourage	يشجع

- They do not permit parking here.

- They do not allow anyone to park here.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer:

- I regretyou that your application hasn't been successful.
a) to tell b) telling c) tell d) to telling
- You have locked yourself out. Trythe doorbell, someone may be in.
a) to ring b) ringing c) ring d) to ringing
- Remember.....out all the lights before you leave.
a) put b) putting c) to put d) putting
- You don't objectlate tonight, do you?
a) worked b) to work c) working d)to working
- I can't afforda new car this year.
a) buy b) buying c) to buy d)to buying
- I would hate.....this job up .

- a) giving b) to give c) give d) to giving
- 7) I can't standa suit in such hot weather.
a) to wearing b) to wear c) wear d) wearing
- 8) Don't spend too much time.....computer games.
a) play b) playing c) played d) to play
- 9) Despite the difficulties, we hope.....the African cup.
a) winning b) win c) to winning d) to win
- 10) My sister has never been able to quit.....
a) smoking b) smoke c) smokes d) to smoke
- 11) I startedfor the bank twenty years ago .
a) work b) worked c) working d) to working
- 12) When I was a child, I used to imagine.....a pilot
a) becoming b) to become c) becomes d) become
- 13) John mailed the letter and rememberedit later.
a) mailing b) to mail c) to mailing d) mails
- 14) Ahmed doesn't smoke any more. This means he stopped
a) to smoke b) to smoking c) smoking d) smoke
- 15) I don't mind cooking but I hate.....
a) iron b) to ironing c) ironed d) ironing
- 16) The flat needs
a) decorate b) to be decorated c) decorated d) to decorate
- 17) I've delayedto the dentist for as long as I could.
a) going b) go c) to go d) to going
- 18) I promised.....my homework carefully
a) do b) doing c) to do d) to doing
- 19) On her way home, my mother stoppeda few things at the store.
a) picking up b) pick up c) picks up d) to pick up
- 20) We prefer watching IV toto the cinema.
a) going b) go c) goes d) went
- 21) I can't standwith him as he talks so much.
a) stayed b) stay c) to staying d) staying
- 22) Ahmed looked forward toall his friends when he was in hospital .
a) have seen b) seeing c) saw d) see
- 23) The shop refusedhis cheque.
a) accepting b) accept c) to accept d) accepted
- 24) She deservedthe prize. She is always hardworking.
a) win b) wins. c) to win d) winning
- 25) He avoidedthe most difficult questions.
a) to answer b) answering c) answer d) answered
- 26) I have decidedthe piano.
a) learn b) to learning c) learning d) to learn
- 27) I like.....on the beach. I always spend my holidays sunbathing.
a) lied b) lie c) lying d) lies
- 28) I'd like.....on the beach today .It's too hot to do anything else.
a) to lie b) lying c) lie d) to lying
- 29) I rememberthis book, but I don't know who wrote it.
a) to read b) reading c) read d) reads
- 30) She agreed.....an article on classical music.
a) write b) writing c) to write d) to writing
- 31) It would be marvelous to fly in a balloon. I'd lovein one someday.
a) flying b) flies c) fly d) to fly
- 32) Do you regret.....to the concert ?
a) go b) going c) to go d) goes
- 33) We arranged at 9 o'clock.
a) met b) to meet c) meet d) meeting
- 34) I don't recommendon a long car ride if you don't like travelling.
a) going b) to go c) go d) will go

- 35) Did you manageyour brother?
a) *phoned* b) *phone* c) *phoning* d) *to phone*
- 36) He startedthe piano when he was 10.
a) *learn* b) *learning* c) *to learning* d) *learned*
- 37) He came to the party but he refusedto anyone.
a) *to talk* b) *talk* c) *talked* d) *talking*
- 38) She wanteda new camera.
a) *buying* b) *buy* c) *to buy* d) *bought*
- 39) I can't standto him.
a) *to listen* b) *listen* c) *listened* d) *listening*
- 40) On my way home, I stoppeda paper.
a) *buying* b) *to buy* c) *bought* d) *buy*
- 41) I stoppeda letter that I had dropped.
a) *to pick up* b) *picked up* c) *picking up* d) *pick up*
- 42) He never forgotthe Pyramids for the first time.
a) *to see* b) *saw* c) *seeing* d) *see*
- 43) Musicians practice.....their instrument for many hours a day.
a) *put off* b) *to put off* c) *putting off* d) *puts off*
- 44) He suggested.....to the theatre.
a) *go* b) *to go* c) *going* d) *to going*
- 45) The scheme will propose.....some of the Victorian buildings in the town centre.
a) *demolish* b) *demolishing* c) *demolished* d) *to demolish*
- 46) The band stoppedand there was silence.
a) *plays* b) *to play* c) *played* d) *playing*
- 47) I tried hard.....him to stay with us, but I couldn't.
a) *persuading* b) *persuade* c) *to persuading* d) *to persuade*
- 48) I regret.....that Mr. Ali has been ill .
a) *saying* b) *to say* c) *say* d) *to saying*
- 49) Some workers went on strike and refused
a) *to eat* b) *eating* c) *for eating* d) *eat*
- 50) Would you likea look round?
a) *have* b) *having* c) *to have* d) *to having*

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. Ahmed dislikes to sleep during the day.
2. Ali is planning spending all weekend revising for next week's maths test.
3. Ali regrets to missing the chance of getting a prize.
4. Do you expect finish your work early today?
5. Don't try open that gate. It's no use.
6. Don't worry. I remember to lock the office.
7. Everyone agreed of meeting at the airport.
8. Fady agreed giving me a lift.
9. He hopes winning prize for his school work.
10. He prefers to flying to Europe.
11. Heba likes to walk not riding.
12. I adore to go on long walks.
13. I don't mind to borrow money but I did like peter's doing it .
14. I don't want going out this evening.
15. I enjoy to swim in the ocean.
16. I intend taking the TOEFL at the end of the Semester
17. I look forward to receive your reply .
18. I regret to go to the cinema. It was not a very good film. .
19. I regretted not attend the conference yesterday.
20. I remember switch off the lights when I went on holiday a week ago.
21. I stopped to watching TV for being harmful to my eyes.
22. I tried running after the dog, but I was too slow.
23. I usually avoid walk in the dark.
24. I was forced to delay travel to London.
25. I'd like listening to some music.

26. I'd like very much to meeting the President.
27. I'd like going and see this new film.
28. I'd love going shopping in my mother's company.
29. I'm afraid you forgot signing the cheque.
30. I'm considering to change my old car.
31. It was not easy to him to find a good job.
32. Leila isn't used to eat late at night. ,
33. Leila promised phoned her mother as soon as she got to school.
34. Mona offered helping her mother prepare lunch.
35. Musicians practise play their instruments for many hours a day.
36. My father promised to lending me his car.
37. My friend is always busy does his job.
38. My friend suggested went for a picnic on the beach.
39. Nada's parents are very easy-going. They let her to do what she wants.
40. Omer forgot doing his homework, so he felt sorry.
41. Remember switched off the lights when you go out, please.
42. She doesn't feel like to work on the computer.
43. She helped me doing the cooking.
44. She loves cook for her family.
45. She made me to go to bed.
46. She managed solved the problem.
47. She offered taking me to the station in her car.
48. She refused lending me her dictionary.
49. She wanted her son turn down his music.
50. The doctor suggested to have a week off.
51. The driver avoided to hit the motorbike.
52. The driver stopped to buying some cigarettes.
53. Their teacher agreed helping them find an English pen friend.
54. This stereo is not good value for money. You'd better not to buy it.
55. We are looking forward to go out at the weekend.
56. We've arranged picking my brother up from the airport..
57. We've just finished to watch a TV programme about Egyptian history.
58. When did you decide studying biology at university?

Test 12

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

28. You are asked if you enjoy playing music.
29. You ask your friend if there is any kind of music he doesn't like.
30. You want to find out if your classmate prefers any kind of books.
31. Your friend asks you which sport you like.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1 A : - I've passed the final exam. B : - Congratulations. A : - How are you going to reward me?
 B : - As I promised. I'll buy you a car. A : - Thanks a lot.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

2. A : - Passport and tickets, please. B : - Here you are. A : - Smoking or non-smoking?
 B : - Non-smoking, please.
 A : - Thank you. I've given you a window seat, 20B, Here's your boarding card.

Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: - Function:

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Small objects that explode or burn with a coloured light are
 a- firewalls b- fireworks c- fire strikes d- fires
2. A.....is The place where someone or something is in relation to other things

- | <i>a- position</i> | <i>b- location</i> | <i>c- situation</i> | <i>d- site</i> |
|--|------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 3.A line of people moving slowly as part of a ceremony is a | | | |
| <i>a- process</i> | <i>b- procession</i> | <i>c- proceed</i> | <i>d- processes</i> |
| 4.Do something special because it is a special occasion is to | | | |
| <i>a- celebration</i> | <i>b- celebrate</i> | <i>c- calibrate</i> | <i>d- calibration</i> |
| 5.A musical instrument which you play by hitting with your hand or a stick is a | | | |
| <i>a- violin</i> | <i>b- oud</i> | <i>c- guitar</i> | <i>d- drum</i> |
| 6.Something that helps you recognise where you are, such as a famous building is a | | | |
| <i>a- landmine</i> | <i>b- landfill</i> | <i>b- land pond</i> | <i>d- landmark</i> |
| 7.Show that an important event or change is happening is to | | | |
| <i>a- remark</i> | <i>b- demark</i> | <i>c- mark</i> | <i>d- seamount</i> |
| 8..... can be very dangerous, so they shouldn't be given to young children. | | | |
| <i>a- fireworks</i> | <i>b- firewalls</i> | <i>c- fireflies</i> | <i>d- fireboats</i> |
| 9.It cost him \$ 10,000 the machinery he needed. | | | |
| <i>a- buying</i> | <i>b- to buy</i> | <i>c- to buying</i> | <i>d-bought</i> |
| 10. The kidnappers told the parents the police. | | | |
| <i>a-not to inform</i> | <i>b-not informing</i> | <i>c-do not inform</i> | <i>d-did not inform</i> |
| 11. A: Did you remember her the money. | | | |
| B: No, I didn't. But I'll see her tonight and I promise not to forget this time. | | | |
| <i>a- to give</i> | <i>b- being given</i> | <i>c- giving</i> | <i>d- to giving</i> |
| 12. I regret to this silly man. He only wasted my time. | | | |
| <i>a-listen</i> | <i>b-to listen</i> | <i>c-listening</i> | <i>d-to listening</i> |
| 13. We don't want anybody that we are here. | | | |
| <i>a-know</i> | <i>b-knowing</i> | <i>c-known</i> | <i>d-to know</i> |
| 14. Imagine living with someone who never stops | | | |
| <i>a-to talk</i> | <i>b-talking</i> | <i>c-to talking</i> | <i>d-talked</i> |
| 15. I regret my lessons. I got really bad marks. | | | |
| <i>a-to neglecting</i> | <i>b-to neglect</i> | <i>c-neglecting</i> | <i>d-negligence</i> |
| 16. I tried him, but he had already left. | | | |
| <i>a-stopping</i> | <i>b-stopped</i> | <i>c-stop</i> | <i>d-to stop</i> |

4-Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

- 1- A procession is a line of people moving slowly as a part of a war.
- 2- He agreed helping them.
- 3- He denied steal the money.
- 4- He regrets to go to the cinema.
- 5- The lecture listed for two hours .
- 6- We accept visitors here.

C- Reading

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions:

I have never been a fast reader. As a child, it took me two weeks to read a book that my friends could read in a few days. This worried my parents, so they took me for an eye test.

The doctor said there was nothing wrong with my eyes and, said he thought I was probably lazy. This was very annoying, but I was pleased to know that I did not need to wear glasses. Now I am older, I understand my problem better. The truth is that I cannot concentrate on what I am reading if there is any noise around me, so, for example, I cannot read in a room where people are talking or watching television. I sometimes read in bed where it is quiet, but If I am tired, I fall asleep after a few minutes and forget what I have read the next day.

A -Answer the following questions:

- 1- What is the writer's problem?
- 2- What did the writer's parents do?
- 3- Why is reading in bed not the answer to the writer's problems?

B- choose the correct answer from a , b , c ,or d

- 4- The doctor said that the problem was

<i>a- that he needed glasses.</i>	<i>b- he had serious eye problems.</i>
<i>c- he was lazy.</i>	<i>d- he found it difficult to concentrate.</i>
- 5- What does the writer think caused the problem?

<i>a - Noises make it difficult for him to read.</i>	<i>b- He does not like people watching television .</i>
<i>c - He is usually tired.</i>	<i>d- He is not interested in the books he reads.</i>

Read the following passage then answer the questions:

Most students find university very different from school. One of the biggest differences is that university students are expected to manage their time themselves. Although staff will help, it is the students' responsibility to be in the right place at the right time and to hand homework in on time. The way teaching is organized is also very different from school. At university, lecturers teach classes that may last two or three hours and can include 300-400 students. There are usually other smaller classes where students can discuss subjects they find difficult, and from time to time lecturers spend time with individual students, talking about work they have done. If students are not living at home while they are at university, there are many ordinary things they may have to do for themselves, such as cooking.

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- What two places does this passage compare?
- 2- How many students can be in a university class?
- 3- Why are smaller groups sometimes necessary at university?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

- 4- Who does they refer to in talking about work they have done?
A- lecturers b- classes c- students d- subjects
- 5- What does the writer suggest students should be prepared to do when they go to university?
a- Be organised. b- Read many books. c - Find a job . d- Discuss ideas.

D- The Prisoner of Zenda

7- Answer the following questions :

1. Rassendyll's writing is different from the King's. What reason does Rassendyll give? Why might this difference be a problem for Marshal Strakencz?
2. What reason does Rassendyll give Princess Flavia for leaving Strelsau? What does he ask her to do if he doesn't come back?
3. Where do Rassendyll and his men stay for their hunting trip? Where is it and who does it belong to?
4. What reason does Duke Michael give for not visiting "King" Rassendyll or inviting him to his castle?

B) Read following quotation and answer the questions:

'The writing's a little different from your usual. I hope people know it's a real order from the King.'

1. Who says this to Rassendyll (the King)?
2. What does he think is the reason that the handwriting is different? What is the real reason?
3. Why is it important that the handwriting be the same?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. Fritz owns the country house called Tarlenheim.
2. The ten brave and strong gentlemen know that Rassendyll is not the real King.

E - Writing

Write an e- mail to a foreign friend:

Describing a piece of Egyptian music you like

a) Translate into Arabic :

The government has set up a number of new cities in the desert to solve the problem of housing. Great efforts are also made to reclaim the desert and turn it into green fields. Our deserts are rich in minerals which are necessary to industry.

b) Translate into English :

1- مراعاة الناس هو جوهر الاخلاق الحميدة.

2- تختلف الاحتفالات و المهرجانات باختلاف ثقافات الشعوب.

Considering	مراعاة	Essence	جوهر
Celebrations	احتفالات	Festivals	مهرجانات
Cultures	ثقافات	Good manners	الاخلاق الحميدة

Unit 13- *Women in History*

admiration	إعجاب	flying= aviation	الطيران	poor lighting	إضاءة ضعيفة
admire	يُعجب بـ	government	حكومة	positive	إيجابي
alternative	بديل	hygiene	النظافة الشخصية	president	رئيس
antiseptic	مطهر	imitate	يُقلد	prime minister	رئيس الوزراء
arguable	مثير للجدل	impress	يؤثر في / يترك انطباعا	prince	أمير
argue for	يدافع عن	impression	انطباع	princess	أميرة
arrogance= conceit	غرور	impressive	مؤثر / مبهر	qualities	صفات
be in charge of	مسئول عن	inspection	التفتيش	questionnaire	استبيان
brave	شجاع	inspector	مفتش	religious matters	مسائل دينية
bravery	الشجاعة	licence	رخصة	research assistant	باحث مساعد
check	يفحص / يراجع /	literary	أدبي	role	دور
compassion	حنو / شفقة	minister	وزير	ruler	حاكم
confidence	ثقة	motivate	يشجع	sanitation	الصحة العامة
confident	واثق	nurse	ممرضة	social worker	أخصائي اجتماعي
coordinator	منسق	nursery school	حضانة	solo	منفرد/ عمل منفرد
course	مقرر تعليمي	nursing	التمرريض	solo flight	رحلة طيران
Course of treatment	الجرعات اللازمة للعلاج	nursing school	مدرسة للتمريض	standard	مستوي
degree	درجة / شهادة علمية	occupation = job	المهنة أو الوظيفة	suitable	مناسب
dentist	طبيب أسنان	open a school	يفتح مدرسة	the British army	الجيش
document	مستند	overcrowded	مزدحم / مكتظ	the Crimean War	حرب القرم
effective	فعال / مؤثر	paramedic	مسعف	the Pacific Ocean	المحيط الهادي
effective drugs	عقاقير فعالة	personal	شخصي	vaccination	التلقيح (ضد الأمراض)
encourage	يشجع	persuade	يقنع	vaccine	مصل / لقاح
Endanger =	يُعرض للخطر	physical fitness	اللياقة البدنية	women's rights	حقوق المرأة
flight	رحلة طيران	plane crash	حادث تحطم طائرة	wounded soldiers	جنود جرحي
fly a plane	يقود طائرة	political matters	مسائل سياسية	zone	منطقة

Expressions

admission charge	رسم الدخول	master's degree	درجة الماجستير
anti-social behaviour	سلوك معادي للمجتمع	miss the record	يفشل في تحطيم الرقم القياسي
assess the situation	يقيم الموقف	obey the rules	يطيع القواعد
be associated with	مرتبط بـ	personal cleanliness	النظافة الشخصية
be awarded a degree	يُمنح درجة علمية	personal commitment	التزام شخصي
be determined to	مصمم علي	pivotal role	دور حيوي أو أساسي
break the world record	يحطم الرقم القياسي العالمي	play a positive role in	يلعب دور إيجابي في
campaign against	حملة ضد	popular with	مشهور لدى / محبوب من
constructive dialogue	حوار بناء	positive attitude	موقف إيجابي
convincing argument	حجة مقنعة	spectacular success	نجاح مذهل
downplay the role of	يقلل من أهمية دور ..	strength of character	قوة الشخصية
fly over long distances	يطير لمسافات بعيدة	suitable opportunity	فرصة مناسبة (مواتية)
have a degree in Maths	لديه درجة علمية في الرياضيات	the first of its kind	الأولي من نوعها
hold a driving licence	يحمل رخصة قيادة	to an unprecedented degree	بدرجة غي مسبوقة
impressive achievement	إنجاز باهر	to start with	كبداية ...
in varying degrees	بدرجات متفاوتة	to sum up	باختصار
introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكارا جديدة	was born into a wealthy family	وُلد في أسرة ثرية
look after = take care of	يعتني بـ	work in a hospital	يعمل في مستشفى
lose her life	تفقد حياتها	write under a pen name	يكتب باستخدام اسم مستعار

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adj.
argue يجادل	argument جدل / خلاف	arguable مثير للجدل argumentative مجادل / كثير الجدل
brave يواجه بشجاعة / يتحدي	bravery الشجاعة	brave شجاع
confide (in) يثق	confidence ثقة	confident واثق
discourage(from) يثني عن / يمنع من	discouragement إعاقه / تثبيط الهمة	discouraged مُحبط discouraging (شيء) يسبب إحباط
encourage (to)	encouragement	encouraging مُشجع feel encouraged يشعر بالتشجيع
impress يبهز / يثير الإعجاب	impression انطباع	impressive مؤثر / مبهر
Nurse يربي (شخص مريض أو مسن)	nurse ممرضة / nursing التمريض	
suit يناسب	suitability ملائمة	suitable ملائم / مناسب

Words & antonyms

brave	شجاع	cowardly	جبان
bravery	الشجاعة	cowardice	الجبين
effective	فعال	ineffective	غير فعال
encourage (to)	يشجع	discourage (from)	يثني شخص عن (عمل)
formal	رسمي	informal	غير رسمي
impressive	مؤثر / مبهر	unimpressive	غير مؤثر
personal	شخصي	public	عام
persuade (to)	يقنع	dissuade (from)	يثني عن / يقنع بالعدول عن
positive	إيجابي	negative	سلبي
suitable	مناسب	unsuitable	غير مناسب
waste	يبدد	conserve	يحافظ
well-known	مشهور / معروف	unknown	غير معروف

Definitions

argue for	to clearly explain why you think something is true or should be done	يدافع عن
degree	the qualification given to someone who has successfully finished a university course	درجة/شهادة علمية
encourage	to try to persuade someone to do something, especially by making them more confident	يشجع
inspector	someone whose job is to check that something is of a good enough standard and that rules are being obeyed	مفتش
personal	involving someone's private life, their feelings, health and relationships	شخصي
positive	having a good or useful effect	إيجابي
role	the position that someone has in a situation or activity	دور
be in charge of	to be the person who controls or is responsible for someone or something	مسئول عن
effective	producing the result that was wanted	مؤثر / فعال
flight	a journey in a plane	رحلة جوية
impressive	making you admire something	مؤثر / مبهر
licence	an official document that gives you permission to do something	رخصة
nursing	the job of looking after people who are ill, injured or very poor	التمريض
solo	done alone, without anyone else helping you	منفرد
suitable	right or acceptable for a particular purpose or situation	مناسب

Language Notes

- Teach يُدرّس	- I teach English to secondary school students.
- Learn يتعلم	- She has learnt to play the guitar.
- learn - teach + (to + inf) أو (how to + inf) يتعلم - يعلم	- She learns to cook.
- Know/ Show + (how to + inf) يعرف - يوضح	- She knows how to cook.
- Argue for / in favour of يقدم حجة لصالح / يؤيد	- They argued strongly for the new project.
- Argue against يقدم الحجة ضد / يعارض	- They argued against the new tax law.
- decide to + inf. يقرر	- They decided to sell their farm.
- decide that + أن يقرر	- We decided that we would go for a boat trip.
- Decide on + n يختار	- We've decided on Youssif as a name for our baby.
- Train (somebody) in something يُدرّب علي	- All pupils will be trained in computer skills.
- Train (somebody) to + inf. يُدرّب لكي	- We are trained to deal with emergency situations.
- Train for + n يتدرب من أجل	- He spends three hours a day training for the match.
- Train to be / as + job يتدرب كـ (وظيفة)	- Mariam is training to be a doctor.
- For this reason, = so ولهذا السبب	- He had a bad cold. For this reason, he stayed in bed.
- She's leaving for New York next Friday.	- لا تستخدم the قبل كلمة next إذا جاءت بعدها كلمات تدل علي الزمن
- Read the next two chapters before Friday.	- تستخدم the قبل كلمة next إذا جاء بعدها اسم
- Between بين اثنين	- He sat between his grandparents.
- Among بين أكثر من اثنين	- This mountain is among the highest in the world.
- Interestingly من المثير للاهتمام	- هناك adverbs معينة يمكن أن يبدأ بها الكلام و يأتي بعدها جملة كاملة:
- luckily لحسن الحظ	- للأسف unfortunately / بلا شك undoubtedly /
- personally بصفة شخصية	- Unfortunately, none of her daughters ever married.
- undoubtedly, interest in local goods is low.	- I've been living on my own for eight years now.
- On (my/his/her...) own وحيد / بمفرده	- I'd like to have a house of my own.
- of (my/his/her...) own تدل علي الملكية	- We should encourage our children to read.
- Encourage to + inf يشجع علي	- The manager encourages hard work.
- encourage + n يُشجع (شيء)	- He discouraged me from making the journey.
- discourage from + v+ing يمنع من	- Parents always discourage bad manners.
- discourage + n يعوق (حدث شيء)	- Two officers were badly wounded.
- Wounded _ مجروح (باستخدام سلاح في حرب مثلا)	- One passenger was killed and four were injured.
- Injured مصاب / مجروح (في حادث)	- She died at the age of 85.
at the age of في عمر	- In the age of Mohamad Ali culture was greatly refreshed.
in the age of في عصر	- He is known for his generosity.
known for معروف بـ...	- She is known as 'The people's Princess'.
known as معروف كـ...	- Naguib Mahfouz is known to everyone.
known to معروف لـ...	- He is a well known doctor.
well known مشهور جدا	
contribute to = make contributions to يساهم - يقدم إسهامات	
- Many people contributed greatly to their nation.	
= Many people made great contributions to their nation.	

language functions
Asking for and Giving Reasons

<i>Asking for reasons</i>	<i>Giving reasons</i>
Can you tell me why..... ?	(It's) because
Is that the reason.....?	To start with
Is that why	Firstly / Secondly, because
What (did you choose) for?	That's one of the reasons.
What's the reason for	Mainly because
Why	For (two/three) reasons.....

Exercises

Respond the following situations:

32. You ask your father the reason why he has decided to move house.
33. You want to ask your friend about the reason why he came to school late.
34. Your friend would like to know why you have decided to study engineering.
35. Your mother asks you why you didn't tidy up your room.

- Mention the place , the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1-A: I gave my mobile phone to my sister yesterday? B: What did you do that for?
A: Mainly because someone bought me a new one for my birthday.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

2-A: Can you tell me why you were late for school?
B: To start with, I didn't hear my alarm clock.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

3-A: Why do you want to study science at university?
B: For two reasons. Firstly, because I enjoy science, and secondly because I want to be a doctor when I leave.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

4-A: I was busy all day yesterday. B: Is that the reason you didn't phone me?

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.Father put Omer inof fixing the car.
a) role b) responsibility c) change d) charge
- 2.Salma thought this was agift for her teacher.
a) suitable b) effective c) charge d) solo
- 3.Ahmed has just got his drivingand already he wants to buy a car.
a) flight b) role c) licence d) degree
- 4.My parents have alwaysme to work hard at school.
a)discouraged b)encouraged c)prevented d)hindered
- 5.I'd prefer not to talk about that. It's something very.....
a) public b) person c) personally d)personal
- 6.Nurses have an importantin looking after patients in a hospital.

- a. role b. date c. step d. appointment*
7. A 14-year-old Japanese boy has become the youngest person to complete a voyage across the Pacific Ocean.
- a. lonely, b. alone c. single d. solo*
8. My older brother has a in Maths from Cairo university.
- a. mark b. prize c. degree d. grade*
9. Exercise can have a effect on your health and fitness.
- a. negative b. positive c. had d. harmful*
10. It was a great football match. Both teams played very.....
- a. positively b. badly c. negatively d. cruelly*
11. A..... types Letters and 'answers the phones in offices.
- a. secret agent b. pilot c. nurse d. secretary*
12. Some students need more.....than others at school.
- a. depression b. encouragement c. frustration d. stress*
13. She would be a good nurse. She has a very kind.....
- a. hospitality b. fertility c. personality d. identity*
14., I believe that everyone should study science at school.
- a. Personally b. Personal c. Person d. Impersonal*
15. Dr Aisha's work had taken.....much of her personal life.
- a. in b. down c. off d. up*
16. Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles in which she argued women's role in the modern world.
- a. on b. for c. against d. with*
17. We.....Hany to study hard to become a doctor. _
- a) discouraged b) insulted c) encouraged d) blamed*
18. He was awarded a prize for his.....
- a) cowardice b) courage c) weakness d) insults*
19. He was so.....that he rushed into the burning building and saved. the child.
- a) cowardly b) weak c) nervous d) courageous*
20. Dr Aisha and Kasim Amin for women's rights.
- a) argued b) resisted c) fired d) attacked*
21. Because of her parents' death, she left school with no.....
- a) qualities b) qualifications c) qualify d) qualified*
22. An ambulance took the.....to the nearest hospital immediately after the accident.
- a) wound b) wounding c) winding d) wounded*
23. Naguib Mahfouz was.....the Nobel Prize in 1988.
- a) awarded b) rewarded c) announced d) reported*
24. He has two cars and a big villa. he must be.....
- a) healthy b) rude c) wealthy d) greedy*
25. When she was 17, she..... that she wanted to be a nurse.
- a) decided b) intended c) offered d) determined*
26. This problem was so.....that everyone can't ignore it.
- a) subjective b) effective c) reflexive d) efficient*
27. He.....the record in swimming.
- a) broke b) achieved c) reached d) destroyed*
28. Thefrom Cairo to Geddah takes about two hours.
- a) voyage b) flying c) flight d) picnic*
29. Before you can drive a car, you need to have a driving
- a) card b) visa c) certificate d) licence*
30. She was.....in a plane crash in 1941.
- a) called b) killed c) dived d) damaged*
31. My friend was.....to be an engineer and finally his parents agreed.
- a) determined b) pretended c) laughed d) studied*
32. The clever teacher..... new ideas and methods into school.
- a) offered b) presented c) introduced d) gave*
33. These shoes aren'tfor you. They are too big.
- a) profitable b) suitable c) helpful d) sufficient*

34. She.....sure he had borrowed a lot of money.
a) *did* b) *gave* c) *took* d) *made*
35. The vase landed on the floor with a.....
a) *crash* b) *flash* c) *rash* d) *brush*
36. My brother spent his nightrevision for his exam.
a) *do* b) *did* c) *doing* d) *to do*
37. He managed to complete a voyage across the Pacific Ocean.
a) *alone* b) *solo* c) *lonely* d) *only*
38. The factory manager should have a strongto be feared and respected.
a) *personal* b) *person* c) *personally* d) *personality*
39. Both Kasim Amin and Dr Aisha Adel Rahman argued forthe women's position in society.
a) *intruding* b) *refining* c) *improving* d) *inducing*
40. He wasn't able to get the.....because it has already been filled.
a) *location* b) *position* c) *task* d) *risk*
41. She finally managed to get to visit her husband in jail.
a) *confession* b) *submission* c) *condition* d) *permission*
42. Our journey to the UAE was.....We will remember it forever.
a) *impressive* b) *impress* c) *impressed* d) *impression*
43. The pilot was still young, however hea long distance flight.
a) *did* b) *formed* c) *made* d) *said*
44. Visitors to the country have been asked to fill in a detailed
a) *questionnaire* b) *questions* c) *quest* d) *application*
45. The police asked the witness to mention everything in .
a) *detail* b) *details* c) *detailed* d) *detained*
46. He felt desperate when he.....the record.
a) *broke* b) *lost* c) *missed* d) *dropped*
47. Our teacher doesn't allow us to answer haphazardly. He asks us to take.....
a) *turns* b) *notes* c) *away* d) *action*
48. He didn't decide to work as a photographer until he had grown.....
a) *on* b) *off* c) *down* d) *up*
49. She tried to explain, but he.....her in mid-sentence.
a) *rushed* b) *interrupted* c) *interferred* d) *interpreted*
50. What made you take.....engineering?
a) *after* b) *in* c) *up* d) *to*

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. Ahmed is success at his work.
2. A voyage is a journey in plane.
3. Amy did many other long-distance flights.
4. Antibiotics are only deductive if you finish the whole course of treatment.
5. Applicants must have a degrade in Engineering.
6. Children need lots of disappointment when they're learning new things.
7. Don't interfere in this matter. It is a personnel affair.
8. Dr Aisha died in the age of 85 years.
9. Dr Aisha was rewarded her PhD in 1951.
10. Effect teaching has a positive role in the educational process.
11. Finally he got' a driving degree.
12. Have you got the qualifies needed for the job?
13. He borrowed his father's car to depress his friends.
14. He did his work lonely.
15. He has a British national.
16. He is better known for a lot of people.
17. He joined the university crew as a research assistant.
18. He lost the record by two minutes.
19. He made many other long-distances flights in many countries.
20. He produced new ideas into school.
21. He smashed the record in swimming in 1980.
22. He spent most of time do his work.
23. He was arrested for driving without a degree.

24. He was disappointed when he lost the record in swimming.
25. He was rewarded a degree in literature.
26. He works as a researcher assistant at Cairo University.
27. Her father discouraged her to go to school.
28. Her work had taken in much of her personal life.
29. His behaviour towards us was impression. We all admired it.
30. I broke the vase during an armament with my wife.
31. I tried taking tablets for the headache but they didn't have any affection.
32. I'd prefer not to talk about that. It's something very personally.
33. Many people have trouble sleeping after a long bright.
34. My older brother has a grade in maths from Cairo University.
35. My parents have always discouraged me to work hard at school.
36. Noha was applied as a nurse in a hospital.
37. Nursery is a job of looking after people who are ill.
38. Nurses have an important rule in looking after patients in a hospital.
39. Optimistic people always think positive.
40. Parents play an important reel in their child's learning.
41. She became interested at flying.
42. She did sure there was wrong in the sewing machine.
43. She spent holidays visit European museums and universities.
44. She spent most of her personality life in the countryside,
45. She took full arsenal responsibility for all the arrangements.
46. She was bearing in 1990.
47. She was called in a plane crash in 1941.
48. She was in recharge of the nursing of wounded soldiers.
49. She was popular for the British people.
50. She was rewarded the Nobel Prize in 1908 in physics.
51. Some films are not suit for young children.
52. The abductor reported that 20% of school children were unable to read or write.
53. The first solar flight across the Atlantic took place many years ago.
54. The fly from London to Cairo takes a long time.
55. The house is not really syllable for a large family.
56. The pianist played a piece of music soul.
57. The minister's speech was impressed.
58. The rural environment was having a possessive effect on the children's health.
59. Who will be in change of the department when Sophie retires?
60. You need a permit to drive a car.

Translate into Arabic:

No one can deny that nursing is one of the most important professions as people working in it help the ill, injured or wounded. So, a nurse should have some good qualities as being kind, patient and helpful.

.....

.....

The government is trying to solve traffic problems by constructing new roads and flyovers. The number of vehicles is increasing every day. Roads are becoming too crowded for drivers to use.

.....

.....

Dr Aisha was successful at school and went to Cairo University, where she studied Arabic language and literature. She was awarded her degree in 1939 and then joined the university staff as a research assistant.

.....

.....

The human brain is a bit like a computer. Scientists say people who use the right hand side of their brain most are usually artists and musicians and those who use the left-hand side of their brain most are usually scientists and politicians.

.....

.....

Amy Johnson was from the north of England and first became interested in flying while she was working as a secretary in London. In 1929, she was awarded her pilot's licence and a year later tried to break the record for a solo flight from Britain to Australia.

Translate into English:

- الأمية مشكلة اجتماعية خطيرة ولا بد أن نبذل المزيد من الجهود لحلها.

- كتبت الدكتورة عائشة عبد الرحمن تحت اسم مستعار " بنت الشاطيء " كدليل احترام لابيها .

عملت الدكتورة عائشة عبد الرحمن كاستاذ زائر في كثير من الجامعات العربية.

تلعب المرأة دورا هاما في بناء المجتمع.

تتعرض كثير من الحيوانات والطيور النادرة للانقراض بسبب سوء استغلال الانسان للبيئة .

يجب ان نقف جميعا صفا واحدا ضد الارهاب الذي يستهدف الوحدة الوطنية.

تفخر مصر دائما بالنساء العظيمات امثال بنت الشاطيء عائشة عبد الرحمن.

Grammar

Relative Clauses عبارات الوصل

1 -who

- ضمير وصل بمعنى الذي / التي / الذين / اللاني و تحل محل الفاعل العاقل (أي يأتي بعدها فعل):

-The man who has been working all day looks very tired. - I met the man who bought your old car.

- ضمير وصل بمعنى الذي / التي / الذين / اللاني و تحل محل المفعول العاقل (أي يأتي بعدها فاعل و يمكن حذفها):

- The man who you saw in the party with me is my uncle.

= - The man you saw in the party with me is my uncle.

- ا تستخدم (who) فقط محل الفاعل و المفعول العاقل في الجمل الاعتراضية بعد (,) ولا تحل محلها (that):

- Messi, that is a famous footballer, plays for Barcelona. (X)

- Messi, who is a famous footballer, plays for Barcelona. (✓)

- لا تستخدم حروف الجر قبل (who) يل تأتي في المكان المناسب في الجملة:

- The man for who you work is very kind. (X) - The man who you work for is very kind. (✓)

2- Whom

- ضمير وصل بمعنى الذي / التي / الذين / اللاني تحل محل المفعول العاقل و لا بد أن يأتي بعدها فعل:

- The man whom you saw in the party with me is my uncle.

= - The man you saw in the party with me is my uncle.

- لا تستخدم حروف الجر قبل (who) يل تأتي في المكان المناسب في الجملة:

- The man for who you work is very kind. (X)

- The man who you work for is very kind. (✓)

- The man for whom you work is very kind. (✓)

3- Which

- ضمير وصل بمعنى الذي / التي / الذين / اللاتي و تحل محل فاعل غير عاقل (أي يأتي بعدها فعل):

- Reham bought a mobile which was expensive.

- ضمير وصل بمعنى الذي / التي / الذين / اللاتي و تحل محل مفعول غير عاقل (أي يأتي بعدها فاعل و يمكن حذفها):

-The food which you cook tastes delicious. = -The food you cook tastes delicious.

- ا تستخدم (which) فقط محل الفاعل و المفعول العاقل في الجمل الاعتراضية بعد (,) ولا تحل محلها (that):

- The cheetah, that belongs to the cat family, is very fast. (X)

- The cheetah, which belongs to the cat family, is very fast. (✓)

- يمكن أن تستخدم (which) لتشير الي الفكرة العامة في الجملة التي تسبقها و ليس اسما محددًا وفي هذه الحالة لا تحل محلها (that):

- He came first, that made his parents very happy. (X)

- He came first, which made his parents very happy. (✓)

- يمكن أن تستخدم حروف الجر قبل (which) أو تأتي في أي مكان المناسب في الجملة:

- The bus by which we go to school is very old. (✓)

- The bus which we go to school by is very old. (✓)

4- That

- يمكن استخدام (that) بدلا من (who/ which / whom):

-The man that has been working all day looks very tired.

- Omer that you met yesterday is my brother.

-The food that you make tastes delicious. - Reham bought a mobile that was expensive.

- لا تستخدم حروف الجر قبل (that) يل تأتي في المكان المناسب في الجملة:

- The man for that you work is very kind. (X)

- The man that you work for is very kind. (✓)

- The bus by that we go to school is very old. (X)

- The bus that we go to school by is very old. (✓)

- هناك حالات لا بد ان نستخدم فيها (that) :

أ. اذا جاء في الجملة اي من

All - any - one - some - every - only - many - much - few - no

- I lent her all the money that she needed. -Waheed was the only friend that helped me.

ب. مع صفات التفضيل بدلا من (which) .

- The fox is the cleverest animal that I have ever seen.

ج. اذا كانت تعود علي عاقل وغير عاقل في نفس الوقت.....

- I told my classmates about the leaders and the places that I admired.

5 - Where

- و تستخدم بمعنى " حيث" و تعود علي المكان و لا بد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل أو مفعول:

- This is the room where I sleep. -A school is the place where we learn.

where = in which / at which / to which / from which / about which.....

- This is the room in which I sleep. -A school is a place at which we learn.

- يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع المكان في حالات معينة:

- This is the house where we built. (X)

- This is the house which we built. (✓)

- لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود علي المكان قبل أو بعد (where):

- I went to the room in where I sleep. (X)

- I went to the room where I sleep in. (X)

- I went to the room in which I sleep. (✓)

- I went to the room which I sleep in. (✓)

6 - When

- تحل محل الوقت أو الزمن بمعنى " الوقت الذي / حين / حينما " و لا بد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل أو مفعول:

-1980 is the year when I was born. - Friday is the day when we get up late.

- Six o'clock is the time when I get up.

when = in / on / at / from which

- 1980 is the year in which I was born. - Friday is the day on which we get up late.
 - Six o'clock is the time at which I get up.

- يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع التعبيرات الزمنية في حالات معينة:

- I don't like August when is very hot. (X)
 - I don't like August which is very hot. (✓)

- لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود علي التعبير الزمني قبل أو بعد (when):

- Friday is the day on when my son was born. (X)
 - Friday is the day when my son was born on. (X)
 - Friday is the day on which my son was born. (✓)
 - Friday is the day which my son was born on. (✓)

7- Whose

- تحل محل الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم و تحل محل :

(Noun + 's / my - his - her - its - our - your - their...)

- I saw the man whose son was kidnapped. - He refused to marry a girl whose nose was big.

حذف ضمائر الوصل Omission of relative pronouns

1 - يتم حذف كل من (who - which - whom) عندما يحلوا محل مفعول (اي اذا جاء بعدهم فاعل):

- This is the woman who I helped. = This is the woman I helped.

2 - يمكن حذف كل من (who - which) في الحالات التالية:

- أ. اذا جاء بعدهم زمن مستمر وفي هذه الحالة يتم حذف الضمير و (be) ويتبقى (v.ing) :
 - The boy who is wearing a red shirt is my son. = The boy wearing a red shirt is my son.
 ب. اذا جاء بعدهم صيغة مبنى للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا الضمير و (verb to be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للفعل .
 - The girl who was arrested yesterday stole clothes from shops.
 - The girl arrested yesterday stole clothes from shops.
 ج. اذا جاء بعدهم (verb to be) كفعل أساسي وهنا يتم حذف الضمير و (verb to be) :
 - The woman who is in this shop, lent me this pen. - The woman in this shop lent me this pen.

3 - يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل اذا كان بعده جار و مجرور (حرف جر واسم):

- The girl who is at the supermarket wants to buy some sweets.
 - The girl at the supermarket wants to buy some sweets.

4 - يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل اذا كان بعده اسم أو صفة بعدها اسم:

- Abu Terika, who is a famous footballer, was interviewed on TV yesterday.
 - Abu Terika, a famous footballer, was interviewed on TV yesterday.

ملاحظات علي ضمائر الوصل

1- يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلا من عبارة الوصل اذا كان ضمير الوصل في الجملة يحل محل الفاعل مع كلمات مثل:

The first / second/last/only.....

- I was the first person who left the ship. = I was the first person to leave the ship.

2- لاحظ تركيب الجمل التالية:

- It + is / was + اسم عاقل + who / that ... - It is Mariam who(that) left the door open.
 - It + is / was + اسم غير عاقل + which / that ... - It was the dog which (that) scared the baby.

3- لاحظ:

all of, most of, none of, both of, neither of, either of, any of, one of, some of, many of, much of,

+

whom (people)

which (things)

- He tried three jackets, none of which fitted him.
 - Ten people applied for the job, none of whom were suitable.
 - He invited a lot of people. All of them were his friends.
 = - He invited a lot of people, all of whom were his friends.
 - He has a number of watches. Three of them are solid gold.
 = - He has a number of watches, three of which are solid gold.

4- لاحظ مكان حرف الجر في هذه الجمل التي تستخدم فيها (where – that – which)

- Cairo is the town in which I was born. - Cairo is the town which I was born in.
- Cairo is the town that I was born in. - Cairo is the town where I was born.

5- لاحظ الشكل الاتي

It + be + a relative clause

- Ahmed had an accident. (It was) - It was Ahmed who had an accident (not Ali).

5- و لاحظ الشكل الاتي

What really + be + that..... =

.The thing that.....+ be + that.....

- What really makes me admire her is that she is very polite.
-The thing that makes me admire her is that she is very polite.

لاحظ ان: - هناك نوعان من جمل الوصل:

1- تعطي جملة الوصل معلومة هامة او ضرورية عن الاسم الذي تعود عليه وفي هذا النوع لا نستخدم (,) :

- The man who helped the boy is kind.
- The company where my mother works is multi-national.

2 - لا تعطي جملة الوصل معلومة هامة او ضرورية عن الاسم الذي تعود عليه بل معلومة شائعة وفي هذا النوع نستخدم (,) :

- Cairo, which is extremely big, is the capital of Egypt.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- Dr Aisha Abd El-Rahman, is better known to some people as Bint El-Shatei, is one of the most famous people in Egyptian and Arab culture.
a- who b- that c- which d- when
- 2- Dr Aisha used to go with him to meetings she learned to read and write .
a- which b- at where c- at which d- at that
- 3- She went to Cairo University, she studied Arabic language and literature .
a- which b- where c- that d- in where
- 4- Dr Aisha wrote many books and articlesshe argued for a more positive role for women in the modern world.
a- in which b- which c- when d- who
- 5- Her work,had taken up much of her personal-life, is still appreciated today.
a- what b- where c- which d- who
- 6- Dr Aisha,father was an important man, was born in Damietta in 1913.
a- who b- which c- what d- whose
- 7- Dr Aisha wrote many articles She discussed women and society in these articles.
a- in which b- which c- when d- who
- 8- Queen Victoria,was born in London in 1819, was educated in London alone, without meeting other children.
a- where b- that c- who d- which
- 9- Queen Victoria, died in January 1901, was queen of Britain for most of the nineteenth century.
a- in which b- which c- when d- who
- 10- Queen Victoria ,..... ruled for more than 63 years, was queen for longer than any other British ruler.
a- who b- which c- what d- whose
- 11- Queen Victoria's husband, Prince Albert, died in 1861, after, Victoria always wore black clothes.
a- where b- when c- who d- which
- 12- I'm hoping to study science at university, after I'd like to work as a research scientist.
a- where b- when c- who d- which

- 13- The town I was born is in the north of Egypt.
a- which b- by which c- in which d- after which
- 14- These days, women have as good an education as men, I think is a good thing.
a- where b- when c- who d- which
- 15- Yesterday, I played a long game of tennis with my brother, made me very tired.
a- where b- when c- who d- which
- 16- The nurse, responsibility is to look after young children, has worked at the hospital for ten years.
a- who b- which c- what d- whose
- 17- The person does most of the cooking in our family is my mother.
a- where b- when c- who d- which
- 18- 1837 was the year Victoria became queen of Britain.
a- where b- when c- who d- which
- 19- I've just read a newspaper article the life of a famous woman is described in detail.
a- which b- by which c- in which d- after which
- 20- My sister went to London University, she studied history.
a- when b- by which c- where d- that
- 21- Lord of the Flies is a story a group of school boys are shipwrecked on an island.
a- in which b- to which c- at which d- by which
- 22- She asked me 'where I had been, I replied, "It's a secret".
a- in which b- to which c- at which d- by which
- 23- Tomorrow, I'm going to a meeting we're going to discuss women's role in society.
a- in which b- to which c- at which d- by which
- 24- He says he's busy, he really means he doesn't want to go out this evening.
a- in which b- to which c- at which d- by which
- 25- They said something very cruel,I think they should apologise.
a- in which b- to which c- for which d- by which
- 26- Cleopatra, was very beautiful, was the last pharaoh of Egypt.
a- where b- when c- who d- which
- 27- Woman's Day, ... marks an important event in 1919, is on March 16.
a- where b- when c- who d- which
- 28- Alexandria, my mother was born, is in northern Egypt.
a- where b- when c- who d- which
- 29- I have been reading about famous women, I have found very interesting.
a- where b- when c- who d- which
- 30- Agatha Christie was a famous crime writer books were translated into many languages.
a- where b- when c- whose d- which
- 31- Agatha Christie, books were translated into many languages, was a famous crime writer.
a- where b- when c- who d- whose
- 32- The house inmy father lived for thirty years is still in good condition.
a- that b- which c- where d- when
- 33- He is the most intelligent manI have ever met.
a- who b- whom c- whose d- that
- 34- This is the football teammembers have won gold medals.
a- who b- whose c- that s- whom
- 35- The Red Sea coast is one of the placesone can spend a very good time.
a-that b- when c- where d- why
- 36- I told him allI know about the solar system.
a-that b- which c- this d- whom
- 37- The bookwas found in the playground has been returned to Adel.
a-where b- it c- that d- whose
- 38- Nermeenfather is a doctor is doing her post graduate studies.
a-who b- that c- whom d- whose
- 39- This is the stationeryI have just bought some pens.
a- where b- which c- that d- when
- 40- This is the best bookon Egyptology.
a- that you can find b- you are finding c- where you can find d- to be finding

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. A kitchen is a room in where we cook our food.
2. Agatha Christie was a famous crime writer where books were translated into many languages.
3. Alexandria, when my mother was born, is in northern Egypt.
4. Cleopatra, whom was very beautiful, was the last pharaoh of Egypt.
5. Dr Aisha, who father was an important man, was born in Damietta in 1913.
6. Egypt, where is in Africa, is very rich.
7. He didn't want to lend me the money that made me very angry.
8. He said something very cruel, for that I think he should apologize.
9. He says he's busy, by where he really means he doesn't want to go out this evening.
10. He showed me round the town, who was very kind of him.
11. I have been reading about famous women, that I have found very interesting.
12. I love the girl who eyes are green.
13. I told him all what I know about the solar system.
14. I visited Ahmad which is my friend.
15. I've just read a newspaper article in that the life of a famous woman is described in detail.
16. Lord of the Flies is a story in whom a group of school boys are shipwrecked on an island.
17. March is the third month of the year which spring begins.
18. My brother went to Alexandria University, which he studied architecture.
19. My sister went to London University, what she studied history.
20. 1837 was the year where Victoria became queen of Britain.
21. She asked me where I had been, to that I replied, "It's a secret".
22. The flat, that my father bought , over looks the tower.
23. The man which car was stolen asked me for help.
24. This is the best student who I have ever seen.
25. This is the football team that members have won gold medals.
26. This is the school which I work.
27. Tomorrow, I'm going to a meeting at when we are going to discuss women's role in society.
28. We have a garden where we plant some flowers in.
29. Where are the new CDs you bought them yesterday.
30. Woman's Day, that marks an important event in 1919, is on March 16.

Test 13

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

1. Your friend would like to know why you have decided to study engineering.
2. You want to ask your friend about the reason why he came to school late.
3. Your mother asks you why you didn't tidy up your room.
4. You ask your father the reason why he has decided to move house.

2- Mention the place , the speakers and the language function each of the following min-dialogues

1- A: Today we are going to play "The Mask of Gold". If you have any questions, keep them till the end.

B: Are we going to discuss our questions later?

A: Yes, but you have to follow up the incidents carefully.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

2- A: The train which goes to Aswan will leave from platform 7 in about 5 minutes.

B: Thank you. I'll have to hurry to catch it.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some students need more than others at school.
a- disturbance b- discouragement c- encouragement d- disagreement
2., I believe that everyone should study science at school.
a- Artificially b- Abnormally c- Personally d- Cheerfully

3. A 14-year old Japanese boy has become the youngest person to complete a voyage across the Pacific Ocean.
a- lonely b- solo c- stereo d- studio
4. Before you can fly alone, you need to have a pilot's
a- qualification b- permission c- agreement d- licence
5. The from London to Cairo takes about 4 hours.
a- flying b- flight c- aviation d- destination
6. Some films are not for young children.
a- right b- kind c- cruel d- suitable
7. Doctors are always trying to find new treatments for diseases.
a- effective b- helpful c- defective d- infectious
8. My uncle is of the Science Department in a secondary school.
a- of charge b- in charge c- with control d- by charge
9. Alison Jones and her husband David, live in London, are celebrating their golden wedding anniversary.
a- when b- where c- who d- whose
10. The people live next door are very nice.
a- which b- that c- where d- whom
11. Solar energy is an idea time has come.
a- which b- whose c- that d- where
12. One of my neighbours throws rubbish in the street,annoys me intensely.
a- that b- which c- where d- when
13. He was educated at the local school,he went on to Cambridge.
a- after which b- in which c- with which d- with where)
14. In 1963 we moved to Boston, my grandparents lived.
a- when b- which c- where d- whom
15. Bradford, is my hometown, has a lot of splendid restaurants.
a- where b- when c- that d- which
16. The woman murdered her husband was sentenced to death.
a- when b- who c- where d- which

4. Correct the underlined mistakes in the following sentences

- 1- Diet has a very important pole in the prevention of disease.
- 2- I discussed it with my brother, that is a lawyer.
- 3- The house, where was completed in 1856, was famous for its huge marble staircase.
- 4- The treatment will continue until the patient reaches the point what he can walk safely.
- 5- The view from the window is very depressive. I like it so much.
- 6- You need a university debris for most of these jobs.

(C) Reading

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions

Walking along the colourful street market, I realized it would be impossible to leave this place empty-handed. Dozens of brightly-dressed traders were selling various goods. There were imported fruits and vegetables, handmade clothes, beautifully crafted jewellery and much more. Cafés offered freshly ground coffee and were playing loud music. After I had finished my shopping for the day, I had to drag myself away carrying lots of heavy bags but feeling quite pleased with myself. Should you ever find yourself in Amsterdam, make sure you visit this fantastic European market. The combination of a lively atmosphere, delicious food and traditional goods makes this an experience not to be missed.

When I arrived in the early morning, the market had just opened, but the hustle and bustle of shoppers, tourists and street musicians had already started. The place was jumping with life. The fragrance of freshly cut flowers made the place look bright and festive. As I wandered along, looking at the freshly baked cakes and smelling the mouth-watering aromas of the different pies, I suddenly realized how hungry I was. When I tried one, it tasted delicious. One hour later, I discovered an amazing traditional market, the Albert Cuyp market. With its huge variety of goods and its lively atmosphere, it stands out from the other entire street markets.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why is shopping in the street market a unique experience, according to the writer?
- 2- How many days did the writer spend in the street market?
- 3- What advice did the writer give his readers?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

4- The writer of the passage was in -----.

- a) Canada b) Holland c) Somalia d) Syria

5- The market looked very bright because of -----.

- a) freshly baked cakes b) fresh food c) freshly cut flowers d) freshly ground coffee

6. Read the following passage then answer the questions

A few months ago, the pilot of a small plane had an unusual flight. A strong wind blew the plane sideways, and it touched the top of a tree. Both wheels of the plane were knocked off but the plane did not crash. The pilot sent a radio message to the airport. He did not know how to land without wheels. The airport controller promised to help the pilot. He telephoned the airport firemen and told them what to do.

The firemen brought a long open lorry and drove to one end of the airport runway. The airport controller sent a radio message to the pilot. He told the pilot to land on top of the lorry. One of the fireman drove quickly along the runway and the pilot managed to land on the lorry. Part of the lorry was damaged and the tail of the plane was broken but nobody was injured. The fireman slowed the lorry down and then stopped. The pilot was very grateful. He gladly agreed to pay for the damage of the lorry.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why did the pilot send a radio message to the airport?
- 2- How was the fireman able to save the pilot?
- 3- What did the airport controller do to help the pilot?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

4- The underlined word "He" in the last paragraph refers to

- a) the pilot b) the fireman c) the airport controller d) the lorry driver

5- After the adventure, the plane was in need of -----

- a) a new tail only b) two wheels only c) a tail and two wheels d) a tail and four wheels

D- The Prisoner of Zenda

7- Answer the following questions :

1. Why do Rassendyll and Fritz go to the inn at Zenda? Who do they talk to there and what do they say?
2. What happens to Bernenstein while Fritz and Rassendyll are out?
3. What message does Rupert Hentzau bring the next day? How does Rassendyll reply? What happens when Rupert is leaving?
4. What do they learn from Johann?

B) Read following quotation and answer the questions:

"So you'd prefer to hunt animals than do your duties in the capital?"

1. Who says this to Rassendyll?
2. When does the person say this?
3. What "animal" is Rassendyll going to hunt?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. Johann works for the Duke because he loves him.
2. The Castle of Zenda is a happy place.

E- Writing

8) Write a paragraph about 100 words about

"Examples of Famous women in history"

F- Translation

a) Translate into Arabic :

A lot of Egyptian writers have written books and articles advocating the rights of women. They have called for woman's equality with man. Now women have the same rights as men and they have even held important positions in the society.

b) Translate into English:

- كانت " آمي جونسون " من رواد الطيران المنفرد

- الأمية مشكلة اجتماعية خطيرة ولا بد أن نبذل المزيد من الجهود لحلها.

Unit 14 - Green : Travels with My Aunt

adventurous	مغامر	foreign travel	السفر للخارج	optimistic	متفائل
announcement	إعلان	frighten	يُخيف	pessimistic	متشائم
bank customer	عميل البنك	funeral	جنازة	postcard	بطاقة بريدية
banker	من كبار موظفي البنك	global society	مجتمع عالمي	private sector	القطاع الخاص
banking	الصرافة / أعمال البنوك	graduate	يتخرج / خريج	public sector	القطاع العام
book = reserve	يحجز	graduation	التخرج	randomly	بشكل عشوائي
broke	مفلس	hobby	هواية	regard ... as	يعتبر
Bully	بلطجي / يمارس البلطجة	influence	تأثير	remote places	الاماكن النائية
children's charity	مؤسسة خيرية للأطفال	influential	مؤثر / ذو نفوذ	return ticket	تذكرة ذهاب وعودة
coffin	كفن	itinerary	جدول مواعيد الرحلة	single ticket	تذكرة ذهاب فقط
compass	بوصلة	journalist	صحفي	specific situation	موقف محدد
condemn	يدين	lead to	يؤدي إلى	spontaneity	تلقائية
convention	تقليد / اتفاقية	lifeblood	شريان الحياة	spontaneous	عفوي / تلقائي
conventional	متمسك بالأعراف	lifestyle	أسلوب حياة	spontaneously	بشكل تلقائي
critical thinking	التفكير النقدي	location	موقع / مكان	storyteller	راوي القصة
customs	الجمارك	maintain	يحافظ على	the Nile basin	حوض النيل
daily routines	الأعمال الروتينية	miss	يفتقد	the press	الصحافة
disputes	نزاعات	modern life	الحياة الحديثة	travel agency	وكالة سفریات
downstream	المصب	motive	دافع	travel company	شركة سياحية
excitement	إثارة	mourners	المشيوعون	travel destination	جهة السفر
expedition	رحلة استكشافية	mysterious	غامض	travels	رحلات
fantastic	رائع	negligence	إهمال	unusual lifestyle	أسلوب حياة غير معتاد
film review	عرض نقدي لفيلم	negotiations	مفاوضات	upstream	المنبع
find out	يكشف / يتوصل	objectives	أهداف	waste of time	مضيعة للوقت
flourish	يزدهر	obvious	واضح	world of banking	عالم البنوك

Definitions

banking	the business of a bank	الصرافة
bully	to frighten someone or threaten to hurt them, especially if they are weaker or smaller than you	بلطجي / يمارس البلطجة
excited	happy, interested or hopeful because something good has happened or is expected	منفعل
excitement	the feeling of being excited	اثارة / انفعال
influential	having a lot of influence	مؤثر / فعال
influence	to have an effect on the way someone or something develops, behaves or thinks	يؤثر
regard	to think about someone or something in a particular way	يعتبر / يضع في الاعتبار
storyteller	someone who tells stories	راوي / حاكمي
adventurous	exciting and involving danger	مغامر
conventional	thinking and behaving in the normal and traditional way	تقليدي
find out	to get information about something or someone	يعرف / يكتشف
funeral	a ceremony for someone who has just died	جنازة
lead to	to cause something to happen	يؤدي إلى
lifestyle	the way that someone lives, including their work and activities, and what things they own	نمط حياة
spontaneous	something that is done because you want to do it, not because you planned to do it	تلقائي

Expressions

appeal to	يروق لـ / يُعجب	look at life in a different way	ينظر إلى الحياة بطريقة مختلفة
apply for a visa	يقدّم علي تأشيرة	make a story into a film	يحول قصة لفيلم
be of the opinion that	ينفق مع الرأي القائل بأن	make decisions	يتخذ قرارات
be wary of	يكون حذراً من	make them more tolerant of	يجعلهم أكثر تسامحاً مع
behave the same way as	يتصرف بنفس الطريقة مثل	new way of looking at	طريقة جديدة للنظر إلى
by convention	حسب العرف	on the journey to	أثناء الرحلة إلى
cruel to	قاس علي	open people's eyes to	يفتح عيون الناس علي
earn money from	يكسب مالا من	regardless of	بغض النظر عن
enjoy the company of	يستمتع بصحبة ..	think the same way as	يفكر بنفس الطريقة مثل
extend (his) stay	يُمد الإقامة	travel all over the world	يسافر في أنحاء العالم
get on well with	يكون علي علاقة طيبة مع	with regard to	فيما يتعلق بـ
go through customs	ينهي الإجراءات الجمركية	without regard to	دون مراعاة لـ
go travelling with	يسافر مع	work for a national paper	يعمل لدي صحيفة قومية
live on	يعيش علي (دخل / طعام)	work on a local newspaper	يعمل في صحيفة محلية

Derivatives

verb	Noun	adjective
choose يختار	choice اختيار	chosen مختار
bully يمارس البلطجة	bullying البلطجة	
travel يسافر	travel السفر	travelling متعلق بالسفر
excite يثير	excitement إثارة	exciting مثير
influence يؤثر علي	influence تأثير	influential مؤثر / ذو نفوذ
lead to يقود إلي / يؤدي إلي	leader / leadership القيادة / قائد / زعيم	leading هام / رئيسي
frighten يخيف	fright خوف / فزع	frightening مخيف

Language Notes

- hike رحلة طويلة سيراً على الأقدام
- picnic نزهة خلوية في الهواء الطلق
- flight رحلة جوية
- Travel السفر عموماً (لا تجمع)
- Travels رحلات
- journey رحلة (عادة طويلة)
- trip رحلة (عادة قصيرة)
- tour جولة
- voyage رحلة بحرية
- cruise رحلة بحرية من أجل المتعة
- expedition رحلة استكشافية (رحلة منظمة لأماكن غير مألوقة) / رحلة قصيرة لغرض معين
- We'll go on an expedition to the Western Desert. - She is going on a shopping expedition on Friday.

- frighten = scare يخيف
- fear يخاف
- Black cats used to frighten me.
- Police fear that there may be further terrorist attacks.

- recipe وصفة (طريقة عمل وجبة معينة)
- prescription وصفة طبية (روشتة)
- Could you give me the recipe for that chocolate cake?
- I got the prescription filled on the way home.

- spontaneous عفوي / تلقائي / بدون تخطيط
- simultaneous شيء يحدث في نفس الوقت
- Her offer of help was spontaneous.
- The speeches will be broadcast with simultaneous translation.

- bully (v) يمارس البلطجة / يستقوي علي من هم أضعف منه
- Ahmed used to bully the younger kids in the neighborhood.
- bully someone into doing something يرغم شخص أضعف علي القيام بعمل معين
- Don't let anyone bully you into doing something you don't want to do.
- bullying (n) البلطجة
- Bullying is a problem in many schools.

- Whatever you do: (إياك ان ..) تعبير يستخدم في الحديث لتحذير شخص من شيء ما
-Don't tell Paul, whatever you do! - Whatever you do, don't move.
- persuade (يقنع (شخصاً ليقوم بعمل شيء بإعطائه أسباب مقنعة) - I have tried to persuade her to see an oculist.
 - convince (يقنع (شخصاً بأن شيئاً ما صحيح) - I'm convinced (that) I was right.
- Retire (يتقاعد) - When the employee is 60, he retires and can live on his pension.
 - Resign (يستقيل من العمل) - Mr Ahmed resigned his position last week.
- Quite (إلى حد ما / تماماً) - I'm quite tired, but I'm happy to walk a little further.
 - Quiet (هادئ) - They found a table in a quiet corner of the restaurant.
 - Quit (يترك / يقطع عن) - She quit her job to spend more time with her family.

language functions Giving Warning & Replies

Giving warning	Replies
Be careful!	It's OK.
If you don't, you will	Don't worry. I'll be careful.
Watch out!	Thank you for your warning.

Exercises

Respond the following situations :

- 1- Your brother is using a ladder to get something from the top shelf. You warn him.
- 2- Your little brother wants to go out alone at night. What do you say?
- 3- Your mother tells you to work a bit harder or you'll fail the test. What do you say to assure her?
- 4- You are warning your friend who is going to cross a busy road. What do you say?

- Mention the place , the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1- A: What do you think of university life, so far?
 B: To tell you the truth, everything here is so big in comparison with school.
 A: You are good at rowing. Why don't you join our rowing team?

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

- 2- A: Many of the robot toys we have can respond to your voice. B: What age area are they?
 A: From 5 to 14 years.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When little children get too much.....I they can't sleep or even sit quietly.
 a) excitement b) influence c) lifestyle d) regard
2. That writer's books' were regardedgreat literature.
 a) like b) such as c) such d) as
3. The wedding was veryThe bride wore a long white dress f and the groom wore a suit.
 a) spontaneous b) influential c) adventurous d) conventional
4. Some peopleplaying computer games as a waste of time.
 a. regret b. regard c. resent d. repent
5. Charles Dickens was one of the 19th century's most famous.....
 a. lawyers b. explorers c. storytellers d. editors
6. Children who.....other children at school should be sent home as a sort of punishment.
 a. bully b. accompany c. feed d. reward
7. Many people agree that Shakespeare is the most.....writer in the English language.
 a. influence b. effect c. influential d. sociable

8. The politician died last week. Thousands of people attended the.....
a. conference b. celebration c. festival d. funeral
9. My brother is very..... he went on an expedition to the mountains last year.
a. clever b. cowardly c. slow d. adventurous
10. I've long been interested.....Graham's life.
a. on b. at c. in d. of
11. My cousin believes in....., he never plans what he's going to do
a. spontaneity b. eternity c. fertility d. mortality
12. I want to findsome information, I'll look on the internet.
a. on b. at c. out d. about
13. I'm not as.....as my friend, she does things as soon as she thinks of them.
a. brave b. spontaneous c. cowardly d. courageous
14. They live in the country. They have a different.....from people in cities.
a. lifelong b. lifestyle c. lifespan d. lifeless
15. We must.....our life to the full.
a. leave b. bore c. enjoy d. hate
16. He gave his job as a journalist. Now, he is a novelist.
a. up b. up to c. in d. out
17. In some countries, it is the.....to shake hands whenever you meet someone.
a. convent b. convention c. conviction d. conversion
18. Government employeesat the age of sixty.
a. regret b. resign c. recycle d. retire
19. It was an.....lie. It's easily understood by everyone.
a. ambiguous b. obviously c. obvious d. unclear
20. The baby won't sleep unless you.....him a story.
a. tell b. ask c. say d. tells
21. Can you lookmy kids while I'm away?
a. at b. on c. up d. after
22. Many of Graham's books were basedhis travels.
a. in b. on c. of d. from
23. My brother has two children. He is.....
a. married b. unmarried c. single d. a spinster
24. Let's give a warm welcome.....our next guest.
a. on b. of c. to d. at
25. Young people who are bored with living here tend to travel
a. indoor b. indoors c. aboard d. abroad
26. Some writers, especially the beginners I don'tenough money from their novels.
a. earn b. gain c. do d. borrow
27. As a matter of, I'd like to have a regular check-up every year.
a. reality b. time c. red tape d. routine
28. Our holiday to Australia was a great.....We spent two months exploring the country.
a. adventurous b. adventure c. vision d. illustration
29. Despite being twins, they have: different
a. personal b. personalities c. personnel d. persons
30. What effect did meeting Augusta haveHenry's life and personality?
a. at b. in c. on d. of
31. I finally reached my.....two hours late.
a. delegation b. deputation c. integration d. destination
32. The maths teacher's always been very popular his students.
a. with b. on c. at d. from
33. That man is not doing enough exercise. This can sometimes.....to health problems.
a. result b. contribute c. prefer d. lead
34. Al-Ahram is a / anpaper. It's published inside Egypt.
a. nation b. national c. global d. international
35. When will our books be.....? - Within a few weeks.
a. published b. addressed c. registered d. posted
36. Graham workedthe British government in Africa during the Second World War.
a. up b. on c. up to d. for
37. We won't stop learning even after.....
a. graduate b. graduated c. graduating d. graduates

38. You must be on good-terms with yourat school.
a. colleagues b. college c. collectors d. conductors
39.out! There's a snake in front of you.
a. Put b. Bring c. Set d. Watch
40. I getI have nothing to do.
a. bore b. bored c. boring d. boredom
41. Augusta has shown Henry a new way of looking the world.
a. for b. up c. to d. at
42. Before his retirement, Hany'swas a bank manager.
a. occupation b. address c. nationality d. qualification
43. Some trees have beautiful pinkin the spring.
a. roots b. branches c. flowers d. plants
44. We don't get many in the mall in the evening.
a. patients b. customers c. guests d. clients
45. I was not used to....., so I did not want to go anywhere.
a. eating b. steeping c. travelling d. studying
46. When Henry travelled abroad, hehaving good friends,
a. lost b. earned c. wasted d. missed
47. After the storm, things.....got back to normal.
a. gradual b. gradually c. surely d. definitely
48. My mother is old. She is now in her.....
a. seven b. seventeen c. seventy d. seventies
49. People in the country lead alife.
a. quiet b. quite c. quit d. quietly
50. I'm not brave enough to.....decisions quickly;
a. do b. play c. make d. cook
51. How different is our lifeour ancestors?
a. from b. at c. on d. of
52. My uncle works as a bank.....
a. chef b. leader c. president d. manager
53. I'd like to be in yourfor a long time.
a. company b. companies c. companion d. companies
54. How can young people benefitadvice of older members of the family?
a. of b. at c. form d. with
55. Retired people enjoy looking after the flowers in their.....
a. dubs b. companies c. factories d. gardens
56. What sort of life do you.....?
a. lead b. leave c. leap d. leak
57. My parents were tolerantme when I was young.
a. at b. off c. of d. in
58.are wise and experienced enough to give the best piece of advice.
a. Grandchildren b. Grandparents c. Sisters d. Brothers
59. Which newspaper do you write.....
a. in b. at c. of d. for
60. Today's youth are very much interested in learning about American
a. habits. b. culture c. cultural d. cultured

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

- 1- A gardener looks for his garden.
- 2- After graduating, he became a journalism.
- 3- After years of disagreement, I got up very well with my wife.
- 4- Conventional thinking and behaving in a different way from other people
- 5- Don't do decisions without thinking.
- 6- Don't pull people who are weaker or smaller than you.
- 7- Egypt is regretted as the gift of the Nile.
- 8- Find out is to give information about something or someone
- 9- Funeral is a ceremony for someone who has just got married.
- 10- Graham's books were popular to ordinary people.
- 11- He has just died. The wedding will be held tomorrow.
- 12- He has very unusual stories to speak.
- 13- He is a retired bank manager and lives a confessional life.

- 14- He is famous. He is a TV personal.
- 15- He is not single. He is unmarried with two children.
- 16- He was surprised by her sudden advertisement that she was going to resign.
- 17- He was surprising by what he what he saw.
- 18- He wrote a travel book about his experiments.
- 19- Henry looks to life in a different way.
- 20- I can think of so many things I'll really mess when I leave.
- 21- I couldn't persist him to go travelling with me.
- 22- I don't know where you go to. Tell me about your destiny.
- 23- I finally managed to precede my parents to let me go out with my friends.
- 24- I get boring if I have nothing to do.
- 25- I love working abroad and meeting people from different culprits.
- 26- I sympathize with older people in their seventeen.
- 27- I was surprised by the sudden advertisement of his death.
- 28- I'd like to enjoy the excited of foreign travel.
- 29- It is the conventional to shake hands whenever you meet.
- 30- Lead to is to make something to happen
- 31- Lifestyle is the way that someone dresses
- 32- Meeting that famous man had a strong difference on her life and personality.
- 33- Most of his novels were done into films.
- 34- My cousin believes in spontaneous He never plans what to do.
- 35- My cousin works on the National Bank.
- 36- My daughter is interested on studying law.
- 37- My family is influence in the world of banking.
- 38- My uncle spent most of his life aboard.
- 39- Our holiday to Australia was a great adventures
- 40- She is always superstitious and seems to make decisions without thinking.
- 41- She prefers traditional convention architecture.
- 42- She reduced him to her old friends.
- 43- Some people have lived an adventure life.
- 44- Someone who tells stories is called a poet.
- 45- Something good has happened, so he's very exciting.
- 46- Spontaneous means that something is done because you planned to do it
- 47- The village people tried very hard to maintain their traditional lifespan.
- 48- There is no odious solution to the problem of environmental pollution.
- 49- There were a lot of interested people on the tour.
- 50- Though they have different personalities, they put on very well.
- 51- Travel and experiments of other cultures can change people.
- 52- Travel can close people's eyes to different ways of life.
- 53- What's the normal retired age of people in Egypt?
- 54- While you are away, I lose you very much.
- 55- Why are you so pessimistic? You should take at life in a different way.

Translate into Arabic:

Exercise is a good way to get rid of the stress and frustration of the workplace. Consequently, people who exercise regularly feel better and do not get sick so often. This would benefit the company as a whole.

.....

.....

A lot of people enjoy travelling abroad or inside their countries. Some people believe that travelling has many benefits. They say , we could learn patience and cooperation from it. So , its time to try it yourself.

.....

.....

When he returns to England, Henry enjoys his retirement looking after the flowers in his garden, but he is a changed man. He misses his aunt and her interesting friends, and Augusta has shown him a new way of looking at the world.

.....

.....

We can get a contagious disease from some one who has the disease. We may get a disease by touching something handled by a diseased person. So we must not eat or drink from the same container used by another person.

We should try to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide emitted into the atmosphere. This can be done by driving only if we have to. Probably the best way people can help is to use public transport.

Translate into English:

- أحب الذهاب إلى الأوبرا للاستمتاع بالموسيقى الراقية.

- لابد أن نساعد الحيوانات و النباتات علي التكيف مع التغير المناخي وإلا فإن الكثير من الأنواع سوف تنقرض.

- يجب أن تحتس عند وجودك في الغابة أو حديقة الحيوان .

- بعد تخرجه عمل كصحفي للصحف القومية و المحلية .

- يعتبر بعض الناس ان العاب الكمبيوتر مضيعة للوقت .

- ستعاني كثير من دول العالم من الجوع و المجاعة بسبب نقص انتاج القمح هذا العام.

- يجب علينا المحافظة علي مياه النيل حتي لا نتعرض للجفاف في يوما ما.

Grammar

روابط العطف 1- Linking Words Showing Addition

واو العطف and

- We went to the market and the zoo.
- Ahmed and Ali are friends.
- Our house is clean and tidy.
- She speaks quickly and clearly.
- They captured Gulliver and tied him to the ground.

بالإضافة إلى Besides + n. / v.ing

- Besides cooking for twenty people, she did the washing up.
- She did the washing up besides cooking for twenty people.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك Besides that + جملة

- She cooked for twenty people, besides that she did the washing up.

بالإضافة إلى In addition to + n. / v.ing

- In addition to going to the market, we went to the zoo.
- We went to the zoo in addition to going to the market.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك In addition + جملة

- يمكن استخدام In addition في بداية ووسط ونهاية الجملة:

- In addition we went to the market, we went to the zoo.
- We went to the market. In addition, we went to the zoo.
- We went to the market. We went to the zoo In addition.

→ In addition = additionally-moreover- furthermore- likewise + جملة....

- In addition he does homework, he listens to music.
- She is a secretary. Additionally, she has got a bookshop.
- He studies engineering. Moreover, he joined a music school.
- Messi is gifted; furthermore he cares for his fitness.
- The region is beautiful. Likewise, the climate is excellent.

- We went to the market. We went to the zoo. - As well as going to the market we went to the zoo.
- إذا استخدمت as well as في ربط جملتين يختلف فيهما الفاعل ، فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول يكون ترتيب الجملة كما يلي:
- باقي الجملة + فاعل ثاني + as well as + فاعل أول
- I as well as Ali have a car. - Eman as well as her brothers likes fish.
- تربط as well as مفعولين أو صفتين مختلفين و توضع بين المفعولين أو الصفتين مع حذف الكلمات المتشابهة من الجملة الثانية:
- Hala plays the guitar. She plays the piano. = - Hala plays the guitar as well as the piano.
- Rania is talented موهوبة. She is beautiful. = - Rania is talented as well as beautiful.

- لاحظ استخدام (too / also/ as well) بمعنى أيضا :

- I bought a camera. I bought a CD, too.
- = I bought a camera. I also bought a CD. = I bought a camera. I bought a CD as well.
- لاحظ استخدام (either) بمعنى أيضا في الجمل المنفية:
- I can't see Ali. I can't see his friends, either.

ليس فقط ولكن أيضا not only... but also

- تأتي not only قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد الفعل المساعد في الجملة الأولى.

→ (as well) (also) فعل مساعد / ناقص + الفاعل + but... .. فعل + not only + فاعل

- We went to the market. We went to the zoo.
- = We did not only go to the market but also we went to the zoo.
- = We not only went to the market but also we went to the zoo.
- = We not only went to the garden, but we went to the zoo as well.
- لا تستخدم (do- does- did) بعد الفاعل بين (but.... also) :
- She not only arrived late, but she also forgot her books.
- = She not only arrived late, but she forgot her books as well.
- = She did not only arrive late, but she also forgot her books.
- = She did not only arrive late, but also she forgot her books.
- لاحظ : عند استخدام (Not only) في بداية الجملة يستخدم فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل :

→ Not Only + فعل مساعد + فاعل + فعل , but..... .

- We not only went to the market but also we went to the zoo.
- Not only did we go to the market, but also we went to the zoo.
- إذا ربطت Not only.....but also فاعلين مختلفين فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني.
- Tom plays music. His brothers play music. = - Not only Tom but also his brothers play music.

كل من/ كلا / كلتا Both

- الفعل بعد (both) يكون جمعا:

- I want both books. -Both shirts are good.
- قبل صفات الإشارة (this – these – that – those) يمكن استخدام (both / both of) :
- I want both (of) these books.
- يأتي بعد (both of) ضمير مفعول جمع (you – us – them) ويمكن استخدامه كفاعل أو كمفعول للجملة:
- Both of them are good. - She has invited both of us.
- يمكن استخدام (both) بعد ضمائر المفعول الجمع (you – us – them) :
- She has sent them both her greeting. - She has invited us both.
- عندما تشير (both) إلى فاعل الجملة فهي تأتي قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد الفعل المساعد/الناقص. و في حالة وجود أكثر من فعل مساعد فهي تأتي بعد الأول :

- We both want to go. = Both of us want to go.
- They have both gone home. = Both of them have gone home.
- We have both been invited. = Both of us have been invited.
- يفضل حذف (the) أو صفات الملكية (my-his-her-its-your-our-their) بعد (both) :
- You can take both shirts. (NOT...both the shirts.)
- He lost both parents when he was a child. (NOT ... both his parents...)

Both ... and ...

- She is both beautiful and clever. (Adjectives)
- She both sings and dances. (Verbs)
- Both Mr Ahmed and his wife are doctors. (Subjects)
- I love both mum and dad. (Objects)

لا..... ولا Neither . . . nor

- تستخدم (neither... nor) للربط كما يلي :

- Neither the movie nor the play was good. (Singular مفرد + singular مفرد)
- Neither we nor our sons carry mobile phones. (Plural جمع + plural جمع)
- Neither smoking nor drinking is permitted in his house. (Gerund + gerund)
- The boys tried neither to clean nor to tidy their room. (Infinitive+ infinitive)

- إذا لم يكن هناك توافق بين الاسماء كما في الامثلة السابقة فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الاقرب له في الجملة:

- Neither the movie nor the plays were good. - Neither we nor our son carries a mobile phone.
- عند استخدام (Neither) في اول الجملة يتقدم الفعل المساعد/الناقص علي الفاعل :
- I neither watched nor tried to watch the film. = Neither did I watch nor tried to watch the film.
- لاحظ استخدام (so / neither):

فاعل / ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد / ناقص (مثبت) + و كذلك so + جملة مثبتة →

- I am late and so are you. - She has passed the test. So have her friends.

فاعل / ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد / ناقص (مثبت) + و لا neither + جملة منفية →

- Ali can't swim, neither can I. - I don't like fish and neither does mum.

- لاحظ ان الفعل المساعد / الناقص يتبع الفاعل او ضمير الفاعل الذي يليه

كل / اي من Either

- نستخدم (either of) قبل الضمائر او صفات الاشارة او اداة التعريف (the, this, my, your..... etc.) و يجب ان يكون الاسم او الضمير بعدها جمعا:-

- There was a chair on either side of the fireplace.
- I don't like either of them. - I don't like either of my new neighbours.
- عادة يكون الفعل مفردا لكن الفعل الجمع يستخدم في اللغة الدارجة :
- Is either of them at home? (More formal) - Are either of them at home? (More informal)
- يستخدم ضمير المفعول و ليس ضمير الفاعل بعد (either of):
- I don't like either of them. (NOT ... either of they.)
- الضمير الذي يعود علي (either + noun/pronoun) يمكن ان يكون مفردا او جمعا :
- If either of the boys comes, tell him/them to wait.

- لاحظ استخدام (either) بمعنى ايضا في الجمل المنفية:

- I don't like this one, and I don't like that one either. (= I dislike both of them.)
- Peter isn't here. John isn't here either. - I know you don't like me. I don't like you either.

اما ... او ... Either ... or

- تستخدم (Either ... or) للتعبير عن اختيار بين بدلين :

- He must be either a professor or an engineer. - We must either go now or stay till the end.
- لاحظ ان (either) تستخدم قبل البديل الاول :
- I don't speak either German or French. - You can have either tea or coffee.

روابط السبب 2-Linking Words Showing Reason

- جملة تعبر عن سبب + because / as / since / as long as + جملة تعبر عن نتيجة.
- جملة تعبر عن نتيجة + جملة تعبر عن سبب + Because/ As / Since / As long as

- I didn't ask her to help me because / as she was busy.
- As / Since she was busy, I didn't ask her to help me.
- As long as you are unfit, you won't join the team.

- لاحظ استخدام روابط السبب التالية (جميعها تأتي في بداية او وسط الجملة) :

- ... جملة + (because of/ owing to/ due to/ as a result of / on account of/ through + n./ (v. ing))

- We lost the match. We played badly. = - We lost the match due to playing badly.
- We lost the match. We played badly. = - We lost the match through bad play.
- We didn't play the match. The weather was bad.
- = We didn't play the match owing to bad weather.
- He went to the doctor's because he was ill.
- = He went to the doctor's because of his illness. = He went to the doctor's because of being ill.
- يمكن استخدام thanks to بنفس الطريقة مع الاشياء الايجابية:
- Thanks to working hard, he became a millionaire.

- because of/ owing to/ due to/ thanks to
- as a result of / on account of/ through } جملة نتيجة + جملة سبب + the fact that

- He went to the doctor's because of being ill.
- = - He went to the doctor's because of the fact that he was ill.
- Thanks to the fact that he had worked hard, he became a millionaire.

→ Being + (adj.) جملة + صفة

- Being ill, He went to the doctor's.

3 - Linking Words Showing Result روابط النتيجة

→ So / thus / Hence/ Therefore / Consequently / As a consequence/ That is why / as a result / For this reason / Because of that + جملة نتيجة...

- It was raining, so we didn't go out.
- He didn't have enough money, therefore he didn't buy the mobile.
- He didn't arrive early, as a result he missed the bus.
- Professor Brown is a famous scientist. Because of that, he is highly respected.
- He has been studying hard for a long time. Consequently, he has made considerable progress.

- because of/ owing to/ due to/ thanks to

- as a result of / on account of/ through

جملة سبب + جملة نتيجة + that

- We lost the match due to playing badly. = We played badly. Due to that, we lost the match.

→ The cause / The reason(why) + جملة نتيجة + be + that + جملة سبب

- The cause / The reason he didn't buy the mobile was that he didn't have enough money.

- The cause / The reason we didn't go out was that it was raining.

→ The cause of / The reason for + n. / v.ing... + be + that + جملة سبب

- The reason for his considerable progress is that he has been studying hard for a long time.

- The cause of (us)not going out was that it was raining.

4- Linking Words Showing Contrast روابط التناقض

- لاحظ ان الروابط التالية ياتي بعدها جملة :

but -yet -however-nevertheless - in/by contrast -on the contrary- instead - even so- on the other hand

-I like fish but I hate its smell.

-Ibraheem is lazy. However, his sister is hard working.

- She studied hard for several months. Yet, she didn't come first.

-I like sugar in my coffee. In contrast Marwa likes black coffee.

Although - though -even though - even if -while - whereas - whatever+ جملة

- Ahmed never helps the poor whereas his parents are very kind.

- Although I like fish, I hate its smell. - He won't answer the question even if it is extremely easy.

- يمكن استخدام التصريف الثالث بعد although إذا كانت الجملة أصلاً في المبني للمجهول مع حذف الفعل المساعد:

- Although the school was built two years ago, it is in bad condition.

- Although built two years ago, the school is in bad condition.

→ However + فعل + فاعل + صفة أو (ظرف)

-Although he was strong, he couldn't work. = However strong he was, he couldn't work.

-Although she wrote badly, she got high marks. = However badly she wrote, she got high marks.

→ Whatever + فعل + فاعل + اسم

- However strong he was, he couldn't work. = Whatever strength he had, he couldn't work.

→ as / though + فعل + فاعل + صفة

-However strong he was, he couldn't work. = Strong as / though he was he couldn't work.

Despite / In spite of/ Contrary to/ Regardless of/ unlike / instead of / In contrast to + V.ing / noun اسم

-Although he is strong, he can't work. = Despite his strength (being strong), he couldn't work.

= Regardless of his strength (being strong), he couldn't work.

→ Despite / In spite of / Regardless of + the fact that أو that + جملة كاملة .

-Despite the fact that he is strong, he can't work.

= In spite of / Regardless of the fact that (that) he is strong, he can't work.

5- Linking Words Showing Purpose روابط الغرض

→ To -so as to - in order to + المصدر

- We came to the countryside in order to find some peace and quietness.

- I'll go home so as to take some rest. - Fishermen go to the sea to catch fish.

→ in order not to/ so as not to

-Be careful when using a knife in order not to be injured.

- Carry the flowers carefully so as not to damage them.
- Fishermen go to the sea in the hope that they may catch fish.

→ in the hope of + V + ing.....

- I'll go home in the hope of taking some rest.
- The fishermen go to the sea in the hope of catching fish.

→ (lest خشية ان) + جملة.....

- Watch the baby, lest she falls down the stairs.
- She couldn't sleep all night lest she misses the six o'clock train.

Present/future مضارع/مستقبل	so that	can /will/ may /+ مصدر
+	in order that	+
Past جملة ماضي	in the hope that	could /would/might + مصدر

- I turned off the radio so that I could hear the nightingale.
- I'll go home so that I can take some rest.
- Fishermen go to the sea in the hope that they may catch fish.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

-I enjoy reading, I don't read much these days.
a. But b. However c. Although d. As well as
- He was very unhappy at school.....he was regularly bullied .
a. because b. even though c. though d. however
- There's no airport in the city,.....there's one about fifty miles away.
a. However b. even though c. however d. besides
-being known as a difficult man, I got on very well with hire.
a. In spite b. In addition to c. Despite d. Because
- Hady was a successful businessman,.....it was at the expense of his family life.
a. even if b. so c. but d. though
-having plenty of room, the flat is quiet.
a. Despite b. In addition to c. But d. In addition
- There's no balcony,.....there's a view.
a. however b. though c. as d. in spite of
-the hotel was expensive, we enjoyed staying there.
a. But b. Even if c. Because d. Besides
- In addition tolots of buses, the city has a good subway system.
a. have b. has c. had d. having
-being depressed, he's having trouble in school.
a. Besides b. In addition c. Beside d. Despite
- Not onlyhe miss his family but he is also experiencing culture shock.
a. has b. does c. had d. do
- Mohamed studies hard,he isn't getting good grades
a. but b. because c. despite d. when
- He was depressed,he went to see his advisor.
a. as b. but c. because d. so
- The minister resignedthe exposures about his private life.
a. because of b. because c. but d. if
- He found it difficult to concentrate his worry about his grades.
a. because b. as c. due to d. since
- I stayed in my room .1 was tired of speaking English all the time.
a. so b. due to c. but d. because
- We couldn't buy the newspaper the shop was closed.
a. so b. because c. despite d. although
-we ran as fast as we could, we missed the bus.
a. Despite b. Because of c. Because d. Although
- They told him he was sure to pass the test,he didn't believe them.
a. so b. but c. because d. as
- My father would have taken you to the airport. You didn't ask him, .

- a. so b. despite c. but d. though
- 21) She phoned meshe wanted to know what time I was leaving home.
a. because b. so c. but d. despite
- 22)it rarely rains in Egypt, some European tourists bring umbrellas with them.
a. But b. So c. Although d. However
- 23) It's my mother's birthday soon, I want to buy her a present.
a. so b. but c. because d. however
- 24)really enjoying the book you lent me, I haven't finished it yet.
a. In addition b. In spite c. Besides d. Despite
- 25) I've been feeling tired all day,.....I'm going to bed early tonight.
a. because b. but c. so d. though
- 26) Tourists like to go to Europethey want to see the museums.
a. because b. but c. so d. when
- 27)Matt grew up in Kansas, he now lives in san Francisco.
a. But b. Although c. However d. Because
- 28) He not only missed his family but he missed his old friends.
a. or b. also c. either d. as well
- 29)he feels homesick, he'll stay until he finishes his studies.
a. Although b. But c. owing to d. Because
- 30) While.....the Pyramids, I saw most tourists taking photos.
a) visited b) visiting c) was visiting d) visit
- 31) After....., he became an engineer.
a) graduate b) graduating c) had graduated d) graduated
- 32) I've been working all dayI'm going to sleep early tonight.
a) so b) because c) if d) although
- 33) They were talkingwe were watching the film.
a) as soon as b) after c) while d) before
- 34) She doesn't have many friendsshe's rude and unpleasant.
a) because b) so c) while d) despite
- 35)my mother is from Paris, I've never been there.
a) Although b) When c) If d) Because
- 36)leaving school, he went to university.
a) On b) While c) Despite d) Before
- 37)running his own business is hard, he does it happily.
a) Despite b) Because c) Although d) While
- 38) The reasonI don't like Alaa is that he is selfish.
a) why b) when c) while d) where
- 39)he was a student, he wrote many perfect poems.
a) On b) While c) Despite d) So
- 40)going on a diet, she put on five kilos.
a) Because of b) Despite c) During d) So
- 41) I worked as a research scientist after I
a) was graduating b) have graduated c) graduate d) had graduated
- 42) He went to see a doctorbeing ill.
a) because b) so c) because of d) despite
- 43)answering the phone, I heard a boy crying.
a) On b) Despite c) If d) Because
- 44)I went to sleep last night, I read a book.
a) While b) Before c) After d) Though
- 45) He didn't earn enough moneyhe had to find another job.
a) while b) because of c) because d) so
- 46)he had little money, he insisted on paying for the meal.
a) Although b) But c) However d) Despite
- 47)flying into Cairo, I saw the Pyramids of Giza.
a) Although b) While c) Because d) Despite
- 48) He has a lot of money....., he doesn't enjoy himself.
a) because b) however c) although d) despite
- 49) He was the only child of a rich man.....he was very spoilt.
a) because b) so c) while d) despite
- 50)waking up this morning, I heard much noise.

- 51)his intelligence, he couldn't solve this easy problem.
 a) *In* b) *At* c) *For* d) *On*
- 52) We shouldn't be cruelchildren so as not to make them violent.
 a) *But* b) *Although* c) *However* d) *Despite*
- 53) We got on very wellwe'd never met before.
 a) *to* b) *at* c) *for* d) *on*
- 54) My friend Hady is regardeda brother who I can tell all my secrets.
 a) *but* b) *despite* c) *although* d) *because*
- 55) Most of his novels have been madefilms.
 a) *to* b) *as* c) *so* d) *for*
-films.
 a) *with* b) *for* c) *into* d) *at* .

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. After finished his homework, he watched TV.
2. After he losing his job, Ali worked for a children's charity.
3. After played football, the boys had a shower.
4. Ali as well as his friends are going to the concert
5. Although hard he studies, he doesn't get good marks.
6. Although moving to the healthy air of Switzerland, he died in 1991.
7. Although really enjoying the book you lent me, I haven't finished it yet.
8. As soon as seeing the accident, I called the police.
9. As well as she studied hard, she helped her mother.
10. Because it never usually rains in Egypt, some European tourists bring umbrellas with them.
11. Because the traffic jam, I arrived at the office late.
12. Because they played very well, they lost the match.
13. Before gone to bed, Ali did his science homework.
14. Beside being clever, she is rich.
15. But she is a careful driver, she had a terrible accident.
16. But the weather was bad, the ship departed.
17. Clever however he is, he failed the test.
18. Despite she was tired, she worked overtime.
19. Despite we ran as fast as we could, we missed the bus.
20. Despite we're good friends, we don't meet very often.
21. Due to the children are staying at their grandmother's, let's go out for the evening.
22. Even so he had little money, he insisted on paying for the meal.
23. Hard though she tried, she couldn't open the bottle.
24. Having watching the movie, he went to bed.
25. He didn't attend the meeting because of he was ill.
26. He had to apologize owing to he made a shameful mistake.
27. He is originally from France so now lives in England.
28. He managed to get a good mark in the test but he never does any homework.
29. He missed the bus as he was late for work.
30. He played well however he missed the record.
31. He went to the doctor because of he was ill.
32. He's a company director though being only 26.
33. However the box was heavy, he could carry it.
34. However you say, I won't believe you.
35. I had to take a taxi although it was raining heavily.
36. I invited sue although she did not come.
37. I like most school subjects because I don't like physics.
38. I not only enjoyed my job but else it's very well paid.
39. I'd like to work as a research scientist before I graduate.
40. In addition to he wrote the letter, he saw the film.
41. In spite going on a diet, she put on five kilos.
42. It's my mother's birthday soon, because I want to buy her a present.
43. John's flat was on fire, so he didn't panic.
44. Last week, as well as we went to the club, we went to the cinema.
45. My father was seriously ill, although he continued working.
46. My father would have taken you to the airport, because you didn't ask him.
47. My sister is dark, so I'm blonde.
48. Neither Nada nor Noha know how to drive.

49. Not only he hit the man's car but also he called him bad names.
50. On meet him, I told him the news.
51. On moving to the healthy air of Switzerland, He died in 1991
52. On they saw the road accident, the cars drove more slowly.
53. She decided to order a salad now due to she had started her diet.
54. She is both clever or rich.
55. She phoned me but she wanted to know what time I was leaving home.
56. She walked home by herself, because she knew that it was dangerous.
57. She's quite shy, so she wants to be an actress.
58. Swift was a politician as well as a churchman.
59. The hotel was fully ooked.'but we stayed at a guest house.
60. The road is closed because of there has been an accident.
61. There were no accidents though the dangerous roads.
62. They didn't play the match through of the bad weather.
63. They enjoy living together although they have many common interests.
64. They told him he was sure to pass the test, so he didn't believe them.
65. They were arrested as breaking the law.
66. Unless Peter doesn't improve his work, he'll fail the exam.
67. We couldn't buy the newspaper despite the shop was closed.
68. We couldn't buy the newspaper, so the shop was closed.
69. What I was on holiday, I took some great photos.
70. When answered the phone, I heard a small child.
71. While flying into Cairo, the Pyramids of Giza greeted me..
72. While I was being young, I played football.

Test 14

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1.You are warning your friend who is going to cross a busy road. What do you say?
- 2.Your brother is using a ladder to get something from the top shelf. You warn him.
- 3.Your little brother wants to go out alone at night. What do you say?
- 4.Your mother tells you to work a bit harder or you'll fail the test. What do you say to assure her?

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function each of the following min-dialogues

- 1- A: What do you think of university life, so far?
 B: To tell you the truth, everything here is so big in comparison With school.
 A: You are good at rowing. Why don't you join our rowing team?

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

- 2- A: Many of the robot toys we have can respond to your voice.
 B: What age area are they? A: From 5 to 14 years.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I've always been in animals. That's why I'd like to work in a zoo.
a- interested b- interesting c- interests d- interest
2. Pascal went ahead with the experiment he knew it was dangerous.
a- because b- as well as c- since d- despite
3. Many people are now homeless the civil war.
a- because b- therefore c- but d- as a result of
4. The organization gives help to people in need, raising money for local charities.
a- as well as b- because c- so d- despite
5. My cousin is very He went on an expedition to the mountains last year.
a- dangerous b- adventurous c- religious d- anonymous

6. I am not as as my friend. She does things as soon as she thinks of them.
a- adventurous b- conscious c- spontaneous d- continuous
7. That man is not doing enough exercise. This can sometimes to health problems.
a- lead b- make c- do d- result
8. I want to out some information. I'll look on the internet.
a- find b- make c- do d- receive
9. we've got a few minutes to wait for the train, let's have a cup of coffee.
a- Due to b- Despite c- Since d- So
10. all our efforts to save the school, the authorities decided to close it
a- Although b- So c- But d- Despite .
11. They live in the country. They have a different from people in cities.
a- lifestyle b- life expectancy c- life insurance d- life sentence
12. The politician died last week. Thousands of people attended the
a- ballet b- grave c- funeral d- cemetery
13. She likes unusual, modern houses. Her sister prefers traditional, architecture.
a- conventional b- educational c- exceptional d- intentional
14. the Internet, you can do all your shopping from home.
a- As b- Despite c- Thanks to d- While
15. It was clear Lucy was unhappy..... , it comes as no surprise she has decided to resign.
a- As well as b- Therefore c- Although d- But
16. They had to stop the project financial difficulties.
a- owing to b- In spite of c- While d- therefore

4. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. Because she was no more than twenty-two, she was already a highly successful businesswoman.
2. His jokes seemed simultaneous, but were in fact carefully prepared beforehand.
3. Internet connections through congressional phone lines are fairly slow.
4. She's in a bad mood although her father won't let her go to the party tonight.
5. The program has gained the support of several preferential businessmen.
6. The war was lost as bad organization of the troops.

(C) Reading Comprehension and Set Books

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions

It must be said that the majority of those who are against Genetically Modified (GM) foods are neither living in countries which suffer from food shortages, nor facing starvation. Many scientists believe that without GM foods, the Third World will never overcome its food problems. At present, over one billion people live on less than one dollar a day. The United Nations hopes this number will be cut in half, within fifteen years. This will not happen if food continues to be produced in the conventional manner.

Foods produced by traditional farming methods do not last very long and often spoil during transport. Very often, food sent by the West to countries suffering from famine, rots before it reaches its destination. Now, scientists have found ways to preserve foods for much longer time. For example, they have developed a preservative made from vitamins and minerals which keeps even cut fruit fresh for up to ten days if refrigerated. Despite this, there are still people who believe that agricultural research should be moving in a different direction. They accept that there is no real proof that GM foods are dangerous. However, they believe that the solutions that GM foods provide are short-term and that it is necessary to find longer-lasting and natural means to solve the world's food problems.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- How do scientists preserve foods for a long time?
- 2- Mention one disadvantage of food grown by conventional methods.
- 3- Give a title to the passage.

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 4- The expression "cut in half" means
a) cut into pieces b) add one half
c) decrease by half d) become one and a half
- 5- Most of the food sent to starving countries
a) never decays b) decays after it reaches them
c) decays on the way d) does not decay until it is eaten by them

Can you imagine anything worse than returning home to find that burglars have broken into your house? Unfortunately, this happens to about one million people in Britain annually. However, if you want better protection against burglars, there are several things you can do. To improve security, check all the locks on your doors and windows. The installation of lighting all around the house will make sure a burglar is unable to hide in the shadows. An alarm system is another good preventative measure you can take.

A) Answer the following questions:

- B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- #### D- The Prisoner of Zenda

1. Why is Antoinette de Mauban being kept as a prisoner of the Duke?

- B) Read the following quotation. then answer the questions

1. Who does Rassendyll say this to?
2. What is it that Rassendyll will look into?
3. Why doesn't he want the Chief of Police to investigate about the missing man?

1. The Duke thinks that Rassendyll was injured while hunting.
2. Max Holf sees Rassendyll near the pipe.

8) Write a letter to

F- Translation

In our life we may have moments of happiness and other moments are sad. Funerals are time of sadness when people suffer from a person's death, while marriage is regarded as a time of joy and happiness.

- إنسان لا يخطط لأي شيء فهو إنسان عفوي Spontaneous.
- السفر مفيد للإنسان لكي يتعرف على أشخاص وأفكار جديدة .

Unit 15 -The Future of Books

adapt	يُعدّل / يتأقلم	enthusiastic	متحمس	recession	كساد اقتصادي
adverts	إعلانات	gadget	جهاز صغير/أداة	recyclable	قابل للاستخدام مرة أخرى
agricultural	زراعي	generalize	يُعمم	recycle (v)	يُعيد استخدام
availability	توافر / إتاحة	go online	يستخدم الانترنت	recycling	إعادة الاستخدام
available	متاح / متوافر	go wrong	يتعطل	reduce the price	يقلل السعر
available	متاح علي الانترنت	grow quickly	تنمو بسرعة	road accidents	حوادث الطرق
bestsellers	الكتب الأفضل بيعا	hindrance	عقبة / عائق	roll	يدور / يلف / يسوي
bleach (v)	يُبيض / يجعل لونه أبيض	incentive	حافز	roller	بكرة / اسطوانة
brochure	كتيب به صور أو معلومات	industrial	صناعي	screen	شاشة
CD ROM	اسطوانة	latest technology	أحدث التكنولوجيا	smooth	ناعم / أملس / مصقول
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	leaflets	منشورات / نشرة	soak (v)	ينقع أو يغمر في سائل
collection	مجموعة	log / logged	يقطع (الأشجار)	stationery	الأدوات الكتابية
common type	نوع شائع	logs	قطع من الخشب	still pictures	صور ثابتة
compact disk	قرص مضغوط	maps	خرائط	stumbling block	عائق / حجر عثرة
digital	رقمي	menu	قائمة الطعام	suppose	يفترض
disappear	يختفي	mixture	خليط / مزيج	the same size as	تقريبا في نفس حجم
download	يحمل من الانترنت	motivate	يُحفز	theatre tickets	تذاكر المسرح
e-book reader	جهاز لقراءة الكتب	moving pictures	صور متحركة	tourist places	أماكن سياحية
efficient	كُفء	paperback	ذو غلاف ورقي	trademark	علامة تجارية
e-mail	بريد الكتروني الالكتروني	papyrus	ورق البردي	traditional	تقليدي
electronic book	كتاب الكتروني	partly	جزئيا	turning point	نقطة تحول
encyclopedia	موسوعة / دائرة معارف	persevere	يُثابر	uphold	يدعم / يؤيد
enormity	ضخامة / فداحة	press	يضغط / يكوّ	upload	يقوم بوضع أو رفع شيء علي الانترنت
enormous	هائل	pressing	الضغط علي الأزرار	up-to-date	حديث
enthusiasm	حماس / تحمس	public libraries	المكتبات العامة	website	موقع علي الانترنت
enthusiast	(شخص) متحمس	range of books	سلسلة من الكتب	wrapping	لف / تغليف

Expressions

be mixed with chemicals	يتم خلطها بمواد كيميائية	good for the environment	مفيد للبيئة
be produced from	يتم إنتاجه من	hold huge amounts of	تحتل أو تتسع لكميات هائلة
be replaced by	يتم استبداله بـ	instead of	بدلا من
become part of history	يصبح جزءا من التاريخ	keep up with	يوافق / يساير
break into small pieces	يكسر إلى قطع صغيرة	make new friends	يتخذ أصدقاء جدد
bring someone round	يعيد شخص إلى وعيه	make way for	يُخلي المكان أو الطريق لـ
business meeting	اجتماع عمل	on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى
business relationship	علاقة عمل	range from ... to ...	يتراوح من .. إلى ..
cut down prices	يقلل الأسعار	receive an award for	يتلقى جائزة عن
cut down trees	يقطع الأشجار	replace ... with	يستبدل ... بـ
draw on paper	يرسم علي الورق	roll in	يتدفق بكميات كبيرة
find information on the internet	يجد معلومات علي الانترنت	roll up	يطوي
five-day programme	برنامج يستغرق خمسة أيام	take up a lot of space	تشغل حيزا كبيرا
for environmental reasons	لأسباب بيئية	the price goes down	يقل السعر
get information from the internet	يحصل علي معلومات من الانترنت	work for a charity	يعمل لدي مؤسسة خيرية
go on a business trip	يذهب في رحلة عمل	work for the common good	يعمل للصالح العام

Words & antonyms

available	متاح	unavailable	غير متاح
complete	كامل	incomplete	غير كامل
deceptive	خادع	honest	أمين
enthusiastic	متحمس	apathetic	غير مهتم
miss the meeting	يفوته الاجتماع	attend the meeting	يحضر الاجتماع
miss the train	يفوته القطار	catch the train	يلحق بالقطار
paperback	ذو غلاف ورقي	hardback/hardcover	ذو غلاف مقوي
preserve	يحافظ على	damage / neglect	يتلف / يهمل
ready	مستعد / راغب	reluctant / unwilling	ممانع / غير راغب
rear	خلفي	front	أمامي
selfish	أناني	unselfish	غير أناني

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adj.
bleach	يُبيض	bleach	المادة المستخدمة في التبييض	
download	يُحمّل	download	تحميل	downloadable يمكن تحميله
enthuse (about)	يتحمس بشأن	enthusiast	شخص متحمس	enthusiastic (about) متحمس
		enthusiasm	الحماسة	
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	الهام	inspired مُلهم
mix	يخلط / يمزج	mixture	خليط / مزيج	mixed مختلط
press	يضغط	press	ضغط (عادة مفرد)	pressed مضغوط
print	يطبع	printing	الطباعة	printed مطبوع
programme	يبرمج	programme	برنامج	programmable يمكن برمجته
recycle	يعيد استخدام	recycling	إعادة الاستخدام	recyclable يمكن إعادة استخدامه
roll	يدور / يسوي	roller	بكرة أو اسطوانة	

Definitions

available	If something is available , you can get it , buy it or use it	متاح
download	To move information from one part of a computer system to another	يحمل
enthusiastic	Showing a lot of interest and excitement about something	متحمس
gadget	A small tool or machine that helps you do something	جهاز صغير/أداة
paperback	A book with a soft paper cover.	كتاب ذو غلاف ورقي
screen	The flat, glass part of a TV or a computer.	شاشة
bleach	To make something white or lighter in colour by using chemicals or sunlight.	يبيض
encyclopedia	A book that contains facts about many subjects.	موسوعة
mixture	Something that is made by mixing two or more different substances together.	مزيج / خليط
press	To push something firmly and steadily.	يضغط
recycle	To put used objects or materials through a process so that they can be used again.	يعيد استخدام
roller	A cylinder –shaped piece of wood , metal etc that can be rolled over and over	بكرة
soak	To cover something with liquid for a period of time.	ينقع

Language Notes

- use + object + to + inf. يستخدم
- use + object + for + (v + ing) يستخدم

- We usually use wood to make furniture .
- We usually use wood for making furniture .

- لاحظ استخدام on مع الكلمات والتعبيرات الآتية:

a book on	كتاب عن	on business	في مهمة عملية	on the internet	على الإنترنت
a conference on	مؤتمر عن	on display	معروض	on the menu	في قائمة الطعام
a tax on	ضريبة على	on duty	في الخدمة	on the plane	على الطائرة
an effect on	تأثير على	on foot	سيراً على الأقدام	on the radio	في الراديو
an influence on	تأثير على	on his way to	في طريقه إلى	on the staff	من ضمن هيئة العاملين
contact him on	يتصل به على رقم	on holiday/vacation	في إجازة	on the telephone	على التلفون
information on	معلومات عن	on Monday/Friday	في يوم الاثنين / الجمعة	on the train	على القطار
on a farm	في مزرعة	on purpose	عمداً	on the whole	بصفة عامة
on admission	عند الدخول	on the advice of	بناءً على نصيحة	restrictions on	قيود على

- fit يناسب (من حيث المقاس) - The white blouse fits her.
- suit يناسب (من حيث الشكل) - That blue jeans suits him . He looks nice.
- match يتماشى مع (للأشياء) - Does the shirt match the trousers, Hany?

- together = with each other معا / سوياً - Mix the eggs and salt together before.
- Altogether = completely تماماً - I don't mind working with him, but living with him is a different matter altogether.

- Trade with يتاجر مع - Ancient Egyptians traded with different countries.
- Trade in يتاجر في (سلعة معينة) - My uncle has been trading in clothes for ten years.

- Later فيما بعد / في وقت لاحق - Later that year, we moved into a new flat .
- (the) latter = the second (الشيء / الشخص) المذكور ثانياً - I offered her juice or coffee and she chose the latter.

- Have = have got = own يملك - I have a car = I have got a car.
- Do you have a car? = Have you got a car? - I don't have a car. = I haven't got a car.
- في الماضي نستخدم had للتعبير عن الملكية :
- He had a bike when he was young.
- نستخدم will have للتعبير عن الملكية في المستقبل:
- Aya will have a new jacket next week.
- نستخدم have فقط للتعبير عن الملكية بعد to والأفعال الناقصة مثل must / should وغيرها ولا يمكن استخدام have got بهذا الشكل:
- He wants to have a car. - I should have a lot of money to build a house.
- لاحظ أن have نستخدم بمعاني أخرى غير يملك وفي هذه الحالة لا نستخدم have got
- Have a meal / have a party / have a holiday / have an accident / have a dream

- soak in ينقع - Mum soaks clothes in hot water before washing them.
- soak up يمتص - I put a heavy cloth on the wet floor to soak up water.

هذه الكلمات إذا جاء قبلها عدد محدد تكون مفرداً أما إذا لم يسبقها عدد محدد وتشير لكميات كبيرة تكون جمعاً.

- Hundred / thousand / million / billion / trillion
- Her salary is 1500 hundred pounds a month. - Millions of people watched the match on TV.

- Hold / held / held يمسك - He held the chair.
- Hold (an opinion / belief / view.....) يؤمن برأى / اعتقاد / وجهة نظر - She holds the opinion that the world will end soon.
- Hold back يمنع / يعوق - The police couldn't hold back the crowds.
- Hold up يعطل - She didn't mean to hold us up.

- Good at جيد في - He is good at English.
- Good to طيب مع - He is good to his friends
- Good for مفيد / صالح لـ - Taking exercises is good for you.

Exercises

Respond the following situations :

- 1-A friend asks if you think people will have their own spaceships in fifty years.
- 2-A friend asks you if you think people will read books in a hundred years time.

3-A friend uses the words travel and journey in the same sentence. You do not understand the different meanings of these two words.

4-In a conversation, a friend uses the word gadgets. You do not understand the word.

- Mention the place , the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1- A: What's wrong with you? B: My left eye hurts me. A: Let me examine you.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

3- A: Why are you late? B: The metro has broken down.

A: But you are always late for the first lesson. B: I'm sorry. I won't be late again.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.He told us an interesting story which was aof fact and fiction.

a) protection b) culture c) collection d) mixture

2.A bestseller is a book which.....people buy.

a) few b) great c) rich d) many

3.Some websites enable the internet users tosoftware programmes for free.

a) move b) download c) transport d) carry

4. libraries encourage young people to read.

a) General b) Whole c) Public d) Private

5.You can read e-books on the screen and turn the bages by pressing buttons or.....the screen.

a) hitting b) switching c) touching d) saving

6.My school has a.....on the internet; every student can get the information they need through it.

a) website b) paperback c) bestseller d) log

7.To.....something, means to make it white or lighter in colour by using chemicals or sunlight.

a) bleach b) polish c) clean d) sharpen

8.My friend is about the new project he has started.

a) enthusiasm b) enthusiast c) enthusiastic d) enthusiastically

9.A\Ancan hold a lot of information and is small enough to carry in your pocket.

a) gadget b) button c) encyclopedia d) CD-Rom

10. The machine automaticallythe required information to his fax.

a) downloads b) carries c) holds d) bears

11. My brother has wonderful.....of stamps.

a) rollers b) collections c) buttons d) chemicals

12. The government shouldthe price of necessary items that all people can't do without.

a) cost b) reduce c) increase d) produce

13. To make potatoes tasty, housewives.....them in salted water for two hours before frying.

a) soak b) dissolve c) melt d) grill

14. A\An.....is a book with a soft paper cover which is easy to carry with you.

a) encyclopedia b) gadget c) paperback d) website

15., the firemen managed to rescue all the people who were in the burning house.

a) Fortunately b) Unfortunately c) Terribly d) Unluckily

16. Most people think that e-books willtraditional books completely.

a) replace b) place c) exchange d) remove

17. The new English book has some errors.

a) publishing b) lining c) printing d) pressing

18. We can get.....information about everything new through the internet.

a) up-to-date b) fashionable c) cut of-date d) old-fashioned

19. Toto move information from one part of a computer system to another.

a) transport b) move c) download d) hold

20. This medicine isn'tnow; you'll be able to get it this afternoon.

a) fashionable b) valid c) unavailable d) available

21. We shouldold things to keep the environment clean and save a lot of money.

a) waste b) recycle c) remove d) mix

22. We can red and white to get pink.

- a) mix b) bleach c) hold d) educate
23. The parliament has passed some new traffic rules to.....the number of road accidents.
a) soak b) cut c) hold d) press
24. A.....is a cylinder- shaped piece of wood, metal etc. that can be rolled over and over.
a) gadget b) CD-Rom c) button d) roller
25.you find a large sum of money, what will you do?
a) Announce b) Suppose c) Improve d) Believe
26. You can do shopping on the internet at the simple.....of a button.
a) pressure b) press c) pressurized d) press-up
27. A/anis easy to carry and read at any time.
a) CD-Rom b) encyclopedia c) paperback d) reference book
28. A/an.....is a large book that contains facts about many Subjects.
a) encyclopedia b) paperback c) CD-Rom d) log
29. Through the internet, we can read.....newspapers.
a) lining b) line c) offline d) online
30. Everyone clapped their hands when the manager.....the winner of the competition.
a) phoned b) pressed c) announced d) published
31. He pressed the.....to switch on TV.
a) roller b) button c) gadget d) screen
32. My brother is a chess....., He spends a long time playing it with his friends and on the computer.
a) enthusiast b) enthusiastic c) enthusiasm d) enthusiastically
33. Wood, paper, plastic are.....materials which can be reused.
a) recycle b) recyclable c) recycling d) recycles
34. A/an is a set of books which deals with every branch of human knowledge.
a) CD-Rom b) paperback c) encyclopedia d) roller
35. The policethe suspect's fingerprints with those found at the crime scene.
a) regarded b) compared c) differed. d) explored
36. The car hit a rock andover many times before it caught fire .
a) soaked b) rolled c) recycled d) bleached
37. To make papyrus, the ancient Egyptians used the leaves of grass, soaked them in water and pressed.....to dry in the sun.
a) gathering b) together c) gather d) gatherer
38. I phoned Ali at home yesterday but he wasn't.....
a) recycled b) available c) removed d) pressed
39. "....." means to cover something with liquid for a period of time .
a) Announce _ b) Roll c) Soak d) Bleach
40. Every year, millions of trees aredown to make new paper.
a) put b) take c) cut d) give
41. Computerare used for storing a large amount of information text form, sound and pictures.
a) keyboards b) screens c) disks d) rollers
42. The new teacher is full ofhe urges students to work hard.
a) enthusiast b) enthusiastic c) enthusiasm d) enthusiastically
43. Wood is bleached during theof making paper.
a) experiment b) process c) produce d) operation
44. The.....subject of the conversation is how to develop our industry.
a) mainly b) mean c) main d) mail
45. The picture of the television is clear because the.....is enormous.
a)gadget b) disc c) screen d) roller
46. If you want to find.....information, you Can log onto the internet.
a) recycled b) offline c) online d) printed
47. The instructor taught me.....to keep fit and take part in competitions.
a) how b) what c) why d) who
48. Pupils in our schools must be taught in a safe healthy
a) centre b) weather c) environment d) future
49. He is.....; he shows a lot of interest and excitement about something.
a) regretful b) pessimistic c) optimistic d) enthusiastic

50.paper is cheaper than new paper.
a) *Recycling* b) *Recycled* c) *Recyclable* d) *Recycle*
51.can be used for moving heavy things that have no wheels.
a) *Gadgets* b) *CD-Rom* c) *Rollers* d) *Disks*
52.which are cut from trees are broken into pieces to be used for making paper.
a) *Fruits* b) *Roots* c) *Logs* d) *Leaves*
53. We can't go to the theatre until we check the.....of tickets.
a) *available* b) *unavailable* c) *availability* d) *valuable*
54. Sorry, we don't have this book now; it is.....
a) *unavailable* b) *available* c) *fashionable* d) *favourable*
55. Oneof e-books is that it will save millions of trees and hundred of forests.
a) *advantage* b) *disadvantage* c) *cause* d) *reason*
56. You can find all the information you needthe internet.
a) *at* b) *in* c) *on* d) *of*
57. Amal is enthusiastic.....the idea of opening a shop for selling flowers.
a) *of* b) *about* c) *at* d) *with*
58. Farmers leave the seeds of crops to dry.....the sun.
a) *with* b) *from* c) *on* d) *in*
59. There must be strict laws to ban cutting trees.....to keep the environment clean.
a) *out* b) *off* c) *down* d) *of*
60. The prices of most items increased10% this month.
a) *at* b) *by* c) *with* d) *for*
61. Housewives usually soak clothes.....water and this can make it easy to dean them.
a) *on* b) *from* c) *in* d) *of*
62. Getting up early and eating fresh vegetables and fruit are goodyour health.
a) *at* b) *for* c) *to* d) *by*
63. It has become easy to store all the information we need.....a CD- Rom.
a) *at* b) *in* c) *on* d) *form*

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. A rubber is a round piece of wood or metal that can be rolled.
2. Almost of today's newspapers and magazines are made from recycled paper.
3. An article is a large book that contains facts about many subjects.
4. Before you can cook these beans, you have to bleach them for three hours.
5. Bleach is to make something white by using fertilizers.
6. Computers can consist huge amounts of information.
7. During the operation of making paper, wood is bleached.
8. Encyclopedias can hold a lot of information and are small enough to carry in your pocket.
9. Every year, million of trees are cut down to make new paper.
10. For hundreds of years, an enormous quality of paper has been used to produce book.
11. Hazem overloaded some programmes from the internet
12. He didn't show any enthusiastic for any sport of any kind.
13. He is enthusiastic at teaching English.
14. He passed the button to switch on the light.
15. He poured the lecture into four small dishes.
16. His first book was punished in 2002 and was ready for sale two weeks later.
17. His recuperation will depend greatly on the available of this kind of medicine.
18. I have wonderful connections of stamps in my album.
19. In the near future, we will get all our information from the interrupt.
20. It's possible to read offline newspapers on the internet.
21. It's thought that pressing books will become part of history because of the internet..
22. Locks are cut from trees and are broken into pieces to be used in making paper.
23. Modem equipment and machines have produced the workforce in factories to 50%.
24. Most of today's newspapers and magazines are made from recycling paper.
25. My cousin is a football enthusiastic. He never misses a match.
26. My mother has a special budget for cutting vegetables.
27. No one knows exactly when paper was discovered. .
28. One advantage of a CD-Rom is that it can catch a lot of information.
29. Paper was very expensive because it was made of cotton.

30. People think that traditional books will be placed by e-books.
31. She blackened the clothes to make them white.
32. She bought a little garment for squeezing oranges.
33. Since the invention of paper, books have been used to educate people and for enjoyment.
34. Some people believe that CD-ROMs will replace laboratories.
35. Some people predict that printing will become part of geography in the future.
36. The Ancient Egyptians used paper to write and draw on.
37. The Arabs taught how to make paper from the Chinese.
38. The discovery of paper has changed the world greatly.
39. The first paper was made by Chinese two thousand years ago.
40. The government should introduce the price of meat to enable the poor to
41. The leaves of the grass were soaked in water.
42. The type of tree giving us the better wood for making paper grows very quickly.
43. This book is hardback so you can easily carry and read it at any time.
44. This information can be viewed on screen or printed out.
45. To get coffee, put your money in the machine and press the green button.
46. To make paper of wood, logs are broken into small pieces.
47. Today, paper, plastic and glass can all be replaced.
48. Water is removed from the mixture, which then passes through hot rollers.
49. We can turn pages of an e-book reader by pressing buttons or touching the screen.
50. We can recycle paper and glass; they are recycling materials.
51. When I went to buy a famous book; it wasn't available.
52. You can press white shirts to keep them looking clean.
53. You upload them from the internet onto an e-book reader.
54. You'd best do your homework perfectly.

Translate into Arabic:

The invention of computer is one of the greatest advances in modern technology. Computers are widely used in most fields of life. A computer can do complex sums without error.

Egypt has a strong cultural history. Some of the greatest Arab writers, musicians and craftsmen are Egyptians. In the last century, Taha Hussein, Tawfik Al-Hakim and Naguib Mahfouz were probably the best known writers in Arabic.

Many people think that soon everybody will have a computer and we will get all our information from the internet or from CD-ROMs. They believe that public libraries will no longer be needed and that printing will become part of history.

The terrorist act that targeted the Church of Saints will never harm our national unity. It will not affect the stability of our beloved homeland, Egypt.

In Ancient Egypt, a type of tall grass called papyrus, which grew in the Nile valley, was used for writing and drawing on. Before it could be used, the leaves of the grass were soaked in water; pressed together and then dried in the sun.

Translate into English:

- إن الخيال العلمي عادة ما يكون محاولة جادة للكتابة عن شكل الحياة في المستقبل أو في عالم آخر.

- تبذل الحكومة أقصى جهدها لإيجاد فرص عمل للشباب وبناء مساكن لهم.

- القراءة هي مفتاح المعرفة لذلك تقيم مصر معرضاً دولياً للكتاب سنوياً.

- العنف و المظاهرات لن تحل مشكلاتنا الاقتصادية بل ستعرض امن الوطن للخطر.

- الديمقراطية لا تعني اثاره الشعب و الاعمال الاجرامية بل هي التعبير عن الرأي بطرق حضارية.

- ان المواطن الصالح هو من يدين الارهاب يشتي صورته و يعبر عن رأيه بطريقة ديمقراطية .

- ظاهرة العنف والارهاب غريبة علي مجتمعنا لذا علينا ان نواجهها بالفكر السليم و ليس بالتعصب الاعمي .

- استخدم المصريون القدماء البردي للكتابة و الرسم عليه.

Grammar

The causative Form

→ Have + something + P.P.

- لاحظ استخدام have في نفس زمن الجملة

- هذا التركيب يعني أن شخصا آخر غير الفاعل هو الذي قام بالفعل
- يمكن أن يأتي هذا التركيب في الأزمنة المختلفة:

Present simple	have/has + obj. مفعول + P.P.
Present cont.	am/is / are + having+ obj. مفعول + P.P.
Present perfect	have /has had+ obj. مفعول + P.P.
Past simple	had+ obj. مفعول + P.P.
Past cont.	was / were + having+ obj. مفعول + P.P.
Past perfect	had had+ obj. مفعول + P.P.
Future simple	will / shall + have+ obj. مفعول + P.P.
Modals	can /may/should/must / be going to + have+ obj. مفعول + P.P.

- Did you paint the house yourself?

- No, I had it painted.

- Is she typing the report herself?

- No, she's having it typed.

- Someone had cleaned the floor for me.

- I had had the floor cleaned.

- Someone mended her bike the other day.

- She had her bike mended the other day.

- Someone will fix the phone for me.

- I will have the phone fixed.

- و يمكن استخدام get بنفس الطريقة التي استخدمنا بها have:

- The barber is going to cut my hair.

- I am going to get my hair cut.

- Someone is decorating her house.

- She is getting her house decorated.

لاحظ ما يلي:

→ Have + someone + inf.

- I had the mechanic repair my car.

→ Get + someone + to + inf.

- I got the mechanic to repair my car.

Future Simple Passive

→ Obj. المفعول + will be + P.P.

- We will produce more of our energy from solar power.

= More of our energy will be produced from solar power.

- They will announce plans to build a new road round the city center.

= Plans to build a new road round the city center will be announced.

-When I get up, I'll phone you.

- If I meet Ali, I will invite him to my birthday party.

5-The future continuous المستقبل المستمر

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا في وقت معين في المستقبل:-

→ - Subj. فاعل + will / shall + be + v.ing.....

-Ali : I'd like to invite you to my birthday party at five o'clock tomorrow?

- Ahmed : Sorry, I'll be helping my grandpa at the garage.

- يستخدم للتعبير خطط الآخرين (خاصة عندما نريد شيئا من احد):

- Will you be using your dictionary tomorrow? - No, you can borrow it.

- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث من المرجح حدوثه في وقت معين في المستقبل:

- I'll be staying up late tomorrow night preparing for the English exam.

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا في المستقبل عندما سيقع حدث اخر:-

- We will be watching the football match when my father comes home from work.

6- The Future Perfect المستقبل التام

→ - Subj. فاعل + will / shall + have + P.P.

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى او تم في وقت معين في المستقبل:-

They will have finished the English course in two months' time.

We will have built our new house by April next year.

- يستخدم المستقبل التام مع تعبيرات زمنية مثل:

- In (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes' /.....) time

- By next time etc.) حينئذ by next Monday / by then في المرة القادمة

- Before (next time / four o'clock / tomorrow morning / next Monday.... etc.)

- This time (tomorrow/ next Monday / next week etc.)

→ Obj. المفعول + will have been + P.P.....

- By the year 2100, we will have saved millions of trees and hundreds of forests.

= By the year 2100, millions of trees and hundreds of forests will have been saved.

- By 2050, they will have replaced the old building by modern offices.

= By 2050, the old building will have been replaced by modern offices.

7- The Future Perfect continuous المستقبل التام المستمر

→ - Subj. فاعل + will / shall + have + been + v.ing

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يستمر حتي وقت معين او حتي وقوع حدث آخر في المستقبل:-

-You will have been waiting for more than two hours when her plane finally arrives.

- She is going to have been working at that company for three years when it finally closes.

- James will have been teaching at the university for more than a year by the time he leaves for Asia.

يستخدم للتعبير عن السبب او النتيجة المترتبة علي حدث سوف يقع في المستقبل:-

- Ibraheem will be tired when he gets home because he will have been jogging for over an hour.

- Eman's English will be perfect when she returns to Egypt because she will have been studying English in the United States for over two years.

- يمكن استخدام (be+going to) لتؤدي نفس المعني تقريبا بدلا من (will)

- Eman's English will be perfect when she returns to Egypt because she is going to have been studying English in the United States for over two years.

-You are going to have been waiting for more than two hours when her plane finally arrives.

8- Time Conjunctions استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع المستقبل

→ After/As soon as/the moment حدث أول مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام → مستقبل

→ = Before/When / By the time + حدث ثان مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام → مستقبل

→ = حدث أول مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام + till /until + حدث ثان مستقبل بسيط منفي غالبا

- Before she types the letters, she will send the e-mails.
- = After she sends the e-mails, she will type the letter.
- = She won't send the e-mails until she types the letter.

- لاحظ أنه بدلا من المستقبل يمكن أحيانا استخدام فعل أمر :

- After you feed the baby, please, put him to his bed.
- Don't leave until you have typed all the letters.

Reflexive Pronouns

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس عندما يكون الفاعل هو نفسه المفعول:

- Ali hurt himself.
- I bought myself a cold drink.
- She saw herself in the mirror.

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس للتأكيد ويأتي بعد الفاعل / المفعول:

- I myself polished the shoes.
- = - I polished the shoes myself.

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بعد (by) بمعنى "بمفرده" أو "بدون مساعدة" :

by myself = on my own = alone / without any help

- I went shopping on my own. = alone
- He lives on his own. = alone / by himself
- Did Ali paint that picture on his own? = without any help
- I learned to use this computer by myself. = without any help

- لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد أفعال معينة مثل:

approach	يقترّب من	remember	يتذكّر	wake up	يستيقظ
complain	يشكو	Rest	يستريح	wash	يغسل
lie down	ينام	shave	يحلق	wonder	يتساءل
relax	يسترخي	stand up	يقف	worry	يقلق

- لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر الخاصة بالموقع أو المكان أو الاتجاه:

- She doesn't want anyone to sit next to her.
- We took our cameras with us.
- The car was coming fast towards me.

- يمكن أن نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر after / for / on

- The girls looked after themselves.
- Always depend on yourself.

- هناك فرق بين (Of his own / On his own)

- On his own = alone / without help

- I live on my own. = I live alone.
- I cleaned the room on my own. = I cleaned the room without help.

Of his own = belonging to him and to no one else تدل على الملكية

- I'd like to have a room of my own. (belonging to me)

- الضمير المنعكس للضمير (one) هو (oneself) :

- One hopes that one's children will be happier than oneself.

تعبيرات تستخدم فيها الضمائر المنعكسة

- Enjoy yourself = have a good time
- Take care of yourself
- Help yourself = take what you want
- Make yourself at home. = behave freely as if it were your own home
- Behave yourself = be polite / behave well كن مهذبا
- He made a name for himself = He became famous أصبح مشهورا

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. By 2015 three schools.....in our town.

- a) will be built b) will build c) will have been built d) will have built

2. I.....Ali tomorrow morning.

- a) will have been met b) will meet c) will be met d) will have met

3. In the future, every new book.....as an e-book.
 a) *will probably publish* b) *will have been published*
 c) *will probably be published* d) *will have published*
4. Governmental organizations.....credit cards by 2015.
 a) *will have used* b) *will have been used* c) *will use* d) *will be used*
5. In four years' time, most of the old buildings.....by modern offices.
 a) *will replace* b) *will have been replaced* c) *will be replaced* d) *will have replaced*
6. In the future, most of our energy.....with wind power.
 a) *will replace* b) *will have been replaced* c) *will be replaced* d) *will have replaced*
7. Surgeons operations by using robots in the near future.
 a) *will have performed* b) *will have been performed*
 c) *will be performed* d) *will perform*
8. I think most bestsellers.....as e-books in the near future.
 a) *will read* b) *will have read* c) *will be read* d) *will have been read*
9. The government.....new school next year.
 a) *will have built* b) *will build* c) *will be built* d) *will have been built*
10. In the near future petrol and oil.....as much as they are today.
 a) *won't have used* b) *won't use* c) *won't be used* d) *won't have been used*
11. I'm sure that hethe mission well.
 a) *will be done* b) *will have done* c) *will do* d) *will have been done*
12. This project.....by the end of next month.
 a) *will complete* b) *will be completed* c) *will have been completed* d) *will have completed*
13. The exam.....by 3 o'clock tomorrow.
 a) *will be finished* b) *will have finished* c) *have been finished* d) *will finish*
14. By the time you get home, I.....the house .
 a) *will have been cleaned* b) *will be cleaned* c) *will clean* d) *will have cleaned*
15. By 2050, petrol cars.....by electric cars.
 a) *will have replaced* b) *will replace* c) *will have been replaced* d) *will be replaced*
16. This programmeon T. V next week.
 a) *appears* b) *will be appeared* c) *will appear* d) *will have been appeared*
17. Scientists should put plans.....the future of the world.
 a) *at* b) *of* c) *for* d) *in*
18. I predict that, mobile phones.....in Egypt in the near future.
 a) *will make* b) *will have made* c) *will be made* d) *will have been made*
19. The new underground railway lineby 2012.
 a) *will have been built* b) *will have built* c) *will be built* d) *will build*
20. People expect that the price of phone calls.....next year.
 a) *will reduce* b) *will be reduced* c) *will have reduced* d) *will have been reduced*
21. I.....my education in two years' time.
 a) *will be finished* b) *will finish* c) *will have finished* d) *will have been finished*
22. By the end of this year, the government the problem of power.....shortage.
 a) *will have solved* b) *will solve* c) *will be solved* d) *a) will have been solved*
23. The drug.....be produced by the Beatrix drug company.
 a) *will* b) *was* c) *is* d) *are*
24. I'm sure, more food.....to get over food crisis.
 a) *will produce* b) *may produce* c) *may be produced* d) *will be produced*
25. It is expected that the government.....taxes again.
 a) *will be raised* b) *will have raised* c) *will raise* d) *will be raising*
26. By the time you receive this letter, I.....my final exams.
 a) *will have been finishing* b) *will have finished* c) *will be finished* d) *will be finishing*
27. The money, I'll borrow from the bank,.....in three months' time.
 a) *must repay* b) *must be repaid* c) *will have been repaid* d) *will repay*
28. The author.....his political book by the end of the week.
 a) *will have been published* b) *will have published* c) *will be published* d) *will publish*
29. I.....this essay in two hours' time.
 a) *will write* b) *will have written* c) *written* d) *will have been written*
30. Grapes.....by the end of July.
 a) *will have been harvested* b) *will harvest* c) *will have harvested* d) *will be harvested*
31. The new underground railway line by 2018.
 a) *will build* b) *will be built* c) *will have built* d) *will have been built*

32. I think most bestsellersas e-books.
a) will be read b) will be reading c) win have been read d) will read
33. By Friday, a decision.....
a) will make b) will be made c) will have been made d) win be making
34. The furniture.....tomorrow.
a) will deliver b) win be delivered c) will have delivered d) is delivered
35. Imy exams by the end of August.
a) will finish b) finish c) will have finished d) finished
36. With the help of robots I surgeons.....operations .
a) will perform b) will be performed c) will have performed d) will be performing
37. This problem.....as soon as possible.
a) will discuss b) will be discussing c) will have discussed d) will be discussed
38. Vast areas of desert landby the government.
a)will reclaim b) will be reclaiming c) will be reclaimed d) will have reclaimed
39. By the end of this year T more houses.....for young people and newly married.
a) will build b) will have been built c) will have building d) will be building
40. In the coming years, pollution.....
a) will be eliminated b) would eliminate c) will eliminate d) will have been eliminated
41. I predict that in future, mobile phones.....smaller.
a) will make b) will be made c) will be making d) are making
42. By this time next week, I.....my test results.
a) will hear b) will be heard c) will have heard d) will have been heard

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1.A lot of projects will carry out by 2020.
- 2.A new city will be built outside Cairo by 2020.
- 3.Ahmed will have been completed his studies by the end the year.
- 4.Ali hopes he will travelled all over the world by the time he's thirty.
- 5.By 10 o'clock, Soha will be reached her destination.
- 6.By 2045 Electric car will exchange petrol ones.
- 7.By the time the firemen arrive, the fire destroys the building.
- 8.By the time you get back, I will had tidied it up.
- 9.Come early to work or you'll dismiss.
10. Cutting on trees damages the environment.
11. Do you think you will be passed your exams? - I hope I will.
12. Engineers will not be finished the new road.
13. He will given a prize by the teacher.
14. He will tell about his exam result tomorrow.
15. Hundreds of towns will be built by 20100.
16. I expect solar heating will have been used in homes on a large scale.
17. I finish this job by 10 p.m. tomorrow
18. I had to do the whole job of my own.
19. I think Huda will have gone home soon.
20. I will have been finished this mission by eleven o'clock tomorrow.
21. I will have collected you from Peter's house on my way home.
22. I will move to my new house by the end of October.
23. I'm sure you'll have had a wonderful holiday next summer.
24. In a months time, the problem of water will be settled.
25. In the future, more electricity will generate from wind power.
26. In the future, some cities will be building under the sea.
27. In the near future, most of our shopping will have done on the internet.
28. Inflation increases by 1% over the next twelve months.
29. More cities will build in the desert by the year 2020.
30. More money will spent on education.
31. More of the music we listen to will be downloading from the internet.
32. Most bestsellers will be reads as e-books.
33. Most farmers dry the seeds of plants on the sun. .
34. Music will be downloading easily and quickly.
35. My brother is enthusiastic for travelling abroad.
36. My car will have repaired in an hour.
37. My sister's wedding dress will buy tomorrow.

38. Newspapers will publish rarely.
39. Perhaps we'll have seen Mona at school at the party tomorrow.
40. Peter was going to buy a bookcase, but in the end he made one itself.
41. Petrol cars will have been replaced by electric cars by 2050.
42. Planting more trees is good to the environment.
43. Prices have increased with 10% last month.
44. Sarah will finish decorating the Christmas tree by midnight.
45. She got someone cleaned the house.
46. The animal had been left in the house by it for a week.
47. The building will complete by next year.
48. The conference will be held at 9 o'clock.
49. The contract will have been checked before signing it.
50. The letter will have been typed by the secretary before 5 pm.
51. The number of car accidents will be cut by the new road.
52. The price of phone calls will be reduced by 50%.
53. There will be published fewer traditional newspapers.
54. They will have finished their meeting by four o'clock this afternoon.
55. This bridge will have been completed by next year.
56. This painting is going to be exhibited at the art gallery.
57. This problem should be solved soon.
58. Traditional books will never be replaced completely.
59. We haven't had the roof repaired yet.
60. We will make a decision concerning opening the new factory by Friday.
61. What will be done to solve this problem?
62. You'll be receiving an e-mail giving full details next Monday.

Test 15

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

1. A friend asks you if you think people will read books in a hundred years time.
2. A friend asks you if you think people will have their own spaceships in 50 years.
3. A friend uses the words you don't understand the meanings of them.
4. In a conversation, a friend uses the word "gadget", you don't understand the word.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function each of the following mini-dialogues

1- A: I want some information about paper-making.

B: Go to the computer and find out where the relevant references are kept. B: Thanks.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

2- A: Are the pharaohs the first to make paper, sir?

B: No, the Chinese.

A: What did the pharaohs use for writing?

B: Papyrus.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. By the time he back home, I will have finished all the exercises.
a- had come b- comes c- is coming d- will come
2. He blamed for what had happened.
a- himself b- myself c- yourself d- itself
3. By the end of the month, I all my exams.
a- shall have taken b- take c- am taking d- takes
4. We want to have our car
a- repainting b- to repaint c- repainted d- be repainted
5. My father is a golf He plays and watches it on TV whenever he can.
a- enthusiasm b- enthusiast c- enthusiastic d- enthuse
6. A is the flat, glass part of a television or computer.

- a- screen b- scream c- cream d- siren*
7. Is this shirt in a larger size?
a- achievable b- available c- avoidable d- applicable
8. We have decided that your contact next month.
a- will not be renewed b- will not be renewing c- was not renewed d- has not been renewed
9. Sitting too long at the computer your back and arms ache.
a- will be made b- will be making c- will make d- is made
10. Running too many programs at the same time the computer crash.
a- will probably make b- will probably be made c- is probably made d- has probably been made
11. The project out by 2028.
a- was carried b- will have been carried c- will be carrying d- will have been carrying
12. That play is very popular. You'd better check the of tickets.
a- ability b- availability c- advisability d- ambiguity
13. A is a small tool or machine that helps you do something.
a- gadget b- budget c- garment d- glove
14. To is to move information from one part of a computer system to another.
a- download b- overload c- boatload d- workload
15. An person shows a lot of interest and excitement about something.
a- enthusiasm b- enthusiast c- enthusiastic d- enthuse
16. A is a book with a soft paper cover.
a- drawback b- backpack c- feedback d- paperback

4. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

- 1- A meeting will hold next Tuesday at 3 p.m.
- 2- A recent medical report has predicted that increasing numbers of people in developed countries will be suffered from high blood pressure.
- 3- By the time we get there, Jim leaves.
- 4- He looked at her with a literature of admiration and curiosity.
- 5- He sought a piece of cotton in water and used it to clean the wound.
- 6- Reciting is important to help protect our environment.

(C) Reading

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions

Many people believe the legend that there is a curse on the tomb of Tutankhamen. The tomb of Tutankhamen was discovered by Lord Carnarvon in 1920. He died from blood poisoning three months after opening the tomb. No one would have thought his death had anything to do with the tomb if it had not been for a letter from the writer Marie Corelli to the New York World newspaper. In this letter she said, that, she owned a book which told the story of the curse. Not long after the death of Lord Carnarvon, an American who said he had caught a cold while visiting the tomb, also died.

As time passed, the list of people who had been 'punished' by the curse grew and for many people there was too much evidence for the story to be ignored. However, a number of facts have been forgotten. In 1982 an American policeman who had a heart attack claimed it was because he had spent time looking after the Tutankhamen Exhibition in San Francisco. He was not believed when it was discovered that another man who had actually slept in the tomb while guarding it for seven years was not only alive but in good health. Thus the idea of the curse was proved to be a fallacy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What made the people think that Lord Carnarvon's death was caused by the curse of Tutankhamen?
2. Why did the man sleep in the tomb of Tutankhamen for seven years?
3. Do you really think there is a curse in the tomb of Tutankhamen? Why?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

4. Lord Carnarvon died of.....
a) the curse of the tomb. b) blood pressure c) an accident. d) blood poisoning.
5. Many people could not ignore the story of the curse because
a) they had no evidence, at that time. b) They had too much evidence, at that time.
c) they failed to find any evidence. d) they managed to prove that it was evident.

6. Read the following passage then answer the questions

Dr. Christina is one of a team of doctors who work in the Amazon Forest. They work to find out about the methods which local people use to treat diseases. Local people use medicines which come from plants, and the team want to know about these plants and study them to find the active component. Then they plan to experiment with them. Plant medicines were used for treating illnesses very long ago, and they are still common in many parts of the world. These plant medicines are safer and cheaper than scientific medicines and they work just as well for many diseases.

However, many people still use scientific medicines. Dr. Christina says that we are too dependent on scientific medicines which can be very dangerous and make people ill. Some diseases have become resistant to them. If the medicines stop killing bacteria and viruses, then they are more dangerous than useful. Many doctors do not recommend plant medicines, but this is because they do not understand them. Dr. Christina says, "We are learning about forest plants so that we can teach city people to use them." She thinks we should use plant medicines for most of our illnesses, and keep scientific medicines for treating dangerous diseases.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What does Dr. Christina do at the Amazon Forest?
2. When can scientific medicines be dangerous?
3. What does the underlined word "them" refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

4. Plant medicines are ----- scientific ones for treating many diseases.
a) more effective than b) less effective than
c) as effective as d) more dangerous than
5. ----- use plant medicines more than other people.
a) Doctors and pharmacists b) city people
c) Forest people d) The medical school students

D- The Prisoner of Zenda

7) (A) Answer the following questions:

1. What three pieces of news arrive at Tarlenheim the next day?
2. Why do Rassendyll and the others go to the castle at night?
3. Why does Rassendyll kill Max Holf?
4. Why do the seven gentlemen go with Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz to the castle? What do they do?

B) Read the following quotation. then answer the questions

"I hear there are new servants at the castle. Do these servants know the King's a prisoner there?"

1. Who says this to Johann?
2. What does Johann answer?
3. Why is that important?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly :

1. Rupert offers to help rescue the King.
2. Rassendyll tells Johann to open the front door of the mansion at midnight.

E- Writing

8) Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

"Computers"

F- Translation

a) Translate into Arabic :

CD ROMS are computer disks which can store a mass of information. CD-ROMS can contain word, music and still and moving pictures. Many people say that we will have our own libraries of CD-ROMS, containing all the reference books and other things.

b) Translate into English:

- كان القدماء المصريون يستخدمون ورق البردي للكتابة والرسم .

- الموسوعة هي مجموعة من الكتب التي تتعامل مع كل فرع من فروع المعرفة الإنسانية .

Unit 16 - Finding Work

academic qualifications	مؤهلات علمية	morale	الروح المعنوية
achieve	يحقق	natural talent	موهبة طبيعية
achievement	إنجاز	neighbourhood	منطقة سكنية / سكان المنطقة
acquire	يكتسب	neighbourly	ودود / مُعين
ambition	الطمح	neighbours	الجيران
ambitious	طموح	obvious errors	أخطاء واضحة
annihilate	يبيد / يفتي	paid holiday	أجازة مدفوعة الأجر
applicant	متقدم (لوظيفة مثلا)	part-time job	وظيفة مؤقتة
application	طلب التحاق	personal details	تفاصيل شخصية
appointment	موعد / تعيين	personal skills	مهارات شخصية
basic / essential skills	مهارات أساسية	personnel manager	مدير شئون العاملين
bonus	علاوة (للموظفين)	pharmaceutical company	شركة أدوية
certificate	شهادة	pharmacy	صيدلية
conscience	الضمير	place of residence	محل الإقامة
conscientious	مجتهد في عمله / حي	practical skills	مهارات عملية
conversely	بشكل مضاد أو معكوس	promote	يرقي
customer service	خدمة العملاء	promotion	ترقية
CV = curriculum vitae	السيرة الذاتية	provoke	يستفز
day-care centre	مركز رعاية أطفال/كبار	representative	مندوب / ممثل
deadline	الموعد النهائي	reputable	حسن السمعة
desirable	مرغوب	reputation	سمعة
enquiries	استفسارات	sales experience	خبرة في المبيعات
experience with	خبرة في التعامل مع	sick leave	أجازة مرضية
financial donations	تبرعات مالية	skilful	ماهر
fluency	الطلاقة	sociable	اجتماعي
fluent	طلق / فصيح (في لغة)	stubborn	عنيد
formally	بشكل رسمي	technical skills	مهارات فنية
full-time job	وظيفة دائمة	Temporize	يماطل (في اتخاذ قرار أو إبداء رأي)
go bankrupt	يُفلس	tempt	يُغري
grade	درجة / مرتبة / صف دراسي	the general public	عامة الجمهور
hard skills	مهارات مكتسبة (بالتدريب والدراسة)	the medical profession	مهنة الطب
health professionals	العاملين في مجال الصحة	the Nile Delta	دلتا نهر النيل
hire = employ	يوظف	trainee	متدرب
job interview	مقابلة للحصول على وظيفة	trainee accountant	محاسب متدرب
make profits	يحقق أرباحا	undermine the economy	يفوض / يضعف الاقتصاد
mental abilities	القدرات العقلية	vacancy	وظيفة خالية / غرفة خالية
modular degree	درجة أو شهادة في جزء من مقرر دراسي	Well- established	ذات مكانة مرموقة / موجودة لفترة طويلة
Module	وحدة دراسية / جزء من مقرر دراسي	well-organised	منظم جدا

Words & antonyms

ambitious	طمّوح	lazy	كسول
conscious	واعي	unconscious	فاقد الوعي
deride	يسخر من	respect	يحترم
established	راسخة ومعروفة (لوجودها منذ فترة طويلة)	unknown	غير معروف
extinguish (a fire)	يطفى	light (a fire)	يشعل
nasty	سيء	nice / lovely	جميل / لطيف
neighbourly	ودي	unfriendly	غير ودي
sociable	اجتماعي	unsociable / introvert	غير اجتماعي / منطوي
well-organised	منظم تنظيما جيدا	poorly organised	منظم تنظيما سيئا

Expressions

a long way from	على مسافة بعيدة من	have a good command of	لديه إلمام جيد بـ
an interview for	مقابلة من أجل ..	have access to	يمكنه الحصول على أو الوصول إلى..
an interview with	مقابلة مع شخص	make for = head for	يتجه إلى
apply for (a job / a visa)	يتقدم بطلب للحصول على	make out	يري / يسمع / يفهم شيء بصعوبة
be in existence	يكون موجودا	make up for	يُعوّض
care about	يهتم بـ	paper shop	محل بيع الصحف
compete against	يتنافس ضد	relevant to	متصل بـ / ملانم لـ
deal with	يتعامل مع / يتناول /	reply to	يرد على
focus on	يركز على	score excellent	يحصل على تقدير امتياز
get into university	يلتحق بالجامعة	work experience	خبرة العمل
get on with	ينسجم / يكون على علاقة جيدة	work in a job	يعمل في وظيفة

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adj.
apply	يتقدم بطلب	applicant	طلب - application	
appoint	يعين / يوظف	appointment	موعد / تعيين	appointed
		appointee	الشخص المعين (في وظيفة)	معين
consume	يستهلك	consumption	الاستهلاك	consuming
interview	يجري مقابلة	interview	مقابلة	الشخص الذي يجري المقابلة
		interviewer	الشخص الذي تجري له المقابلة	
organise	ينظم	organisation	تنظيم	organised
prepare	يستعد / يجهز	preparation	استعداد / تجهيز	prepared
qualify	يؤهل / يتأهل	qualification	مؤهل	qualified
result in	يؤدي إلى	result	نتيجة	resultant
result from	ينتج عن			
train	يدرّب / يتدرب	trainer	مُدرب - trainee	trained
		training	التدريب	مُدرب

Definitions

ambitious	determined to be successful or powerful	طموح
applicant	Someone who has formally asked for a job, a place at a college etc, especially by writing a letter.	متقدم لوظيفة
conscientious	showing a lot of care and attention	حي الضمير
CV	A document that describes your education and the jobs that you have done, used when you are trying to get a new job.	السيرة الذاتية
established	Describing a company, organisation , etc, that has been in existence for a long time.	راسخ / عريق
pharmacy	A store or a part of a store where medicines are prepared and sold.	صيدلية
sociable	Friendly, liking to be with other people.	ودود
well-organised	Good at organising the things you have to do.	منظم جيدا
achievement	something important that you achieve (do)	إنجاز
fluent	Able to speak or write a language very well without stopping or making mistakes.	لديهطلاقة اللسان
module	One of the parts that a course of study is divided into.	جزء من مقرر
neighbourhood	A small area of a town or the people who live there.	الجوار
skill	An ability to do something well, especially because you have practiced it.	مهارة
trainee	Someone who is being trained for a job.	متدرب

Language Notes

- لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

ASAP	as soon as possible	Kph	kilometer per hour
B.Sc.	bachelor of science	M.Sc.	Master of science
BA	bachelor of arts	mph	mile per hour
cm	centimetre	p/t	part time
Co.	company	Phd	doctor of philosophy
DOB	date of birth	Prof.	professor
Dr.	doctor	rd.	road
f/t	full time	St.	street
GSEC	General Secondary Education Certificate	Tel. no.	telephone number
IT	information technology	wk	week / work

- Interview مقابلة شخصية (للموظفة) / مقابلة (إذاعية / تليفزيونية / صحفية)

- He has an interview next Thursday for a job.

- Appointment موعد / ميعاد

- She has an appointment to see the doctor.

- conference مؤتمر

- Ten ministers attended the Peace Conference.

- apply for يتقدم بطلب (للحصول على وظيفة / تأشيرة / جنسية / مكان في الجامعة ، الخ)

- She is going to apply for citizenship next month.

- apply in person يتقدم بالطلب شخصياً

- You should apply immediately, in person or by letter.

- apply in writing يقدم الطلب كتابةً

- Apply in writing and we will phone you later.

- apply to + inf. .. يتقدم بطلب لكي ..

- He has applied to join the police.

- apply يُطبق

- Some of the children seem unable to apply what they have learned.

- apply to + n ينطبق على

- The offer only applies to flights from London and Manchester.

- apply to + n يتقدم بالطلب إلى

- I applied to four universities and was accepted by all of them.

- applicant المتقدم (بطلب كتابي) للحصول على (وظيفة / جنسية / تأشيرة / منحة / قرض)

- She was one of 10 applicants for the job.

- on time = punctual, not late في الوقت المحدد - بدون تأخير

- The train arrived on time.

- in time=early enough / soon enough في الوقت المناسب

- He was in time for the 7 o'clock train.

-Wages أجور (عمال مثلاً) بالساعة أو اليوم أو الأسبوع

- The workers went on strike for higher wages.

-Salary مرتب شهري أو سنوي

-This bank manager gets a salary of 40,000 dollars a year.

-Fare أجرة مواصلات

- Taxi fare

- bus fare

- plane fare

-Fees رسوم أو أتعاب

- lawyer's fees

- school fees

رسوم مدرسية

- لاحظ استخدام كلمة project بمعنيين مختلفين:

- Do a (history) project - Carry out a project (مشاريع / تجاري / صناعي ، مثلاً) يقوم بإعداد بحث أو دراسة في موضوع معين

- candidate مرشح (لوظيفة / في الانتخابات) متقدم لامتحان ما

- There are only three candidates for the job.

- Candidates are not allowed to use a calculator in this exam.

- nominee - مرشح (رسمياً) لوظيفة هامة أو جائزة

- He was the only nominee for the presidency.

- لاحظ ما يلي:

- as + adj. + a/an + n. as

-These days, women have as good an education as men.

- so + adj. + a/an + n. + that

-It was so hot a day that I could hardly work.

so + adj./adv. + that + sentence

- لاحظ استخدام so ... that مع much / many / little / few ونستخدم such مع a lot of

-There was so much smoke that they couldn't see.

- She had so little money that she couldn't buy the dress.

- في حالة وجود very تحذف:

- The blouse was very nice. I couldn't resist buying it.

= The blouse was so nice that I couldn't resist buying it.

- Shima ran very quickly. She could catch the train.
= Shima ran so quickly that she could catch the train.

Such (a/an) + adj. + n. + that + sentence

- تستخدم a/an في حالة وجود اسم مفرد يعد:

- Hany was a stupid boy. He failed all the exams.
= Hany was such a stupid boy that he failed all the exams.
- The furniture he bought was so wonderful that everyone admired it.
= It was such wonderful furniture that everyone admired it.

- لاحظ عدم استخدام a بعد such لأن كلمة furniture لا تعد:

- في حالة عدم وجود اسم noun نستخدم اسم مناسب :

- He was so reckless طائش/متهور that he had a terrible accident.
= He was such a reckless driver that he had a terrible accident.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام اسم noun فقط مع such في بعض الحالات

such (a/an) + noun + that..

- Hossam was a coward. He ran away from the cat.
= Hossam was such a coward that he ran away from the cat.
- Mustafa was a gentleman. He helped the old lady.
= Mustafa was such a gentleman that he helped the old lady.

Adj./Adv. + enough + (for + n. / pron. ضمير) + to-inf.

- He was rich. He could buy an expensive car.
= He was rich enough to buy an expensive car.

- تستخدم enough قبل الاسم:

- She didn't have enough courage to tell him the truth.

- تستخدم for + noun/pron. في حالة اختلاف الفاعل في الجملتين

- The test was easy. He passed it. = - The test was easy enough for him to pass.
- The shelf was low. She could reach it. = - The shelf was low enough for her to reach.

- لاحظ أن too تفيد النفي:

Too + adj./adv. + (for + n./ pron.) to-inf.

- He was very ill. He could not go to school. = - He was too ill to go to school.
- تستخدم for + noun/pron. في حالة اختلاف الفاعل في الجملتين:
- The test was difficult. He couldn't pass it. = - The test was too difficult for him to pass.
- لكي نستخدم enough بدلاً من too ننفي الفعل و نستخدم عكس الصفة والعكس :
- He didn't walk quickly enough to catch the bus. = - He walked too slowly to catch the bus.
- He was too ill to go to school. = - He was not well enough to go to school.

language functions

Questions often used during interviews

Questions	Answers
Do you / Can you (speak English)?	Yes, I (speak) can speak it very well.
Have you passed (your driving test)?	Yes, I have.
Do you have (a driving licence)?	Yes, I do.
What have you been doing since (you left university)?	I have been working as ...
Could you tell me why you want to work for us?	Because I have the right qualifications for this job.
Why do you think you'd be good at the job?	I'm (a sociable person, so I'll enjoy meeting and talking to customers).

Exercises

Respond the following situations:

- 1- An interviewer asks if you would work some evenings during the week. You would be happy to do this.
- 2- You want to be able to contact a person you have just met., but you do not have their details.
- 3- You want to know whether someone you are interviewing can drive.
- 4- Your friend is applying for a new job. This is a surprise and you ask him the reason.

- Mention the place , the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1- A: How can I help you? B: My car has been stolen. A: How?
 B: I parked it in front of my house last night. In the morning it wasn't there.
 A: What make is it? B: BMW.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

- 2- A: How much are these two books? B: Fifty pounds. A: Here you are.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. DOB refers to.....of birth.
 a. date b. nationality c. place d. address
2. The applicant must have a/anappearance.
 a. ugly b. unfriendly c. strange d. smart
3. Reham's job is.....,it lasts only for a limited time.
 a. vacant b. constant c. temporary d. permanent
4. This form needs to be filledto get this job.
 a. up b. in c. on d. with
5. At the moment, Mr Sadek is training to be an.....
 a. accountant b. accountancy c. account d. accounting
6. My son won a prize at school.....English language.
 a. in b. for c. with d. of
7. To pass the test, you must complete three.....
 a. models b. modeling c. modules d. molecules
8. All applicants should be.....30 years old. More than this is not accepted.
 a. on b. under c. over d. in
9. Ali is the most.....student in the class. He works hard and cares about what he does.
 a. unreliable b. conscientious c. ignorant d. illiterate
10. I need some medicine. Is there a nearby.....?
 a. work shop b. laundry c. pharmacy d. studio
11. My sister is a.....nurse at our local hospital. She Will get her qualification next year.
 a. trainer b. trainee c. training d. trained
12. Kasim is the most.....player in our team.
 a. skill b. skillfully c. beautiful d. skilful
13. When I go to university, I'm going to.....a modular science degree.
 a. do b. play c. make d. give
14. My daughter has the right.....for a job.
 a. imagination b. accommodation c. kinds d. qualifications
15. To apply.....a job, you must complete this form .
 a. in b. to c. fur d. on
16. Medical.....are needed for multi-national company in all governorate
 a. documents b. representatives Co hosts d. guides
17. Which qualifications and personal.....are necessary for this job?
 a. qualities b. quantities c. duties d. interests
18. Interested applicants are kindly requested to send theirto the mentioned address.
 a. PhD b. MSC c. CV d. sse
19. He speaks English easily and smoothly. He is.....

- a. caring b. friendly c. fluent d. affluent
20. All applicants should.....a driving licence to be able to move freely.
a. catch b. receive c. extract d. hold
21. 8)Without having excellent computer....., you won't be accepted for the job.
a. skills b. interests c. hobbies d. awards
22. You are not allowed to drive as long as you don't.....a driving test.
a. hold b. write c. pass d. strip
23. The people in this part of town are always.....,especially in time of need.
a. neighbouring b. neighbourly c. neighbours d. neighbourhood
24. Even though he has only been here for six months, he can speak English.....
a. carelessly b. slowly c. badly d. fluently
25. My father has.....many things to be proud of in his life.
a. succeeded b. made c. achieved d. contributed
26. Everyone of our.....is so friendly. They get on with each other.
a. enemies b. neighbourhood c. neighbours d. opponents
27. A secondary school in the United States is calledSchool.
a. High b. Low c. Primary d. Preparatory
28. China, Japan and other countries in East and South East Asia are called the.....East.
a. farther b. nearest c. farthest d. Far
29. Handicapped children are very bad at.....achievement.
a. academy b. academic c. epidemic d. acceptable
30. Our school is very....., the staff and students are always on time.
a. organised b. untidy c. beautiful d. ugly
31. Hospitals look for.....young people to train to get on with their patients.
a. social b. political c. sociable d. lazy
32. Our family has a.....business. It was started by my grandfather in 1935.
a. well cooked b. well -established c. well-done d. well-organised
33. When they are applying for a job, some people start theirwith personal details, others put their qualifications first.
a. CV b. GM c. SA d. PhD
34. Most of the houses in our.....are quite old.
a. neighbouring b. neighbourly c. neighbours d. neighbourhood
35. Getting into university would be my greatest.....
a. management b. measurement c. contribution d. achievement
36. I enjoy.....people from other countries.
a. meeting b. hurting c. quarrelling d. disturbing
37. In order to sell a new product, you need to..... it in the right way.
a. promise b. prolong c. promote d. progress
38. Master of Science is abbreviated into.....
a. PhD b. CV c. BA d. MSC
39. The high.....prompted her to apply for the job.
a. temperature b. wall c. salary d. fence
40. Mr. Mohammed is a.....of Minia university. Faculty of Arts.
a. graduate b. graduating c. graduated d. graduation
41. To do well in an exam means to get a high.....
a. degree b. grade c. training d. education
42. My brother has a successful.....in politics.
a. care b. cargo c. carrier d. career
43. Everyone should.....his skills to be promoted.
a. delay b. reduce c. develop d. downgrade
44. All of us should raise money for.....
a. cinemas b. dubs c. theatres d. charities
45. Thanks to....., the worlD has become a small village.
a. BSC b. DOB c. IT d. PhD
46. Which.....would you do at university club?
a. facilities b. languages c. contacts d. sports
47. One of the skills an applicant should have, is using Micro soft office.....Word and Excel.
a. as b. like c. just as d. such
48. If the applicant does not have....., he can't achieve his goals.
a. ambitious b. ambitions c. agreement d. obligation
49. Some people refuse to be promoted as they don't have.....qualities.
a. leadership b. citizenship c. relationship d. friendship

50. Many people might move if they were.....a good job.
a. afforded b. appointed c. done d. offered
51. Is a good a prerequisite of success?
a. ignorance b. education c. illiteracy d. driving
52. All applicants should wear.....to be accepted for the job .
a. politely b. unfashionably c. smartly d. wrongly
53. If you have the right qualifications, which job would you.....to do?
a. prefer b. hate c. dislike d. detest
54. He was awarded a prize.....highest grade in finance module.
a. in b. at c. for d. on
55. Who's the.....of the French team?
a. headmaster b. principal c. officer d. captain
56. My little daughter is in Fadl school,.....3, primary stage.
a. degree b. graded c. grade d. gradually
57. Which skills are needed to succeedthis kind of work?
a. at b. on c. in d. of
58. Who is the present minister of?
a. finance b. finances c. financial d. financially
59. Being a good leader is a skill.
a. useless b. simple c. valueless d. personal
60. Employers look.....hard and personal skills.
a. at b. on c. for d. after

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. A CV is usually the first contract between employers and applicants.
2. After a year in France, she was affluent in French.
3. Ahmed hasn't been fully trained yet. He is still a trainer.
4. Do you have a driver licence?
5. During his carefree, he wrote more than fifty plays.
6. Employers look at both hard skill and personal skills.
7. From your PhD, employers know whether you are relevant to the job or not.
8. He got the highest mark in finance module.
9. He has earned a lot of useful experience.
10. He has much experiment in using micro soft office.
11. He regularly works for charitable.
12. He works in a neighbourly day-care centre .
13. I have travelled all over Europe. My ambitious is to visit the Far East.
14. I wish I were as organiser as you are.
15. I would prefer to work as a customer service agency for a big company.
16. It doesn't matter for me whether the new born is a boy or a girl.
17. It is important for sick people to have excess to the latest drugs available.
18. I've been working as a sales presenter in my uncle's pharmacy .
19. Mr Salah won a prize in English.
20. MSC is the highest university degree one can get.
21. My uncle's company is an establishing one with a very good reputation.
22. On applying for a job, you have to state your interested and hobbies.
23. Reham gives her work a lot of care and attention. She is a conscious worker .
24. Social people enjoy meeting and talking to other people.
25. The meetings of the leaders have projected good relations between the two countries.
26. The pilot of the ship drowned during a storm.
27. This company has a good repulsion in the medical profession .
28. What is your experience on computers?
29. What qualities which do you a good leader?
30. Why are you applying to a new job?

Translate into Arabic:

Many people like to collect things like stamps, for example. Some stamp collections are very valuable. Usually the fewer the number of people who have a stamp in their collections, the more valuable that stamp is.

.....

.....

Choosing the right job is important for you because you need to enjoy your work. However , you must know that employers will also choose you. They usually prefer clever and reliable persons to careless or ignorant ones.

Translate into English:

- إن حفلات الزفاف مناسبات هامة في كل بلد ، وهناك تقاليد للزفاف تختلف باختلاف البلد.

- مهارات الحاسب الآلي ضرورية للغاية لأداء الكثير من الأعمال في الوقت الحالي.

-المتقدمون لهذه الوظيفة يجب أن يحملوا شهادة جامعية ويجيدوا الإنجليزية .

Grammar

Direct & Indirect speech

الكلام المباشر والغير مباشر

تم شرح الموضوع بالكامل في الوحدة الثامنة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Mary.....me that she was moving to Cornwall the following year.
a) said b) told c) asked d) advised
2. The teacher.....the pupils to do the homework.
a) threatened b) offered c) promised d) reminded
3. My father asked me where he.....the newspaper.
a) can buy b) could buy c) buys d) will buy
4. Farid said that he couldn't accompany me as he.....work to do.
a) has b) will c) would d) had
5. Manal.....that she had taken my wallet .
a) denied b) promised c) begged d) offered
6. The criminal.....that he had committed the crime alone.
a) demanded b) threatened c) admitted d) offered
7. I asked the technician.....he had fixed my computer.
a) to b) if c) why d) that
8. Nancy.....me what I would buy for her birthday.
a) asked b) said c) begged d) ordered
9. My brother agreed.....me his digital camera .
a) to lending b) to be lent c) to be lending d) to lend
10. Most tourists.....that the hotel was too much expensive
a) complained b) suggested c) invited d) begged
11. My brother.....to tell Mum if I didn't stop making noise.
a) pleased b) threatened c) begged d) offered
12. Mr Sadekto drive me into the city centre.
a) said b) threatened c) ordered d) agreed
13. I asked Ramy if Ia look at his photo album.
a) may have b) will have c) might have d) can have
14. The scientist asserts that thereno life on other planets.
a) was b) had been c) would d) is
15. The young man said that he.....any more work the following day.
a) can't do b) couldn't do c) won't do d) hasn't done

16. I asked the tourist.....he was going to stay in Cairo.
a) how long b) how old c) how far d) how fast
17. The expert said that hea way of sending priceless message to other people in the near future.
a) would invent b) invented c) will invent d) had invented
18. The doctor asked the fat man he exercised.
a) how old b) how high c) how often d) how many
19. They said that they.....early the next morning.
a) had been leaving b) would leave c) had left d) will leave
20. She encouraged.....the job.
a) to take b) that Frank should take c) Frank to take d) to Frank to take
21. They directed that the building.....
a) be pulled down b) to be pulled down c) should be pulled down d) should pull down
22. She.....her holiday in Finland.
a) told me about b) said about c) said me about d) told about
23. My brother asked me.....I had heard the latest news.
a) if b) what c) that d) to
24. She reminded.....
a) what to do b) me what I have to do c) what I had to do d) me what to do
25. The night before police said that they.....the missing girl.
a) had found b) have found c) find d) were finding
26. My boss said that the mapson the table the day before.
a) have been b) are c) were d) had been
27. He asked me.....I wanted a packet of biscuit or not.
a) that b) whether c) how d) what
28. The guard warned us.....touch the fire alarms once more.
a) to b) if c) that d) not to
29. My brother said that he.....on holiday the following week.
a) will go b) will be going c) was going d) is going
30. Maner.....that the sweet factory was on fire.
a) said b) asked c) wondered d) ordered
31. Norame to show her the castle.
a) wanted b) advised c) warned d) said
32. My mother said that she.....awake all night.
a) has been b) had been c) will be d) is
33. Doha asked where she.....put the box.
a) shall b) can c) will d) should
34. She asked my advice.....subject she should study at university.
a) on to what b) as to what c) on what d) to what
35. Julie.....going shopping at the new Fairfax centre.
a) demanded b) warned c) advised d) suggested
36. He said he.....meet me at the station and told me to take a taxi.
a) couldn't b) would c) shall d) should
37. Nada said that she was going to the stadium theweek.
a) last b) next c) previous d) following
38. My teacher told me that I.....stay after school as a punishment for talking in class.
a) might b) had to c) have to d) will
39. Hatem.....me to have a hot drink in his house.
a) suggested b) said c) invited d) warned
40. My friend.....to pick me up from the airport.
a) promised b) said c) invited d) asked
41. She wanted to know if I.....a driving licence.
a) have b) has c) have had d) had ,
42. She asked me whether my uncle.....I was trying to find another job.
a) know b) knows c) knew d) has known
43. She asked me why Ito work for their company.
a) wanted b) was wanting c) want d) have wanted
44. She wanted to know.....feel about working in another part of the ' country.
a) how I will b) how I would c) how will I d) how would
45. He asked him how long.....working in that bank.
a) has he been b) had he been c) he has been d) he had been

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Ahmed told me he is writing his autobiography then,
2. Ali said that he had gone there to get some groceries, but the store was closed until tomorrow.
3. Can you tell me what is your code number?
4. Could you tell me if that train will stop at Leeds?
5. Do you know where the post office was?
6. Doaa asked salwa if she'll like to go out for a change.
7. Hassan told me that he was given promotion the week before.
8. He asked me how many children I have .
9. He asked me what was my name.
10. He asked me where I have been.
11. He said that the rain has stopped.
12. I don't know where does she live .
13. I told him when he got up in the morning.
14. I wanted to know what you are doing then.
15. I wonder how much does your father's car cost.
16. I wonder if Dr Ihab was able to come to the phone.
17. I wondered where did he go to get my keys.
18. Maha asked Sally why she is making such mistakes.
19. My grandson wanted to know when I needed money or not.
20. Peter asked me that he had hired a clown to entertain all his kids.
21. She asked him if he has worked hard enough.
22. She asked if I can speak Chinese fluently.
23. She reported that she has been getting more and more annoyed by Ahmed's behaviour.
24. She told him he has caused a lot of pain to her family.
25. She told him that she'll phone him at 6 o'clock that night.
26. The doctor told me he was afraid we will have to do more tests.
27. The manager asked me what salary I will hope to receive.
28. The park attendant told us do not walk on the grass.
29. The teacher asked us that a lot of English words are borrowed from other languages.
30. They begged the teacher not to give us any homework.

Test 16

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

5. Someone asks you about your marital status.
6. The interviewer asks why you want to apply for a job.
7. You ask someone about his birth date.
8. You explain why you were absent yesterday.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function each of the following min-dialogues:

- 1- A : Can I change these pounds with dollars?
A : Pounds notes, please.

- B : How do you want it?
B : Here you are.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

- 2- A : How can I help you, sir?

- B : I'd like to report the theft of my car.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. means friendly or liking to be with other people.

a- Identifiable

b- Justifiable

c- Envidable

d- Sociable

2. A is a store or a part of a store where medicines are prepared and sold.

a- Accuracy

b- Adequacy

c- pharmacy

d- Efficiency

3. She asked me where at that time.

a- was I living

b- I were living

c- I was living

d- was I living

4. She asked me why for that job.

a- applied

b- had I applied

c- I had applied

d- did I apply

5. To get my degree, I have to complete and pass five of the six
a- modules b- ridicules c- riddles d- puzzles
6. Getting into university would be my greatest
a- abandonment b- achievement c- adjustment d- amazement
7. is the ability to do something well.
a- Spill b- Spell c- Skill d- shell
8. A is a small area of town or the people who live there.
a- neighbourhood b- fatherhood c- brotherhood d- manhood
9. He wanted to know she was married.
a- what b- whether c- unless d- weather
10. The interviewer asked Peter where
a- he had studied b- did he study c- how did he study d- had he studied
11. The asked me how long in Cairo.
a- I had been working b- did I work c- was I working d- had I been working
12. Everything happened so that I hadn't time to think.
a- quickly b- quick c- quickness d- quicken
13. I've never met well-behaved children like yours.
a- enough b- too c- such d- as
14. John is too young take driving lessons. He's only 13.
a- that b- to c- as d- so
15. A/An is someone who is being taught to do a particular job.
a- invitee b- appointee c- trainee d- referee
16. I have very poor technical Could you help me fix my computer?
a- bills b- skills c- hills d- wills

4. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. I asked her where did she go for her holiday the previous summer.
2. Many jobs today require computer stills.
3. No one would be enough foolish to lend him the money.
4. She wanted to know what do I do in my spare time.
5. The government has announced an amphibious programme to modernize the railway network.
6. They read about his attachments in the press, and were filled with pride.

(C) Reading

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions

It is most necessary for everyone to cut down on his food expenses. Since the early 1970s the cost of the food has gone up faster than the cost of all commodities and services. The increase has mounted to more than 300%.

For all Egyptian families, food is the biggest item in their monthly household. In fact, "it swallows more than half the budget of millions of low-income families. People suffer from the high prices of food a lot. How will such a state of affairs end? Is it the fate of low-income families to face starvation? Isn't there any solution?

To be sure, there is. You can reduce your food expenses at least 20% by observing the following pieces of advice. Note the food items you need when your supplies run low. Group the same kind of food together and write a list of your needs. Use you list as you shop and don't buy any items which are not included on the list. Food is sold nowadays in different forms: fresh, canned and frozen. Choose the cheapest and healthiest ones. You can buy fresh vegetables instead of frozen ones because they are cheaper and healthier. Chickens are cheaper than red meat. You can have cheese, beans and eggs instead of meat.

One last bit of advice, "Don't go shopping on an empty stomach". Shopping when you are hungry tempt you to buy things you don't really need.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How have prices increased since the 1970s?
2. How can you avoid buying unnecessary food?
3. Suggest a suitable title for this passage?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

4. As food is the biggest item in the Egyptian family budget, people should -----
a) buy all the food they like b) not buy any frozen food
c) buy only healthy and cheap food d) eat only when they are hungry
5. According to the passage, fresh vegetables are ----- than frozen ones.
A) as cheap as b) healthier than c) worse than d) more expensive than

6. Read the following passage then answer the questions

Many experts believe there are too many people in the world. Unless there are big changes in the way people think about the number of children they should have, the world's population will double

Unit 17 - Steinbeck: The Pearl

attention	اهتمام / انتباه	early childhood	الطفولة المبكرة	publicity	دعاية / شهرة / شعبية
badly paid jobs	وظائف ذات أجور متدنية	emergency	الطوارئ	purchase	يشترى
be stung by	يُلدغ من	entertainer	مقدم فقرات ترفيهية	refund	يعيد المال
be worth a lot of	تساوي الكثير من المال	flight	مضيفة طيران	renovate	يجدد
Breathing equipment	معدات أو أجهزة التنفس	force (v)	يُجبر / يُرغم	rival firm	شركة منافسة
burglar	لص (مساكين)	greed	الجشع	scorpion	عقرب
burglar alarm	إنذار ضد السرقة	greedy	جشع	scorpion sting	لدغة عقرب
burglary	سرقة (مسكن) / سطو	hyacinth	ورد النيل	scorpion venom	سم العقرب
burgle	يسطو علي (مسكن)	influential prize	جائزة هامة	script	نص الفيلم أو المسرحية
cave	كهف	lay off workers	يستغني عن العمال	sophisticated	متقدم / متطور
celebrity	شخص مشهور	make a reservation	يحجز	stinginess	شح / بُخل
censor	رقيب	martial arts	الفنون القتالية	stinging (adj.)	لاذع
civil servant	موظف حكومي	merchant	تاجر	stingy	بخيل / شحيح
comedian	ممثل كوميدي	missing car	سيارة مفقودة	subject = topic	موضوع
consultant	استشاري	oyster	محار	supervisor	مشرف
consumer society	مجتمع استهلاكي	pearl	لؤلؤ	tactful	لبق
convenient	ملائم	pedestrian	المشاة	Grapes of Wrath	عناقيد الغضب
convert	يُحول	persuade	يقنع	great depression	الكساد العظيم
correspondent	مراسل	persuasion	إقناع	throw away / out	يتخلص من شيء
creature	مخلوق	persuasive	مقنع	tournament	دورة (ألعاب)
diver	غواص	poisonous sting	لدغة سامة	treatment	علاج / معاملة
economic depression	كساد اقتصادي	private person	شخص كنوم أو	wedding present	هدية زفاف

Expressions

a correspondent for a newspaper	مراسل لصحيفة	go diving	يذهب للغوص
an expert on literature	خبير في الأدب	go into town	يذهب الى المدينة
at a rate of	بمعدل...	have the right to	له الحق في
be on someone's side	يقف الي جانب شخص	hide in a cave	يختبئ في كهف
by force	بالقوة	pay for	يدفع ثمن ..
cave in	يسقط / ينهار	sentence someone to	يحكم علي شخص بـ
compensate for	يعوض عن	take over	يستولي علي
cry out	يصرخ	tell the truth about	يقول الحقيقة
disgusted by	يشمئز من	the Nobel prize for literature	جائزة نوبل للآداب
do business with	يقوم بعمل تجاري مع	think about the problem	يفكر في المشكلة
get rid of	يتخلص من	throw (it) into the sea	يرميها في البحر
give up	يستسلم / يقلع عن	turn down	يرفض

Words & antonyms

admire	يعجب بـ	despise	يحتقر
ancestors	أسلاف / أجداد	descendants	أحفاد
catch	يقبض علي	release	يطلق سراح
fluid	سائل	solid	صلب
greedy	جشع	generous	كريم
grief	حزن	happiness	سعادة
neighbouring	مجاور	distant / remote	بعيد / نائي
reckless	متهور	careful	حذر / حريص
safety	أمان	danger / hazard	خطر
virtue	فضيلة	vice	رذيلة
wisdom	حكمة	foolishness	حمق / غباء

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adj.
acquire يكتسب	acquisition اكتساب / مكتسب	acquired مكتسب
adapt يتأقلم	adaptation تأقلم / تكيف adaptability القدرة علي التأقلم	adaptable قابل للتكيف
correspond يُراسل	correspondent مراسل (شخص) correspondence المراسلة	Corresponding ذو صلة / متعلق
depress يجعل السوق كاسدة / يصيب بالاكتئاب	depression كساد / منطقة منخفضة / اكتئاب	depressive / depressed مكتئب / كئيب
dive يغوص	diver الغوص / غواص	diving الغوص
force يجبر	force قوة	forced اضطراري / forceful قوي
publicize يقوم بالدعاية لـ	publicity دعائية / شهرة / شعبية	
sting يلدغ	sting لدغة	stinging لاذع / مليء بالنقد و الهجوم
trick يخدع	Trick خدعة	tricky خادع
value يقيم / يقدر	value قيمة	valuable = invaluable قيم valueless بلا قيمة

Definitions

cave	A large natural hole in the side of a cliff or under the ground.	كهف
celebrity	A famous person , especially an actor or entertainer	شخص مشهور
civil servant	Someone who works in the civil service(for a government department)	موظف حكومي
correspondent	Someone whose job is to report news from a distant place or write about a particular subject.	مراسل
diver	someone who swims under water with breathing equipment	غواص
economic depression	A long period when there is not a lot of business activity.	ركود اقتصادي
force	To make someone do something they do not want to do	يجبر
greed	When you want to have more money , food , power etc than you need.	طمع / جشع
merchant	Someone who buys and sells large quantities of food.	تاجر
pearl	A valuable small white round object that forms inside an oyster and is used in jewellery	لؤلؤة
publicity	Attention that someone or something gets from newspapers , TV , etc.	شعبية / شهرة
scorpion	A creature like a large insect with a curved tail that has a poisonous sting.	عقرب
stung	The past participle of the verb "sting". If an insect, animal or plant stings you, it hurts you by putting poison into your skin	ملدوغ
throw away	To get rid of something that you do not want or need.	يتخلص من
treat	To give someone medical treatment for an illness or injury	يعالج

Language Notes

- Think of = think about يفكر في / عند السؤال عن الرأي
- I'm thinking of / about building a new house.
- What do you think of / about this dress?
- Think of يتذكر / يفكر في الآخرين
- I can't think of her name now.
- You should think of other people's feelings.
- inquire / enquire (about) يستفسر
- require = need يتطلب / يحتاج
- acquire يكتسب
- He enquired about the price of tickets.
- Getting high marks requires exerting more effort.
- As long as we live, we acquire new knowledge and skills.
- Receipt إيصال
- I forgot to take the receipt of the TV.
- Bill فاتورة (كهرباء / مياه / تليفون / مطعم)
- He asked the waiter for the bill.

- لاحظ استخدام التعبيرات الآتية مع فعل tell:

tell a joke يروي نكتة	tell a story يتنبأ بما سيحدث لشخص	tell the difference يبين الفرق أو الاختلاف
tell a lie يكذب	tell fortunes يخب	tell the time يقول الحقيقة
tell a secret يُفشي سر	tell someone off يوبخ	

- لاحظ استخدام التعبيرات الآتية مع كلمة time:

a matter of time مسألة وقت	closing time وقت المغادرة	once upon a time ذات مرة
arrival time	departure time	opening time
at all times = always	free time = spare time	take your time تمهل / لا تتسرع
at the time في ذلك الوقت	from time to time أحيانا	time after time = time and time again
at times = sometimes	in no time بأسرع وقت	time's up انتهى الوقت (المحدد لعمل ما)

- يمكن استخدام الأسئلة الآتية عند السؤال عن الوقت:

- What time is it?
- What's the time?
- Do you have the time?
- Have you got the time?
- What time do you have?
- What time do you make it?

- لاحظ الجملة الآتية:

- Watching TV for two hours, I went to bed.
= After I had watched TV for two hours, I went to bed.

- Persuade- (شخصاً ليقوم بعمل شيء بإعطائه أسباب مقنعة) - I have tried to persuade her to see an oculist.
- convince (شخصاً بأن شيئاً ما صحيح) - I'm convinced myself (that) I was right.

- Steal يسرق شيء - A thief stole my bag. - The thief stole my money.
- Rob يسرق مكان - A gang robbed the bank yesterday.
- Rob somebody of something يسلب شيء من شخص - They robbed him of his money.

language functions
Persuading someone to do something

Are you sure you can't (lend him the money)?	Sorry, I really need it
Can't I persuade you to (stay with the company)?	No, I'm sorry. I've already found a new job.
I really think you should (get more sleep).	Yes, you are right. I've been working so hard recently.
Why don't you (see a doctor)?	I'll do that.
Please, (come to my party at the weekend). I'm sure you'll enjoy it.	I'd like to come, but I need to ask my parents first.
Surely the best thing to do is to (look for another job).	Yes, I agree with you.

Exercises

Respond the following situations:

1. A friend asks you what you think about Steinbeck's "The Pearl".
2. You do not understand what distance learning is. You ask a friend.
3. You want to persuade your friend to read "The Grapes of Wrath" by Steinbeck.
4. Your brother looks worried. You want to know if he has a problem.

- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1- A: I'd like to deposit LE 50 to my savings account, please.

B: Of course. Just complete one of these forms and return to this counter.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

2-A: May I take your order, sir?

B: I'll have grilled fish, please.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Money can make the greedy blind.....reality.
a. with b. of c. for d. to
2. It was John's mother who taught him to read and.....him to become a writer.
a. discouraged b. encouraged c. depressed d. encountered
3. Finding the.....pearl is a very rare experience.
a. Valuable b. valueless c. worthless d. fruitless
- 4.....means having no private life.
a. Public b. Publicly c. Publicity d. In public
5. I respect some people for.....the truth.
a. saying b. asking c. hiding d. telling
6. Did he succeed in becoming a writer?-Unfortunately.....
a. yes b. never c. not d. no
7. Why are you.....? This is a private party.
a. including b. introducing c. invading d. intruding
8. The.....of publicity is that people can treat you better.
a. cause b. reason c. advantage d. disadvantage
9. John Steinbeck.....people to think about the problems of the country's poor.
a. afforded b. affected c. forced d. fought
10. People lost their jobs and businesses closed during that year's terrible.....
a. boost b. depressed c. depression d. depressing
11. I.....away the newspaper this morning. I didn't know you hadn't read it.
a. drove b. got c. threw d. kept
12. What's the bestfor a headache?
a. measurement b. treatment c. agreement d. amendment
13. Steinbeck is a famous novelist but his first three novels were not a.....
a. success b. failure c. fall d. drop
14. Being.....by an insect is very painful.
a. eaten b. drunk c. stung d. swallowed
15. I'd like to help my country by working as a civil
a. service b. servant c. server d. war
16. My grandmother's beautiful.....necklace was a wedding present from her uncle.
a. copper b. brass c. iron d. pearl
17. The police are looking for the missing car.....have been searching the river all day.
a. Divers b. Pilots c. Sailors d. Swimmers
18. A well-known TV.....is opening a new supermarket in our town tomorrow.
a. celebrate b. celebration c. celebrity d. maker
19. On hearing about the pearl, thieves planned to.....it.
a. rob b. repair c. steal d. eat
20. Kino's son was killed.....mistake.
a. on b. by c. at d. for
21. Thinking that the pearl is evil, Kino and his wife throw it.....the sea.
a. on b. away c. out d. into
22. Today's newspaper has a very interesting report from one of their in India.
a. representatives b. correspondents c. politicians d. correspondence
23. My friend.....me to go swimming, even though I felt ill.
a. threatened b. persuaded c. invited d. obliged
24. You should be careful when you.....into water if you don't know how deep it is.
a. dive b. dip c. wash d. swim
25. Don't be so.....you've eaten enough.
a. greed b. aggressive c. greedy d. cruel
26. Although people are frightened of.....they don't kill many human beings.
a. birds b. ants c. cats d. scorpions
27. Our income is low. How can we pay.....our sons' education?
a. off b. for c. on d. at
28. When the man was bitten by spiders, he.....out in pain.
a. cried b. fought c. cheered d. brought
29. With a little.....he's agreed to meet me tomorrow evening.
a. persuasion b. persuasive c. persuade d. approval
a. kick b. dick c. bribe d. trick

30. Kino is a Mexican pearl.....
a. driver b. diver c. rider d. runner
31. Being.....in size, the merchants refused to buy the pearl.
a. bigger b. valuable c. priceless d. beautiful
32. They fired their.....at wild animals.
a. knives' b. rockets c. guns d. pickaxes
33. The ambulance arrived too.....to save the boy.
a. early b. earlier c. later d. late
34. Juana suggested.....the pearl between stones.
a. breaking b. burying c. throwing d. keeping
35. Countries shouldn't spend too much money.....armament.
a. about b. on c. for d. at
36. My friend, Shehab, is a very.....person who hated publicity.
a. special b. privacy c. private d. sociable
37. Workers can't afford a holiday for working in.....paid jobs .:
a. bad b. good c. well d. badly
38. Steinbeck won the Nobel Prize.....literature In 1962.
a. on b. at c. for d. in
39. After.....school, he went to Ain-Shams university.
a. low b. High c. primary d. preparatory
40. Kino can't.....the pearl anywhere for being bigger in size.
a. buy b. sell c. bury d. throw
41. He's an expertthe history of rock music.
a. of b. off c. about d. on
42. Some people seek public city, others.....it.
a. like b. prefer c. avoid d. love
43. The boy was.....for burns at the hospital.
a. treated b. treatment c. treasured d. tricked
44. Having the priceless pearl led.....bad things, especially the death of his son.
a. for b. to c. in d. about
45. When it started to rain, we ran to shelter in a mountain.....
a. tunnel b. subway c. slope d. cave
46. Juana believes that this pearl is evil and fears that it will.....the family.
a. enrich b. destroy c. please d. regret
47. Some people think that money is the root of all, so they don't want lots of it.
a. good b. devil c. evil d. happiness
48. At first Kino.....to throw the pearl away to pay for his son's education.
a. accepted b. refused c. agreed d. approved
49. That shopkeeper is always great to.....business.
a. make b. play c. give d. do
50. They gave a.....report about the company's problems.
a. sting b. stung c. stinging d. sticky
51. My Sister's arguments are very....., so I agree with her.
a. false b. determined c. weak d. persuasive
52. Being.....does not always solve people's problems,
a. health b. wealthy c. wealth d. healthy
53. They.....the treasure under the ground.
a. stole b. robbed c. buried d. took
54. It is still not possible to.....the common cold.
a. heal b. cure c. recover d. solve
55. The thieves got into the house by a clever.....
a. trend b. trick c. tribute d. tree
56. When other people hear.....the pearl, they plan to steal it.
a. on b. in c. from d. about
57. You need to.....your work more carefully to achieve success.
a. spoil b. make c. plan d. delay
58. The family, being too to pay, the local doctor refuses to.....treat the boy.
a. rich b. wealthy c. healthy d. poor
59. My uncle's job is to buy and sell goods. He is a.....
a. pilot b. lawyer c. merchant d. postman
60. Merchants try to.....Kino saying that the pearl is not valuable.

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then, write them correctly:

1. After he had been beaten by the scorpion, he was taken to the local doctor.
2. Ali's argument was preservative, but the managers still turned down his proposal.
3. Being needy does not always solve people's problems.
4. Doctors are trying out a new tournament for depression.
5. Don't play tricky on me.
6. Douglas was seated with much more respect after his promotion.
7. Drugs and alcohol are two of the merits of modern society.
8. Famous writers always win the Nobel Prize of literature.
9. Greed bosses award themselves pay rises.
10. He has a wealthy of experience in this area.
11. He insisted on paying off the meal.
12. He made a sponging attack on government policy.
13. He went driving and found an enormous pearl.
14. He worked as a war correspondence for a New York newspaper.
15. I bought my wife a valuable pebble necklace.
16. I never throw anything up.
17. I respect children who say the truth.
18. I've been corrupting with several experts in the field.
19. Journalists sometimes introduce into people's private lives.
20. Kino is a pearl diving.
21. Kino's son is swallowed by a scorpion.
22. Kino's wife tries to pretend him to throw it away.
23. My father works as a civic servant.
24. My friend is a very special person. He hates publicity.
25. My little son was attracted by a mad dog.
26. Poor people suffered greatly during the great percussion of the 1930s.
27. Rubbish should never be thrown on the sea.
28. Some people seek publicly, others do not.
29. The doctor refused to heal the sick boy for being poor.
30. The last novel Steinbeck wrote won an influence prize.
31. The man was killed with mistake not deliberately.
32. The merchandise say the pearl is not valuable.
33. The moral of the lesson is that wealthy doesn't always solve people's problems.
34. The pearl, found by Kino, is big in size. It's minute.
35. The prisoners tried to breakout from the prison.
36. Thieves planned to rob the pearl.
37. This is hardly persuasion evidence. I don't believe it.
38. What's the best measurement for a headache?

Translate into Arabic:

Learning a foreign language needs never stop. One should not learn a foreign language merely to achieve an immediate professional or academic aim and then give it up. He should carry on learning as it is a valuable experience that enriches his life.

Money is not a solution to most problems. Some times it is a double edged weapon. If we don't control it, we may face other problems. According to the proverb that says "Money is the root of all evil"

Translate into English:

- علي كل فرد في مجتمعنا أن يشارك في تحمل المسؤولية للتغلب علي مشاكلنا الاقتصادية و الاجتماعية و البيئية.

- بفضل تكنولوجيا المعلومات ووسائل الاتصال الحديثة، أصبح العالم قرية صغيرة.

- الطمع من أسوأ صفات الإنسان .

Grammar

Verb + object + to + INF

advise	- Mum always <u>advises</u> us <u>to</u> pray on time.	ينصح
allow	- I <u>allowed</u> him <u>to</u> use my mobile.	يسمح
ask	- The manager <u>asked</u> me <u>to</u> discuss the problem with my friends.	يطلب
beg	- He <u>begged</u> the thief <u>to</u> give him the money.	يتوسل
challenge	- I <u>challenge</u> anyone who claims <u>to</u> be the leader.	يتحدي
choose	- They <u>chose</u> him <u>to</u> lead the search group.	يختار
command	- The officer <u>commanded</u> his soldiers <u>to</u> cease fire.	يأمر
encourage	- Mum always <u>encourages</u> me <u>to</u> depend on myself.	يشجع
expect	- What do you <u>expect</u> me <u>to</u> do?	يتوقع
force	- The bad weather <u>forced</u> people <u>to</u> stay at home all day.	يجبر
help	- He can <u>help</u> me(<u>to</u>)understand this lesson.	يساعد
hire	- I <u>hired</u> a plumber <u>to</u> fix the pipe.	يؤجر شخصاً
instruct	- The policeman <u>instructed</u> drivers <u>not to</u> drive too fast.	يأمر
invite	- They <u>invited</u> us <u>to</u> have lunch with them.	يدعو
motivate	- We should <u>motivate</u> everyone <u>to</u> learn new skills.	يحفز
order	- The leader <u>ordered</u> the soldiers <u>to</u> attack.	يأمر
permit	- The security will not <u>permit</u> anybody <u>to</u> enter .	يسمح
persuade	- I <u>persuaded</u> her <u>to</u> start a new website.	يقنع
promise	- She <u>promised</u> us <u>to</u> do her best.	يعد
remind	- I <u>reminded</u> him <u>to</u> do the shopping.	يذكر
require	- You are <u>required</u> <u>to</u> wear a school uniform.	يتطلب
teach	- My sister <u>taught</u> us <u>to</u> read carefully.	يعلم
tell	- She <u>told</u> him <u>to</u> leave the office.	يأمر
urge	- He <u>urges</u> me <u>to</u> join the club.	يحث
want	- He <u>wants</u> you <u>to</u> sign this contract.	يريد
would like	- I'd <u>like</u> you <u>to</u> get some coffee for me.	يود / يريد

- في حالة المبني للمجهول تأتي to+ inf. بعد الفعل مباشرة:

- The bad weather forced people to stay at home all day. (active)
- People were forced to stay at home all day by the bad weather. (passive)
- The leader ordered the soldiers to attack. (active)
- The soldiers were ordered to attack by the leader. (passive)

- في حالة وجود that وبعدها فاعل بعد التعبيرات والأفعال الآتية نستخدم inf. أو should + inf.

suggest / insist / recommend / It is essential / It is important / It is necessary (that)...

- I suggested (that) he come with me. = - I suggested that he should come with me.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.The teacher warned George.....late again.

- a. to be b. not to be c. don't be d. to being

2.A back injury.....her to withdraw from the race.

- a. forced b. suggested c. expected d. invited

3.John

Tom to phone him the next day.

- a. said b. suggested c. told d. helped

4. The teacher.....her students to read "The Pearl "before the next lesson.
a. wanted b. said c. helped d. required
5. Men are.....to be much more active nowadays.
a. reminded b. expected c. warned d. invited
6. My mother.....me to read.
a. taught b. invited c. took d. warned
7. 8) Mahmoud advised.....hard from the beginning of the school year.
a. to work b. working c. work d. to working
8. The officer ordered the soldiers.....
a. attack b. to attack c. attacking d. attacked
9. My father has advisedcareful with my money when I'm on holiday.
a. to be b. being c. to being d. be
10. The teacher.....the students not to talk during the test.
a. suggested b. regretted c. permitted d. warned
11. Our friends invited us.....tea with them .
a. having b. to have c. to having d. to be
12. Children should be encouraged.....as early as possible.
a. swimming b. to swim c. swam d. to swimming
13. He ordered us.....ship as it capsized.
a. to abandon b. abandon c. abandoned d. abandons
14. She.....me to phone the docks about the arrival of the ship.
a. suggested b. recommended c. remembered d. reminded
15. Ahmed's parents warned him.....leave university without getting a degree.
a. to b. not c. not to d. do not
16. The programme presenter asked Dr Carter.....about Steinbeck's early life.
a. talk b. to talking c. to talk d. talking
17. Aya's mother asked her daughter.....her prepare dinner for the family.
a. help b. helping c. to help d. to helping
18. They're never late, so I.....them to arrive in a few minutes.
a. suggest b. expect c. advise d. warn
19. I'm grateful to my uncle Walid who taught me how.....
a) driver b) drive c) to drive d) to driving
20. The doctor warned me.....too much.
a) not to eat b) don't eat c) not eat d) to not eat
21. Do you want me.....a ticket for you?
a) to book b) book c) booking d) to booking
22. The conference hosts experts.....social sciences to discuss the problem of homelessness.
a) on b) of c) from d) for
23. I suggested that he.....wait for us till we return.
a) would b) could c) should d) shall
24. I have decided to apply for the job I heard.....from my friend Tawfik.
a) at b) of c) about d) with
25. My teacher advised me.....too much TV.
a) to watch b) to not watch c) not to watch d) not watching
26. My room needs to be tidied,.....there are many things to be thrown
a) in b) away c) over d) up
27. I have never been to England, but I'd like.....there.
a) going b) to going c) go d) to go
28. His parents always encourage him.....sports to keep fit.
a) not to practise b) to practise c) practising d) to practising
29. Teenagers.....the age of 18 aren't allowed to drive.
a) in b) below c) under d) over
30. I didn't want to buy a new car, but Shehab persuaded me.....so.
a) do b) to do c) doing d) done
31. Mr. Hassan is teaching his son.....a horse now.
a) ride b) riding c) to riding d) to ride
32. The naughty boy fired his father's gun.....his friend by mistake.
a) on b) at c) to d) out
33. I expected ityesterday, but it didn't.
a) to rain b) rain c) rained d) to raining

34. It is a free offer from the company; you don't need to payit.
 a) for b) from c) at d) on
35. The building which I liveoverlooks the Nile .
 a) in b) at c) on d) for.
36. You should have called the police insteadattacking the thief alone.
 a) in b) off c) with d) of
37. The teacher asked the studentsduring the test.
 a) not to talk b) to talk c) not talking d) to not talk
38. I don't know where my book is ; I think Ali took itmistake.
 a) by b) on c) in d) with
39. Hodame to have dinner with her.
 a. insisted b. suggested c. invited d. recommended
40. He's teaching his sona horse.
 a. ride b. riding c. to ride d. to riding

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. I was made doing the test again.
2. I don't want you being late for work.
3. I'd like seeing the manager.
4. It's impossible to teach him swimming as he's afraid of the water.
5. I've warned you not going near the water before.
6. My parents encouraged m"e doing better.
7. Remind me phoned you tomorrow evening.
8. I want him washing the car.
9. The police advised everyone staying clear of the area.
10. I recommend to stay at this hotel,
11. The police require any members of the public to coming forward.
12. You aren't allowed keeping. pets in the building.
13. I strongly advise you to seeing a doctor as soon as possible.
14. Everybody is obliged paying taxes.
15. Would you like me doing anything to help?
16. I advise to buy "The Best" series for distinction.
17. Teachers don't allow to eat in class.
18. I was advised concentrate well.
19. Don't worry for your exam. I'm sure you'll pass.
20. He agreed on helping me with my homework.
21. He complained with hotel manager about the food he had for breakfast.
22. He lowered his voice with the aim of she couldn't hear him.
23. He reminded me with buying a newspaper for him.
24. He suggested that she applies for the job.
25. He suggested to look for the information on the internet.
26. He told me phoned him the next day.
27. He went out to the Far East in order to he could set up his own import-export business.
28. Her parents wanted her gone to a good university.
29. Holidays in Egypt are popular for all kinds of tourists.
30. Ibn Batuta was a famous Arab exploiter.
31. I'd encourage everyone from working for a charity.
32. I'd like to find out more with studying in a different country.
33. I've lost one of my school books. Can you help me look at it?
34. My brother isn't very good for playing basketball.
35. My elder brother decided for traveling abroad.
36. Oil prices rose sharp last week.
37. Salem encouraged his brother working harder.
38. She recovered about her illness.
39. She was ashamed about herself when she made a mistake.
40. Smoking may result from cancer.
41. So that to be a doctor, you have to study for six years.
42. Teachers often forbid their students to work harder.
43. The main cause for global warming is the pollution from factories.
44. There was a remarkably improvement in the economy.
45. They went dismissing while they were searching for the treasure.

46. We must find an answer for the problem of climate change.
47. We should protect the environment with pollution.
48. When I was younger, I always wanted my mother read me stories.
49. You must eat sensibly so that you losing weight.
50. People are not allowed to smoking here.
51. You are recommended not to travelling by tube.

Test 17

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

1. An interviewer has asked you why you have applied for a job in a particular company. Give a reason.
2. You want to persuade your friend to visit Hurghada.
3. Your friend looks tired, he hasn't been sleeping for days .Advise him.
4. Your friend suggests reading a story and you accepted.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function each of the following min-dialogues:

- 1) A: So, John, could you tell our listeners how you started?
 B: Certainly. It was when I was seven. I won first prize in a poetry competition. When I was a student, some of my stories were published in a university magazine.
 A: And now it's your full-time job? B: That's right. My second novel was published last year.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

- 2) A: Could you help me carry the shopping into the house, please, Aisha?
 B: OK. Mum. Where shall I put it? A: Just put the bags on the kitchen floor for the moment.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. their way to the town, the family were followed by thieves.
a- In b- At c- With d- On
2. They hid from the thieves in a mountain
a- curve b- fence c- cave d- base
3. that the pearl was evil, they threw it into the sea.
a- Deciding b- Decided c- Decide d- Decides
4. His parents warned him university without a getting a degree.
a- not leaving b- not left c- not to be left d- not to leave
5. In "The Grapes of Wrath", Steinbeck people to think about the country's poor.
a- avoided b- forced c- faced d- frightened
6. A is someone who swims under water with breathing equipment.
a- driver b- fiver c- liver d- diver
7. is a long period when there is not a lot of business activity.
a- Distinction b- Drought c- Depression d- Intention
8. She me like one of the family.
a- treated b- blamed c- tricked d- planned
9. That old chair should be thrown
a- on b- away c- of d- with
10. He wanted the money for his son's education.
a- for paying b- to pay c- pay d- paying
11. His mother him to be a civil engineer.
a- discouraged b- disobeyed c- dissatisfied d- encouraged
12. The programme presenter asked Dr. Carter about Steinbeck's early life.
a- talk b- talking c- to talk d- talked
13. I recommend your feelings down on paper.
a- to write b- writing c- written d- write

14. She was really pleased her old friend.

a- seen

b- seeing

c- see

d- to see

15. She's training hard the race.

a- won

b- winning

c- to win

d- of winning

16. Leila asked Mona whether she could help her the shopping.

a- do

b- to doing

c- done

d- to be done

4. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. He was charged of murdering his neighbour.
2. Some diamond marchers live in our neighbourhood.
3. The torment has already cured him.
4. They persuaded him signed the papers.
5. They wanted to send their son to school and give him a better alive.
6. We expected them not came back.

(C) Reading

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions

People are trying many ways to solve the problem of finding "green" energy - energy that is clean and does not cause pollution. In some places plants are being grown which can be used as food and fuel. For example sunflowers are grown for the oil in their seeds. However, once the seeds have been taken out, the rest of the plant can be dried and burnt. An old solution in India is to dry animal waste and form it into bricks for burning. The Chinese improve on this and keep the waste until it produces methane gas which they use for cooking and heating.

Solar power could be one of the best future sources of energy. All over the world it is already being used for such jobs as heating water and houses and powering machines to water plants. But there is a way to make even better use of the sun. In space, because the sun never stops shining, it can supply solar energy for twenty four hours a day. Space scientists have suggested building a solar power station in space. It would produce huge amounts of power which could be sent down to the Earth. To build a station in space like this would be very expensive, but once the station was working the energy from it would be almost free.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do scientists think of having solar stations in space?
2. How can a station in space be economical in the long run ?
3. What does green energy mean ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

4. Solar power means energy from -----.
a) plants b) atoms c) fossil d) the sun
5. The underlined word "this" refers to -----.
a) drying animal waste b) getting oil from seeds
c) getting bricks from animal waste d) getting green energy

6. Read the following passage then answer the questions

People work together to make difficult jobs easier. If you had to move a heavy piece of furniture, from one room to another, would you do it by yourself or find someone to help you? As you would probably agree with a friend you can get the job done more quickly and neither of you will be as tired as afterwards. For similar reasons, animals also use teamwork. In animal groups, each individual works to help the group as a whole. Each individual in the group contribute something that helps the other. It could be as difficult and dangerous as risking one's life to protect another member of the group. It takes a lot of energy to chase and kill prey. A pack of wolves can kill a large animal such as a deer, while one wolf can only kill a small animal such as a rat. Wolf packs, which consist of two to twenty wolves, may surprise their prey or pursue it for hours before attacking. If there are several animals, the pack will choose the weakest one because it will take less effort to catch.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Which do you prefer, and why, to work in a group or to work alone?
2. How do we know that animals use teamwork?
3. What is meant by wolf pack?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

4. One wolf can kill a -----animal.
a) big b) small c) wild d) large

6. The underlines word "their" refers to the -----.

a) wolves

b) deer

c) hours

d)rats

D- The Prisoner of Zenda

7) (A) Answer the following questions:

1. Who gets killed in the first room of the King's prison? Who gets killed in the room where the King is? Who gets wounded?

2. Why doesn't the King fight Detchard directly? How does he help Rassendyll?

3. Who kills the Duke?

4. Why does Rupert ride away instead of fighting Rassendyll?

B) Read the following quotation. then answer the questions

"Dead! That's good. Then I'm your leader now. Put down your weapons and do as I say."

1. Who says this to whom?

2. Where is the speaker?

3. Do the people obey him? What happens?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly :

1. Rassendyll does not wound Rupert before he escapes.

2. Rassendyll spends the day in the mansion in the room with the King.

E- Writing

8) Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

The difference between life in the country and life in the city

F- Translation

a) Translate into Arabic :

While diving, the diver found a precious pearl. He was over the moon because he thought he would be happy . But finally , he lost all things including his son.

.....
.....

b) Translate into English:

- يحاول الآباء أن يشجعوا أبناءهم ليجتازوا مشاكل الحياة .

.....
.....

- علي كل فرد في مجتمعنا أن يشارك في تحمل المسؤولية للتغلب علي مشاكلنا الاقتصادية و الاجتماعية و البيئية.

.....
.....

Unit 18- Lifelong Learning

advance in	التقدم في	get promoted	يترقى	qualifications	مؤهلات
by video	عن طريق الفيديو	highly qualified	عالي الكفاءة	refusal	رفض
challenging job	عمل صعب (يتطلب تحديا)	home country	الوطن	refuse	يرفض / قمامة
change jobs	يغير الوظيفة	ideal	مثالي / أفضل	remain employable	يظل صالحا للعمل
college	كلية	idealism	المثالية	research findings	نتائج الأبحاث
computer skills	مهارات الحاسب الآلي	idealist	مؤمن بمثل عليا	retrain	يعيد تدريب
constantly	باستمرار	idealistic	مثالي	reward	يكافأ / مكافأة
current work	العمل الحالي	improve position	يُحسن مكانه	rewarding	مُجزي / عائد بالنفع
department	قسم	individuals	أفراد	salute the flag	يحيي العلم
desire for education	رغبة في التعليم	joke (v/n)	نكتة / يمزح	self-confidence	الثقة بالنفس
develop skills	ينمي المهارات	learn activities	يتعلم أنشطة	similar	مشابه / مماثل
do a course in	يدرس مقرر في	local time	التوقيت المحلي	similarity	تشابه
download onto	يحمل علي	make investments	يقوم باستثمارات	stimulate	يحفز
employable	صالح للعمل	master (v)	يتقن	study from home	يدرس بالمنزل
employee	عامل / موظف	mature	ناضج	study online	يدرس عن طريق
employer	صاحب العمل أو الشركة	maturity	النضج	take formal exams	يتقدم لامتحانات
enhance learning	يعزز التعلم	national anthem	النشيد الوطني	thanks to	بفضل
enrol on	يُسجل / يُدرج اسمه في	officially	بشكل رسمي	the only option	الخيار الوحيد
enrolment	تسجيل / ادراج	organise into	ينظم في	the open university	الجامعة المفتوحة
evening course	مقرر دراسي مسائي	grown up	ناضج	qualified	مؤهل
exert efforts	يبدل جهود	potentials	امكانيات / طاقات	time difference	فرق التوقيت
existing skills	المهارات الموجودة	practices	ممارسات	unemployed	عاطل
finance department	قسم المالية	promote	يُرفي	vet	طبيب بيطري
firmly	بحزم / بصرامة	promotion	ترقية / ترويج	working life	الحياة العملية
gain experience	يكتسب خبرة	provide	يوفر / يتيح	worthwhile	جدير بالاهتمام
garbage = rubbish	قمامة	provider	مزود / متعهد	write a report on	يكتب تقريراً عن

Definitions

department	One of the parts of a large organization, such as a college government or company.	قسم
employable	having the skills and qualifications to make someone want to employ you	يمكن توظيفه
employee	someone who is paid to work for someone else	موظف
employer	a person or company that pays people to work for them	صاحب عمل
enrol / enroll	to become or make someone officially a member of a course, school , etc.	يُدرج / يندرج
ideal	The best that something could possibly be.	مثالي
mature(student)	A student at a university or college who is over 25.	طالب ناضج
promotion	a move to a better , more responsible position at work	ترقية
provide	To give or supply something to someone especially something that they need.	يوفر / يزود
qualified	Having passed an exam that shows you have the training , knowledge or skills to do a job.	لديه مؤهل
retrain	Train to do a different job, learn new skills.	يعيد تأهيل
rewarding	making you feel happy and satisfied	مرضٍ/مجزي
similar	Almost the same but not exactly the same.	متشابه
worthwhile	Useful or enjoyable, even though you have to spend a lot of time, effort or money doing it.	جدير بالاهتمام / يستحق الجهد والمال

Expressions

agree with suggestions	يتفق مع المقترحات	have the chance to	لديه الفرصة لكي..
approve of	يوافق علي	in two years' time	في خلال عامين
at any age	في أي سن	leave out	يستبعد
at intervals	على فترات	look around (for)	يبحث عن
be on a course	ملتحق بمقرر دراسي	out of interest	من باب الاهتمام (بالشيء)
be tested on	يُختبر في	present (him) with an award	يقدم له جائزة
communicate with	يتصل بـ	progress through life	يتقدم خلال الحياة
enrol on	يُسجل / يدرج	satisfied with	راض عن
for this reason	ولهذا السبب	study by distance learning	يدرس عن طريق التعلم عن بعد
get to = reach	يصل الي	study for a higher degree	يدرس للحصول علي درجة جامعية أعلى
go back to education	يعود للتعليم	take up opportunities	يستفيد من الفرص

Words & antonyms

employable	صالح للعمل	unemployable	غير صالح للعمل
idealistic	مثالي	realistic	واقعي
mature	ناضج	immature	غير ناضج
optional	اختياري	compulsory/mandatory	اجباري
promote	يرقي	demote	ينزل الدرجة أو المرتبة
qualified	مؤهل	unqualified	غير مؤهل
rewarding	مُجزي	unrewarding	غير مجزي
worthwhile	جدير بالاهتمام / يستحق الجهد والمال	worthless / useless	تافه / غير مفيد

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adj.
Believe	يعتقد / يؤمن	Belief	اعتقاد	
educate	يعلم	Education	تعليم	educational تعليمي
enrol	يدرّج	Enrolment	ادراج	
Improve	يحسّن / يطور	Improvement	تحسين / تطوير	Improved متطور / محسن
Mature	ينضج	Maturity	نضج	Mature ناضج
Promote	يرقي	Promotion	ترقية	Promotional ارتقائي
Provide	يزود / يوفر / يمد	Provision	توفير / امداد	
Qualify	يؤهل / يتأهل	Qualification	مؤهل	Qualified لديه مؤهل
retire	يتقاعد	Retirement	تقاعد	Retired متقاعد
Return	يعيد	Return	عودة	returnable يمكن إعادته
Reward	يكافئ	Reward	مكافأة	Rewarding مجزي / مفيد

Language Notes

- desert (n) صحراء
 -desert (v) = abandon يهجر
 Dessert الحلو بعد الأكل

- The desert is usually dry.
 - He deserted because of her nervousness.
 - We had some sweets after lunch as a dessert.

- reward (v/n) يكافئ / مكافأة

- I gave Ali a camera to reward him for getting good marks.

- reword (v) = rephrase يعيد صياغة (جملة أو سؤال مثلاً)

- Please, reword your question.

- rest (v/n) راحة / يستريح
 -(the) rest (n) البقية

- I'll get some rest before doing homework.

- Two students failed, and the rest passed the test.

- refuse (v) يرفض

- She refused to take part in the conference.

- refuse (n) = garbage = rubbish = trash قمامة / نفايات

- Refuse collection has been seriously affected by the strike. اضراب

- Provide something for **يوفر شيء لـ** - Hospitals should provide medicine for patients.
- Provide someone with **يُمد أو يزود شخص بـ** - They provided me with money and experience.
- produce (v) **يُنتج** - This factory produces children's clothes.
- produce (n / U) **محاصيل أو غلال / منتجات** - Farmers work hard to increase their produce.
- object to + n/ V + ing (v) **يعترض** - They objected to the minister's suggestions.
- object (n) **شيء / هدف** - Look, there's a strange object in the sky!
- busy with + n **مشغول بـ** - He's busy with a customer.
- busy + V+ing - She's busy studying for her exams.
- open to = available = on hand **متاح** - The course is open to everyone.
- post **يوظف شخص (مكان + to + شخص)** - The government will post new graduates to villages.
- go shopping= do the shopping **يتسوق** - I went shopping yesterday. = I did the shopping yesterday.
- rough notes = rough draft **مسودة**
 - I asked students to write a rough draft to the exercise before writing it down in workbook.
- Browse **يتصفح كتاب أو مجلة في مكتبة (يقرأ عدة صفحات)**
 - I was browsing through a magazine when I saw this advertisement.
- Go through (a story - list - plan) **يتصفح - يقرأ (من البداية إلى النهاية)**
 - I went through this story yesterday.
- Lifelong **مدي الحياة** - Learning must be lifelong.
- Long life **حياة طويلة** - He has a long life, he is over 100.
- Grateful to + **ممتن لشخص** - I'm grateful to all who helped me.
- Grateful for + ... ing / **ممتن لشيء** - I'm so grateful for helping me.

Make / Do

Make		Do	
make a discovery	يكتشف	do a favour	يقدم خدمة أو معروف
make a fire	يشعل نارا	do a hobby	يقوم بهواية
make a choice	يختار	do (his) hair	يصفف شعره
make a decision	يقرر	do a job	يؤدي وظيفة
make a difference to	يحدث اختلاف / فرق	do a project	يقوم بعمل بحث / دراسة
make a journey	يقوم برحلة	do a quiz	يقوم بعمل مسابقة
make a medicine	يصنع دواء	do a report on	يعد تقرير عن
make a mistake	يخطئ	do an operation	يقوم بعملية جراحية
make a noise	يثير ضوضاء	do better	يتحسن
make a phone call	يعمل مكالمة	do business	يقوم بعمل تجارى
make a plan	يخطط	do damage	يدمر
make a promise	يوعد	do exercise	يقوم بتدريبات
make a question	يسأل	do good	يُفيد
make a suggestion	يقترح	do harm	يضر
make a trip	يقوم برحلة	do his best	يُبذل قصارى جهده
make a trouble	يسبب متاعب	do homework	يعمل الواجب
make achievements	يحقق انجازات	do PhD	يعمل دكتوراة
make clear	يوضح	do repairs	يقوم باصلاحات
make contributions	يقوم بإسهامات	do research	يقوم ببحث علمي
make friends	يعمل صداقات	do something/nothing	يفعل شيء (لا شيء)
make lunch/dinner	يعد الغداء / العشاء	do the cleaning	يقوم بالتنظيف
make money	يكسب مالا	do the cooking	يقوم بالطهي
make parts of cars	يصنع أجزاء السيارات	do the homework	يقوم بواجباته المدرسية
make peace	يحقق السلام	do the housework	يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية

make sense	له معنى	do the shopping	يتسوق
make sure	يتأكد	do the sweeping	يقوم بالكس
make the bed	يرتب السرير	do the washing up	يقوم بغسل الأواني
make up (his) mind	يقرر	do without	يستغني عن
make war	يشن حرب	do work	يقوم بعمل
		do wrong	يخطئ

Exercises

Respond the following situations:

1. A friend suggests that you do an evening course to improve your English.
2. A friend wants to go back to education, but cannot leave home to go to the university. Suggest a distance learning course.
3. An educational adviser asks you what skills you'd like to improve. You have never been very good at maths.
4. Someone has asked you for educational advice. Find out what qualifications this person has.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1) A: How can I help you, sir? B: I'd like to have this prescription filled, please.
A: OK. Just a minute.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

- 2) A: What time will you be checking out tomorrow?
B: I have to leave early to catch my flight. I'd like a 6 a.m. wake-up call.
A: Well, you can check out tonight and I will arrange it.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I've in my local swimming class.
a) entered b) ruled c) enclosed d) enrolled
2. Is she enough for such great responsibility?
a) mature b) foolish c) lazy d) idle
3. Many young women find their work with handicapped children very They enjoy it very much
a) regarding b) revolving c) rewarding d) revolting
4. This company needs highly staff.
a) qualification b) graduation c) unqualified d) qualified
5. Al Ghamry five hundred workers in his company.
a) employer b) employs c) employee d) employable
6. He hopes to get his master's from Oxford University .
a) degree b) level c) grade d) class
7. You have not up your mind about the best way to do this.
a) done b) had c) made d) discovered
8. This is the main for his quick decision.
a) reasonable b) reason c) purpose d) cause
9. My uncle spent the whole day the field.
a) irrigated b) to irrigate c) irrigates d) irrigating
10. The gas factory has six hundred
a) employs b) employees c) employable d) employers
11. Nasser is an evening course in English.
a) making b) playing c) inventing d) doing
12. She has worked very hard this year, so she is hoping for at work next year.
a) promotion b) punishment c) dismissal d) escape
13. Everyone likes working for Mr Hamdy. They say he is a very kind
a) employee b) employment c) unemployment d) employer
14. I hope to be when I finish this computer course.

- a) removed b) punished c) promoted d) dismissed
15. I believe I have the best.....for the job.
a) qualification b) qualify c) qualified d) quantity
16.learning is a kind of learning which never stops as long as you are alive.
a) Short-term b) Lifelong c) Distant d) Distance
17. He.....after he reached the age of sixty.
a) desired b) tired c) retired d) fired
- It would be to consult everybody first.....
a) sensible b) sensor c) sincere d) sense
18. We've.....to a charitable organization for a grant for a project.
a) radiated b) depicted c) applied d) deprived
19. Doctors are only now beginning to.....how dangerous this drugs can be.
a) intrude b) appreciate c) interfere d) affiliate
20. Enrol means to become alan.....Of a university course.
a) employer b) professor c) organ d) member
21. Ideal is the.....that something could possibly be.
a) best b) dirtiest c) oldest d) worst
22. Mr Samy left the teaching.....in 1998 to set up his own business.
a) task b) profession c) position d) place
23. For me, a park with trees is the.....place for a picnic.
a) worse b) member c) ideal d) same
24. Most southern countries have a.....climate ,hot in summer and cold in winter.
a) rewarding b) worthwhile c) same d) similar
25. My cousin used to be a soldier, but now he's.....to be a teacher.
a) retraining b) enrolling c) rewarding d) feeling
26. My sister wants to be a teacher. She believes teaching is a.....career.
a) similar b) worthwhile c) worthless d) boring
27. She works in the accounts.....She is a well-trained accountant.
a) departmental b) departure c) part d) department
28. This book will.....you with all the information you need.
a) prove b) repair c) provide d) join
29. This bank can give.....to ten extra staff.
a) employment b) unemployment c) employable d) employer
30. The business got into.....difficulties. It may stop soon.
a) finances b) financial c) finance d) financially
31. I don't.....much money out of this job.
a) miss b) earn c) win d) gain
32. Lifelong learning is necessary because the world of work is.....
a) still b) fixed c) changeable d) stable
33. They signed a three-year.....with the internet company.
a) contact b) contest c) conduct d) contract
34. Bees.....with each others through signs.
a) communicate b) conduct c) contact d) connect
35. His political.....began 20 years ago after graduation.
a) task b) function c) career d) work
36. He enrolled.....Msc course in the .faculty of education.
a) by b) on c) at d) with
37. He decided.....it was too late to go.
a) than b) to c) on d) that
38. Experienced people are usually good.....their jobs.
a) at b) of c) on d) in
39. You can find all the information you need.....the internet.
a) for b) of c) on d) in
40. This company provides courses its employees to improve their skills.
a) with b) by c) to d) for
41. You shouldyour computer skills to do your job well.
a) reduce b) spoil c) improve d) decrease
42. Magdy.....from Cairo University two years ago.
a) escaped b) departed c) left d) graduated
43. The.....of Cambridge University are always preferable is getting jobs.

- a) servants b) graduates c) couriers d) maids
44. Finding a cure for this disease is one of the greatest.....faced scientists.
- a) challenges b) changes c) charges d) chants
45. My father always encourages me to.....my job well,
- a) make b) fail c) invent d) do
46. I have my car serviced.....to avoid breaking down.
- a) regularity b) regulate c) regularly d) regular
47. You have to go to.....for a lot of years if you want to be a doctor.
- a) cave b) college c) collision d) court
48. I hope the new skills I am learning at college will make me more.....
- a) failure b) difficulties c) problems d) promotion
49. A company in my town closed last week, leaving 50 people.....
- a) employees b) employers c) unemployed d) employment
50. In many countries, the government is the main.....of school education.
- a) provider b) introducer c) producer d) intruder

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Ahmed beats much money every month out of his job.
2. Because he is clever, he gets promote very quickly.
3. Do you have anything solar to this material but cheaper?
4. Good programs like this one get kids involved in worthless activities.
5. Hady is well qualification for this job.
6. He is responsible for the finance apartment of a big company.
7. He is the head of the English apartment at Cairo University.
8. He rolled, on an English course with the Open University.
9. He used a small metal objective to open the door.
10. Hend has made of her mind about the best way to bring up young children.
11. His child behaves in a very nature way.
12. His T-shirt is similarity to mine.
13. I communicate on my pen friends bye-mail.
14. I dialled on the modern art course.
15. If I'm not prevented within the next two years, I'm going to change jobs.
16. In the hot weather the fruit mattered quickly.
17. I've attended an idealism marriage with my family.
18. Kamal used to riding a bike now he drives a car:
19. Mr Samy will attend the meeting instead for the headmistress.
20. President Sadat was rewarded the Noble prize for peace.
21. Samy regular takes part in school competitions.
22. She decided leaving her baby at home.
23. She has got a reward job.
24. She is making a university course.
25. She was offered empowerment in the sales office.
26. Someone that pays people to work for them is employee.
27. That hotel proves good meals.
28. The company needs an employer to work as an accountant.
29. The company provides courses for its employments.
30. The team has worked hard and their efforts have been awarded with success.
31. There's no cause for his failure.
32. They employee her as an adviser.
33. Universities provide the country with high qualified young people.
34. What makes you think that you are liquefied for this job?
35. Who is the new Minister of financial?

Translate into Arabic:

The Open University was the first university to provide distance learning and degrees. It admitted its first student in 1971 . Courses are available throughout Europe and other parts of the world.

.....

.....

Food for all is the major problem of the world today. A hungry world is never likely to be a peaceful one. Unrest throughout the world most frequently has its main cause in dissatisfaction with that part of the standard of living connected with food.

Translate into English:

- تبذل الحكومة ما بوسعها للتحكم في الأسعار ورفع مستوى المعيشة.

- الغذاء الصحي ضروري لتجنب الإصابة بكثير من الأمراض.

- قمت بتسجيل اسمي في دورة تعليم الكمبيوتر للشهر القادم.

Grammar

Modal Verbs

→ Should / shouldn't / had better / had better not + inf.

- تستخدم عادة للتعبير عن النصيحة

- You should take a rest. = It is a good idea to take a rest.

- You shouldn't look at the sun. It's very dangerous.

= You had better not look at the sun. It's very dangerous.

→ should have + p.p.

- وتستخدم عادة عندما نوجه اللوم لشخص لعدم قيامه بعمل معين كان يفترض القيام به:

You should have done your homework yesterday.

→ shouldn't have + p.p.

- ونستخدمه عادة عندما نوجه اللوم لشخص لقيامه بعمل معين كان يفترض عدم القيام به:

- You shouldn't have parked your car here. It's a 'No Parking' area.

→ can / can't + inf.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء في المضارع أو المستقبل:

→ Can = be able to + inf. = be capable of + V. + ing = have the ability to + inf.

- I can drive a lorry. = I am able to drive a lorry.

= I am capable of driving a lorry. = I have the ability to drive a lorry.

- تستخدم can / can't للتعبير عن أن شيء مسموح به أو غير مسموح به في المضارع:

- In some countries, you can drive at the age of 17. (It is permitted by the law مسموح به قانوناً)

- In some cities, people can't use their cars every day. (It is against the law. ضد القانون)

- You can't park here. = You mustn't park here. (It is against the law. ضد القانون)

- تستخدم can / can't للتعبير عن الاحتمال Possibility في المضارع:

- Surgeons can replace the heart. (This is possible.)

- He can't be Egyptian – he doesn't speak Arabic. (This is not possible)

- تستخدم can في حالة الطلب والاقتراح:

- What shall we do tonight? - We can go to the cinema.

- Can you open that door, please? - Can I use your office tomorrow?

→ could / couldn't + inf.

- تستخدم could / couldn't للتعبير عن قدرة عامة على عمل شيء في الماضي (مثل السباحة وركوب الدراجات ، مثلاً):

- She could read at the age of five. - I couldn't swim until the age of twelve.

- ولكن عند الحديث عن قدرة محددة على عمل شيء في الماضي وكان غالباً من الصعب القيام به نستخدم:

→ Was / were able to = Managed to + inf. = Succeeded in + V. + ing

- A mechanic managed to repair my car.

- I succeeded in sending that e-mail after many attempts.

- We were able to arrive home through traffic jam.

- كما تستخدم للتعبير عن شيء مسموح به أو غير مسموح به في الماضي

- In the past people could drive a car without passing a driving test.

- In the past, women couldn't vote in elections.

- تستخدم could للتعبير عن الاحتمال Possibility في المضارع:

- We could ban cars from cities. (This would be possible if we wanted it.)

- تستخدم could في حالة الطلب والاقتراح:

- Ali: What shall we do tonight?
- Could you open that door, please?

- We could go to the cinema.
- Could I use your office tomorrow?

- لاحظ استخدام could بعد I wonder if ..

- I wonder if you could help me with this bag.

→ might / might not + inf.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن احتمالات في المستقبل

- When I finish school, I might go to university to study medicine.
- But I might not go – I haven't decided yet.

→ may + inf.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن أن شيء سيكون مسموح به في المضارع أو المستقبل وهي صيغة رسمية أكثر تهاباً:

- May I use your phone, please?
- You may borrow my camera tomorrow, if you like.

→ must + inf.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن إحساس قوي بضرورة عمل شيء من وجهة نظر المتكلم أو للتعبير عن أن شيء مهم بالنسبة لنا وفي هذه الحالة تستخدم فقط مع الضمانر I / We ومع You في حالة السؤال:

- I must visit my grandparents more often. (It's important to me that I do.)
- Must you wear that yellow tie?

(Is it important to you that you do it? This also suggests that it bothers me.)

- و للتعبير عن نصيحة قوية و الأوامر و في القوانين والقواعد وعندما نذكر أنفسنا بضرورة عمل شيء:

- You mustn't be late or dad will be angry. (strong advice)
- You must clean your room before you go out with your friends. (an order)
- Drivers and passengers of motorcycles must wear helmets. (a law)

- تستخدم في الاستنتاج أو التعبير عن نتيجة منطقية:

- Dad must have left already. I don't see his car.

- لاحظ استخدام must للتعبير عن الضرورة في المضارع والمستقبل فقط:

- I must go now.
- I must see my doctor tomorrow.

→ have / has to + inf.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن إلزام خارجي مفروض علينا وليس أمامنا اختيار بسبب القوانين أو الظروف

- If she wants to start her course this year, she has to apply before the end of March.
- Do you have to wear that yellow tie to work? (Is it part of your uniform?)
- We have to wear helmets if we are going to take the motorcycle. (The law says so.)

- كما تستخدم في النصيحة و الأوامر:

- You have to apologize to Mona. You don't want to lose her as a friend. (advice)
- You can't go out. You have to clean your room first. (an order)

→ need / needs to + inf.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن أشياء ضرورية في الحاضر أو المستقبل

- He needs to be busy all the time or his boss will be angry.
- We need to revise for next week's exam.

→ don't have to / don't need to / needn't + inf.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في المضارع أو المستقبل

- When you are on holiday, you don't need to go to bed early.
- She doesn't have to work on Saturday.

→ had to + inf.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة في الماضي

- We had to take a taxi as it was raining heavily.

→ didn't have to / didn't need to + inf.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي

- I didn't have to do the shopping yesterday. My brother did it.
- I didn't need to go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.

→ needn't have + p.p.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي على الرغم من كونه غير ضروري:

- You needn't have brought your umbrella. It's not going to rain.

→ mustn't + inf.

- You mustn't smoke in hospitals. = You aren't allowed to smoke in hospitals.
 = You aren't permitted to smoke in hospitals. = You are forbidden to smoke in hospitals.
 = You are banned from smoking in hospitals. = You are prohibited from smoking in hospitals.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I'm surprised. Nobody told you that the road was very dangerous. Youhave been warned.
 a) must b) should c) needn't d) may
2. You.....do over 90 kilometers an hour. It is the maximum speed limit.
 a) mustn't b) needn't c) shouldn't d) may not
3. The policeman said, "You will have to pay a fine. You.....have driven so fast
 a) wouldn't b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) can't
4. I've told you again and again, "You.....be late for work."
 a) oughtn't b) needn't c) couldn't d) mustn't
5. I'll give you a lift, so you.....walk to the station.
 a) must b) had to c) don't have to d) mustn't
6. Youwear heavy clothes. It is very cold outside.
 a) have to b) mustn't c) needn't d) might
7. You.....stay up late if you don't like to.
 a) must b) needn't c) mustn't d) had to
8. You have done this exercise wrong. You.....do it again,
 a) don't have to b) mustn't c) needn't d) have to
9. Yousmoke here. There is a "No Smoking" sign.
 a) mustn't b) needn't c) must d) shouldn't
10. We have plenty of time. We.....drive fast.
 a) mustn't b) needn't c) must d) had to
11. He has left his car over there. He.....that. There is a "No waiting" sign.
 a) should have done b) shouldn't do c) shouldn't have done d) mustn't do
12. He.....drink the milk. It's sour.
 a) has to b) doesn't have to c) needn't d) mustn't
13. I didn't know there was a meeting today. You.....me.
 a) should have told b) should tell c) had to tell d) needn't have told
14. It is desirable to get up early . You.....get up early.
 a) must b) should c) may d) will
15. You look ill today. You.....see a doctor.
 a) may b) might c) should d) ought
16. I don't know why you apologized to him. You.....to him.
 a) mustn't apologize b) don't have to apologize
 c) shouldn't apologize d) needn't have apologized
17. A) Shall I post the letter now?
 B) No, Youpost the letter now. You can post it tomorrow.
 a) don't need to b) mustn't c) must d) have to
18. He.....go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.
 a) needn't b) won't c) didn't have to d) may not
19. He sounded the horn so many times; he.....have done that.
 a) oughtn't b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) couldn't
20. She added some salt to the salad but she.....any as it became too salty.
 a) needn't add b) has to add c) mustn't add d) needn't have added
21. I.....accept his offer if I were you.
 a) should b) shall c) ought d) must
22. Helal didn't go to the doctor's yesterday although he.....have gone.
 a) must b) ought to c) needn't d) shouldn't
23. You.....smoke in petrol stations.
 a) shouldn't b) needn't c) mustn't d) oughtn't
24. They went to Aswan by plane but they.....have gone by train.
 a) shall b) needn't c) must d) could
25. I stayed at home yesterday although I.....have gone to the cinema.
 a) could b) must c) shall d) can

26. I advise you to come. You.....come.
a) will b) have to c) should d) can
27. You.....fasten your seat belt or you'll be fined.
a) should b) may c) can d) have to
28. It's a good idea, youstudy English well.
a) shall b) should c) will d) would
29. It's getting dark. I.....go now .
a) have to b) had to c) ought d) should have
30. Swimming is not allowed here. You.....swim here.
a) needn't b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) don't
31. A :Can I talk to you, please? B:Sorry, I.....go now. I'm late for a meeting.
a) mustn't b) has to c) need d) must
32. A:Sorry, Mum. I've broken a plate. B:You.....be more careful.
a) may b) should c) might d) can
33. Did you deliver the parcel for me? No, I.....find the house, so I've come back to get a map.
a) can b) could c) couldn't d) mustn't
34. Emad had broken his leg, so he.....swim.
a) can't b) may c) should d) couldn't
35. A: "Was your suitcase very heavy?" B: Yes, but I.....carry it myself.
a) was able to b) can c) can't d) ought
36. The streets are wet, it.....last night.
a) must rain b) should rain c) must be raining d) must have rained
37. Why didn't you call the police? You.....done that.
a) should b) should have c) could d) must
38. I strongly advise you to revise for your test. This means you revise for your test.
a) should b) may c) must d) can't
39. My car broke down in the middle of the road, so I.....push it to the road side .
a) have to b) had to c) must d) has to
40. You.....finish that report tonight if you're too tired. Midday tomorrow is the deadline.
a) need to b) must c) needn't d) shouldn't
41. You.....have a health check before using the gym for the first time.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) couldn't
42. You are too fat to join the Police Academy; yougo on a diet.
a) had to b) may c) has to d) have to
43. It's against the law to use your mobile while driving your car, so you.....do that.
a) needn't b) won't c) mustn't d) shouldn't
44. A) I'm going to the cinema. Do you want to come with me?
B) No, thank you. I.....do my homework.
a) had to b) can c) have to d) could .

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. Do you mind if I borrowing your dictionary?
2. Does it necessary for you to pay now?
3. Does she got to send the e-mail today?
4. He could take a taxi, but he preferred to walk home yesterday.
5. He doesn't have to come, it wasn't necessary.
6. He really mustn't have told his brother about this present. It was supposed to be a secret.
7. He said I should to try a different kind of job.
8. He was able of winning the match.
9. I don't has to go to school today. It's Saturday.
10. I got to finish this work at 7 p.m.
11. I might studying languages.
12. I might wash my hands before eating. It's very important.
13. I needn't buy this furniture yesterday. It was really unnecessary.
14. I needn't pay the telephone bill last year. My brother was here then and he paid it.
15. I wonder if you may do the shopping for me.
16. I'll needn't to go in a few minutes. I don't want to miss my plane.
17. I'm afraid I can help you. I don't live here.
18. It isn't allowed to park here , so you must park.
19. It was snowing heavily. The roads were slippery. At last we encouraged to reach home.
20. Mona is able to making dresses.

21. Nada's mobile was stolen last night, so she can't use it to call home.
22. One day, my husband was locked out of the house by mistake, but luckily he is able to get in through an open window.
23. Perhaps Tom is tired. He must be tired.
24. She could have buy a mobile.
25. She must take a taxi yesterday as it was raining heavily.
26. She was capable of send me the e-mail
27. Should you have to clean the house yourself? – No, someone did it for me.
28. Should you play the piano? - Yes, of course.
29. We may use plastic cups, so we don't have to wash anything. That's a good idea.
30. We needn't to cook tonight. Take away is better.
31. What are you doing here? Need you be at college?
32. You aren't allow to throw litter in the park.
33. You be to finish this work before 10 o'clock, or you'll be fired.
34. You can make so much noise. We'll be asked to leave if you don't stop it.
35. You can't be tired after all your hard work.
36. You can't borrow my car on Saturday if you like.
37. You can't leave now. You may finish this work first.
38. You have to clean the kitchen today. I'll do it in a few hours.
39. You have to do your homework today. You can do it tomorrow.
40. You have to take any more pills. You are quite well now.
41. You may walk to work. I'll give you a lift.
42. You must begin with light exercises to warm up.
43. You must bring your mobile because I've got mine with me.
44. You mustn't ask a member of staff if you aren't sure of something.
45. You needn't use these medicines, they are classified as drugs.
46. You needn't wear a helmet when you ride a motorbike, it's vital.
47. You ought to watered the plants this weekend, they look dry.
48. You should exercise after a heavy meal.
49. You should had a rest or you'll break down.
50. You should have written a letter, a text message would have been OK.
51. You shouldn't had spoken to my mother like that.
52. You'd better not to carry that heavy suitcase.

Test 18

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

1. Someone thinks that we should ban cars 3 days a week.
2. You give your brother a permission to use you mobile.
3. You suggest reducing the amount of carbon dioxide.
4. You want your sister to open the door.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function each of the following min-dialogues:

- 1- A) Good morning, how can I help you? B) Good morning , I'd like to travel to Paris with my family
A) We have many tours to Paris this week. You can choose the one you like

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

- 2- A) I'd like two tickets for the nine o'clock show?

B) Here you are. I hope you enjoy it?

A) Thanks.

- Place: - Speaker A: - Speaker B: Function:

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children were so excited that they hardly speak.
a- could b- can c- have to d- might
2. I go to work yesterday. It was a national holiday.
a- didn't have to b- had to c- might d- needn't
3. You purchased a new camera. You already have a good one.

- a-should have b- could c- needn't have d- must have*
4. You bite your nails. It's a bad habit.
a-may not b- mustn't c- can d- ought
5. This beach is for children. It's really safe.
a-idealistic b- idealist c- ideal d- idealism
6. She's extremely well for the job.
a-applied b- replied c- qualified d- purified
7. To remain, individuals must be good at the jobs they are doing.
a- avoidable b- predictable c- employable d- deniable
8. They intend to allocate **يخصص** more places to students this year.
a-fracture b- furniture c- gesture d- mature
9. This restaurant offers food to that cooked at home.
a-similar b- usual c- the same d- like
10. Her to general manager took everyone by surprise.
a-publication b- emotion c- promotion d- demotion
11. The hospital has a commitment **تعهد** to the best possible medical care.
a-invite b- provide c- save d- deprive
12. You come and stay with us in Arizona sometime.
a-must b- ought c- should have d- could have
13. I hate get up early in the morning.
a-should b- might c- having to d- must
14. You repaint the room. It looks so ugly.
a-ought b- could have c- had better d- may not
15. The Prime Minister meet his European counterparts to discuss the war against drugs
a-will be b- is to c- was being d- must have
16. Graduates are finding it more and more difficult to find
a-employment b- disappointment c- employees d- unemployment

4. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

7. He works in the finance compartment of a large company.
8. I must go on the school trip. I haven't decided yet.
9. If you earn more than £5000, you will may to pay tax.
10. It's getting late. I really shall go.
11. She controlled on an MSc course and is very happy.
12. To get a production, you must improve your computer skills.

(C) Reading

5. Read the following passage then answer the questions

Do you remember when the telephone used to be a simple receiver connected by a wire to the wall ? And all you used it for was to make a phone call ? Today, new technology has changed the telephone and what people use it for. Using computers now in technology has given us fast connections and clearer conversations over the telephone. Nowadays, people use telephones to do their banking, to rent videos, and to buy things. People now can send letters and documents through phone lines by fax. And new systems may be available soon for sending video pictures over the telephone.

The most recent invention about telephones is that you don't need to be at home or at the office to use the telephone any more. There are now mobile phones which have no wires. You can carry one in your pocket or keep it in your car. A call from a mobile phone travels along radio waves to stations in different places. From there, the radio signal is connected to the regular phone system. With a mobile phone, anyone who can drive and talk can also drive and phone. This means less wasted time. So remember next time you are at the beach or riding your bicycle, there might be a call for you.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How have computers improved telephone services?
2. How many uses of the telephone can you find in the passage?
3. What does the underlined word "one" refer to ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

4. Mobile phones have no
a) wires b) radios c) computers d) calculators
5. People can send and receive letters and documents by
a) radios b) printers c) fax d) stations

An earthquake is not particularly dangerous in our days. In cities and towns, buildings are constructed according to the most recent technological methods, and thus earthquakes are not so threatening as they were in the past. However, in some out-of-the-way districts where people make their own houses and no precautions are taken against earthquakes, these natural phenomena sometimes prove fatal. Some time ago there was a destructive earthquake in Egypt. It lasted only one minute, and its effects were great. In a matter of seconds hundreds of houses collapsed. People were buried alive under the ruins. Those who were fortunate enough to survive knew that their relatives might still be living under the heaps of stone and wood.

A) Answer the following questions;

- B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- #### D- The Prisoner of Zenda

1. How does the boy make a problem for Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll?
2. Why does Sapt have the real King taken from his prison with his face covered? What do Sapt's men and the servants think happened to the King and to the prisoner? Why does Rassendyll wait in the forest until dark to go to the castle?
3. How does Rassendyll teach the King how to be a real king?
4. What does Rassendyll mean when he writes "Nobody knew where Rupert had disappeared to, and the thought of the man who had almost beaten me still makes my heart beat louder in my chest"?

"Why didn't you follow my plan? We could have worked well together."

- C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly :

- ## E- Writing

“How to encourage children to read”

a) Translate into Arabic :

b) Translate into English:

- هل فكرت في الالتحاق بجامعة مفتوحة بعد التخرج ؟
- كثرة المال لا توفر بالضرورة حلولاً للمشاكل .

not to be missed. When I arrived in the early morning, the market had just opened, but the hustle and bustle of shoppers, tourists and street musicians had already started. The place was jumping with life. The fragrance of freshly cut flowers made the place look bright and festive. As I wandered along, looking at the freshly baked cakes and smelling the mouth-watering aromas of the different pies, I suddenly realized how hungry I was. When I tried one, it tasted delicious. One hour later, I discovered an amazing traditional market, the Albert Culp market. With its huge variety of goods and its lively atmosphere, it stands out from all the other street markets.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why is shopping in the street market a unique experience, according to the writer?
- 2- How many days did the writer spend in the street market ?
- 3- What advice did the writer give his readers ?

B) Choose the best answer from a , b , c , or d :

4-The writer of the passage was in

- a) Canada b) Holland c) Somalia d) Syria

5-The expression(hustle and bustle ' means

- a) energetic movement c) terrible smell
b) awful quarrels d) good foods

D- The NOVEL

7- Answer the following questions :

1. Why does Rassendyll use a new servant who has never met the real King? Who is the servant replacing?
2. Who are the Six Men? Where are they from? Why are only three in Streilsau?
3. Rassendyll decides to keep some of his plans secret from Sapt and Fritz. What are those plans?
4. Why does he visit the Princess? What does he do on the way? How do these things make him more popular?

B) Read following quotation and answer the questions:

"Now remember, say nothing about this. All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King?"

1. Who says this to whom?
2. Where is the speaker coming from and who is with him?
3. Why does the speaker say this?

C) Complete the following sentences :

1. Rassendyll wants to make Michael angry by not asking him to enter the room.
2. Rassendyll's hand is hurt because he was bitten by an animal.

E - Writing

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about

"The merits and demerits about volcanoes , floods and other phenomena"

9 - a) Translate into Arabic :

Weather forecasting enables us to make plans based on probable changes in the weather. Everyday, millions of people check the weather reports broadcast on radio and TV stations and published in newspapers. Forecasts help us to decide what clothes to wear.

b) Translate into English :

- تعاني الشعوب الفقيرة من خطر الجفاف و المجاعة بسبب ندرة المياه .
- يحدث كسوف الشمس عندما يقع القمر بين الارض و الشمس فيحجب ضوء الشمس عن الارض.